

#### © 2009 AVAYA All Rights Reserved.

#### Notice

While reasonable efforts were made to ensure that the information in this document was complete and accurate at the time of printing, Avaya Inc. can assume no liability for any errors. Changes and corrections to the information in this document may be incorporated in future releases.

#### **Documentation Disclaimer**

Avaya Inc. is not responsible for any modifications, additions, or deletions to the original published version of this documentation unless such modifications, additions, or deletions were performed by Avaya.

#### Link Disclaimer

Avaya Inc. is not responsible for the contents or reliability of any linked Web sites referenced elsewhere within this Documentation, and Avaya does not necessarily endorse the products, services, or information described or offered within them. We cannot guarantee that these links will work all of the time and we have no control over the availability of the linked pages.

#### License

USE OR INSTALLATION OF THE PRODUCT INDICATES THE END USER'S ACCEPTANCE OF THE TERMS SET FORTH HEREIN AND THE GENERAL LICENSE TERMS AVAILABLE ON THE AVAYA WEBSITE AT

http://support.avaya.com/LicenseInfo/ ("GENERAL LICENSE TERMS"). IF YOU DO NOT WISH TO BE BOUND BY THESE TERMS, YOU MUST RETURN THE PRODUCT(S) TO THE POINT OF PURCHASE WITHIN TEN (10) DAYS OF DELIVERY FOR A REFUND OR CREDIT.

Avaya grants End User a license within the scope of the license types described below. The applicable number of licenses and units of capacity for which the license is granted will be one (1), unless a different number of licenses or units of capacity is specified in the Documentation or other materials available to End User. "Designated Processor" means a single stand-alone computing device. "Server" means a Designated Processor that hosts a software application to be accessed by multiple users. "Software" means the computer programs in object code, originally licensed by Avaya and ultimately utilized by End User, whether as stand-alone Products or pre-installed on Hardware. "Hardware" means the standard hardware Products, originally sold by Avaya and ultimately utilized by End User.

License Type(s): Designated System(s) License (DS).

End User may install and use each copy of the Software on only one Designated Processor, unless a different number of Designated Processors is indicated in the Documentation or other materials available to End User. Avaya may require the Designated Processor(s) to be identified by type, serial number, feature key, location or other specific designation, or to be provided by End User to Avaya through electronic means established by Avaya specifically for this purpose.

Copyright

Except where expressly stated otherwise, the Product is protected by copyright and other laws respecting proprietary rights. Unauthorized reproduction, transfer, and or use can be a criminal, as well as a civil, offense under the applicable law.

#### Third-Party Components

Certain software programs or portions thereof included in the Product may contain software distributed under third party agreements ("Third Party Components"), which may contain terms that expand or limit rights to use certain portions of the Product ("Third Party Terms"). Information identifying Third Party Components and the Third Party Terms that apply to them is available on Avaya's web site at: http://support.avaya.com/ThirdPartyLicense/

#### Avaya Fraud Intervention

If you suspect that you are being victimized by toll fraud and you need technical assistance or support, call Technical Service Center Toll Fraud Intervention Hotline at +1-800-643-2353 for the United States and Canada. Suspected security vulnerabilities with Avaya Products should be reported to Avaya by sending mail to: securityalerts@avaya.com. For additional support telephone numbers, see the Avaya Support web site (http://www.avaya.com/support).

#### Trademarks

Avaya and the Avaya logo are registered trademarks of Avaya Inc. in the United States of America and other jurisdictions. Unless otherwise provided in this document, marks identified by "®," "™" and "SM" are registered marks, trademarks and service marks, respectively, of Avaya Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

#### Documentation information

For the most current versions of documentation, go to the Avaya Support web site (http://www.avaya.com/support) or the IP Office Knowledge Base (http://marketingtools.avaya.com/knowledgebase/).

#### Avava Support

Avaya provides a telephone number for you to use to report problems or to ask questions about your contact center. The support telephone number is 1 800 628 2888 in the United States. For additional support telephone numbers, see the Avaya Web site: http://www.avaya.com/support.

Contento		5.4 IP500 Card Installation	79
Contents		5.5 Inserting the Feature Key	
4 Installing ID Office		5.6 Applying Power	
1. Installing IP Office	40	5.7 Installing the Admin Applications	
1.1 Equipment Availability		5.8 Connecting the Manager PC (IP500)	
1.2 RoHS		5.9 Start Manager	
1.3 Repair	10	5.10 Upgrading the Core Software	
2. System Overview		5.11 Check the CPU LED	
2.1 IP500 Office System Components	. 13	5.12 Check the Card LEDs	
2.2 IP400 Office System Components		5.13 Receiving the Configuration	
2.3 Control Units		5.14 Adding Licences	
2.4 Control Unit Summary		5.15 Adding External Expansion Modules	
2.5 IP500 Base Cards		5.16 Configuring Security Settings	
2.6 IP500 Trunk Cards		5.17 Rack Mounting5.18 Wall Mounting	
2.7 IP400 Trunk Cards		5.19 Grounding	
2.8 External Expansion Modules		5.20 Running System Status Application	
2.8.1 IP500 External Expansion Modules		5.20 Rullilling System Status Application	100
2.8.2 IP400 External Expansion Modules		6. IP400 Basic Installation	
2.9 Other Cards		6.1 Unpacking	110
2.10 Power Supplies	33	6.2 Installing the Admin Applications	
2.11 Power Supply Cords	34	6.3 Control Unit Power Up	
2.12 Power Supply Backup		6.4 Connecting the Manager PC	
2.13 Cabling and Cables		6.5 Receiving a Configuration (Pre 3.2)	
2.14 Grounding	38	6.6 Using Monitor	
2.15 Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections	39	6.7 Fitting VCM Cards	
2.16 Wall and Rack Mounting	40	6.8 Fitting Modem Cards	
2.17 Feature Key Dongles	42	6.9 Fitting Trunk Cards	
2.18 License Keys	43	6.10 Rack Mounting	125
2.19 IP Office Phones	44	6.11 Adding Expansion Modules	127
2.20 Core Software & BIN Files	45	6.12 Adding a WAN3 Module	
2.21 Supported Country Locales	47	6.13 Grounding	131
2.22 Programming Applications	49	6.14 Upgrading the Core Software	133
2.23 User Applications	50	6.15 Configuring Security Settings	136
2.24 Voicemail Applications			
2.25 Call Logging Applications	52	6.17 Running System Status Application	138
2.26 Call Center Applications		<b>-</b>	
2.27 CTI Applications		7. Phone Installation	
2.28 Application DVD's		7.1 Installing 2400/5400 Series Phones	
2.29 VoIP		7.2 Installing an EU24 Add-On	
2.30 Voice Compression Channels		7.3 BM32 Firmware Upgrade	
2.31 Training		7.4 Basic Button Programming	
2.32 Web Sites		7.5 Changing Extension Numbers	
2.33 IP500 Standard/Professional Edition	60	7.6 Swapping Extension Users	154
3. Planning		8. External Trunk Configuration	
3.1 Space Requirements	64	_	152
3.2 Environmental Requirements		8.2 Unused Trunks	
3.3 Tools and Parts Required		8.3 Prefix Dialing	
	0.	5.5 · · · 5 2 · G 5	
4. Pre-Configuration		9. Additional Processes	
4.1 Off Line Configuration	70	9.1 Upgrading the Core Software	166
4.2 Creating a New Configuration		9.2 Creating a WAN Link	168
4.3 Importing and Exporting Settings	72	9.3 IP500 Reset Button	169
E IDEAL Desire L. C. H. C.		9.4 Out of Building Telephone Installations	170
5. IP500 Basic Installation		9.4.1 DS Phones	171
5.1 Tools Required		9.4.2 Analog Phone Barrier Box	
5.2 Read the Documentation		9.4.3 Rack Mounting Barrier Boxes	
5.3 Unpacking	78	9.5 Using the External Output Port	175

9.5.1 Port Connection	175	10.6.4 Voice Compression Modules	. 242
9.6 License Keys	176	10.7 IP400 Expansion Modules	243
9.6.1 Feature Key Dongles	177	10.7.1 Analog Trunk 16	. 245
9.6.2 Installation Requirements	178	10.7.2 Digital Station V2	. 247
9.6.3 Serial Port Feature Key Installation	179	10.7.3 Digital Station	. 249
9.6.4 Parallel / USB Port Feature Key Installation	180	10.7.4 Phone V2	251
9.7 So8 BRI Module	181	10.7.5 Phone	. 253
9.7.1 Example 1: ISDN Terminal	181	10.7.6 So8	. 255
9.7.2 Example 2: Video Conference		10.7.7 WAN3 10/100	257
9.8 SNMP		10.8 Phones	259
9.8.1 SNMP Introduction	184	10.8.1 1603	. 260
9.8.2 Installing the IP Office MIB Files		10.8.2 1608	. 262
9.8.3 Enabling SNMP and Polling Support		10.8.3 1616	264
9.8.4 Enabling SNMP Trap Sending		10.8.4 2402	. 266
9.8.5 Trap Generation		10.8.5 2410	
9.9 DTE Port Maintenance		10.8.6 2420	
9.9.1 DTE Port Overview		10.8.7 3616	
9.9.2 DTE Port Settings		10.8.8 3620	
9.9.3 Erasing the Configuration		10.8.9 3626	
9.9.4 Defaulting Security Settings		10.8.10 3641	
9.9.5 Erasing the Operational Software		10.8.11 3645	
ciolo = acing the operational contraron		10.8.12 3701	
10.System Components		10.8.13 3711	
10.1 Control Units	198	10.8.14 3810	
10.1.1 IP500		10.8.15 4406	
10.1.2 IP412		10.8.16 4412	
10.1.3 IP406 V2		10.8.17 4424	
10.1.4 IP406 V1		10.8.18 4601	
10.1.5 IP403		10.8.19 4602	
10.1.6 Small Office Edition (SOE)		10.8.20 4610	_
10.1.7 IP401 Control Unit		10.8.21 4620	
10.2 IP500 Base Cards		10.8.22 4621	
10.2.1 Analog Phone		10.8.23 4625	
10.2.2 Digital Station		10.8.24 5402	
10.2.3 Legacy Card Carrier		10.8.25 5410	
10.2.4 VCM		10.8.26 5420	
10.2.5 4-Port Expansion Card		10.8.27 5601	
10.3 IP500 Trunk Cards			
10.3.1 Analog Trunk Card		10.8.28 5602	
10.3.2 BRI Trunk Cards		10.8.29 5610 10.8.30 5620	
10.3.3 PRI Trunk Cards			
10.4 IP500 Expansion Modules		10.8.31 5621	
10.4.1 Analog Trunk 16		10.8.32 6408D	
10.4.2 BRI SO8		10.8.33 6416D	
10.4.3 Digital Station		10.8.34 6424D	
10.4.4 Phone		10.8.35 T3 Classic	
10.4.4 Friorie		10.8.36 T3 Comfort	
10.5.1 Analog Trunk Card Uni (ATM4U)		10.8.37 T3 Compact	
		10.9 Phone Add-Ons	
10.5.2 Analog Trunk Cards (ATM4)		10.9.1 4450	
10.5.3 BRI Trunk Cards		10.9.2 BM32	
10.5.4 T1 PRI Trunk Cards		10.9.3 EU24	
10.5.5 E1 PRI Trunk Cards		10.9.4 EU24BL	
10.5.6 WAN Trunk Card		10.9.5 T3 DSS	
10.5.7 E1R2 PRI Trunk Cards		10.9.6 201B RIM	
10.6 IP400 Internal Cards		10.9.7 XM24	
10.6.1 Modem Cards		10.10 Applications	
10.6.2 Wireless Card		10.10.1 Call Status	
10.6.3 Embedded Voicemail Memory Cards	241	10.10.2 Compact Business Center (CBC)	310

10.10.3 Compact Contact Center (CCC)	311	11.9 Regulatory Instructions for Use	398
10.10.4 Conference Center		11.9.1 Australia	
10.10.5 ContactStore	316	11.9.2 Canada	398
10.10.6 Customer Call Reporter (CCR)	317	11.9.3 China	399
10.10.7 Delta Server		11.9.4 European Union	400
10.10.8 Feature Key Server	320	11.9.5 New Zealand	400
10.10.9 Manager		11.9.6 FCC Notification	400
10.10.10 Monitor		Index	
10.10.11 MS-CRM	323		
10.10.12 Phone Manager			
10.10.13 SoftConsole			
10.10.14 System Status Application (SSA)			
10.10.15 TAPI			
10.10.16 Voicemail Lite			
10.10.17 Voicemail Pro	331		
10.10.18 IP Office Ports			
10.10.19 Operating System Summary			
10.11 Licence Keys			
10.11.1 IP500			
10.11.2 CCC	-		
10.11.3 CTI			
10.11.4 Phone Manager			
10.11.5 CCR Licenses			
10.11.6 VoiceMail			
10.11.7 IP DECT	-		
10.11.8 Trial Licenses			
10.12 Physical Ports			
10.12.1 Cables			
10.12.2 ANALOG Port			
10.12.3 AUDIO Port			
10.12.4 BRI Port (So)			
10.12.5 BRI Port (To)			
10.12.6 DC I/P Port			
10.12.7 DS Ports	356		
10.12.8 RS232 DTE Port	357		
10.12.9 EXPANSION Port	358		
10.12.10 EXT O/P Port	358		
10.12.11 LAN Port	359		
10.12.12 PF Port	360		
10.12.13 PHONE (POT) Port	361		
10.12.14 PRI Port	362		
10.12.15 WAN Port	363		
10.12.16 V.24 WAN Cable	364		
10.12.17 V.35 WAN Cable	365		
10.12.18 X.21 WAN Cable	366		
10.13 SAP Codes	367		
10.13.1 Availability	389		
10.13.2 RoHS			
11.Safety Statements			
11.1 Safety and Homologation Statements			
11.2 Lithium Batteries			
11.3 Lightning Protection/Hazard Symbols			
11.4 Trunk Interface Modules			
11.5 Further Information and Product Updates			
11.6 Compliance with FCC Rules			
11.7 Port Safety Classification			
11.8 EMC Directive	397		

# **Chapter 1. Installing IP Office**

# 1. Installing IP Office

This documentation is intended to assist with the installation of the core components of an Avaya IP Office telephone system. It describes those components and factors that should be considered for an installation.

- The IP Office is a converged voice and data communications system. It should therefore only be installed by persons with telephony and IP data network experience.
- Installers must be trained on IP Office systems. Through its Avaya University (AU), Avaya provides a range of training courses including specific IP Office implementation and installation training. It also provides certification schemes for installers to achieve various levels of IP Office accreditation. See Training.
- It is the installer's responsibility to ensure that all installation work is done in accordance with local and national regulations and requirements. It is also their responsibility to accurately establish the customer's requirements before installation and to ensure that the installation meets those requirements.
- You should read and understand this documentation before installation. You should also obtain and read the Avaya Technical Bulletins relevant to recent IP Office software and hardware releases to ensure that you are familiar with any changes to the IP Office equipment and software.

The following components of IP Office are outside the range of a basic IP Office installation. They are covered by separate installation and configuration documentation. If those components are to be part of the IP Office system installation, that documentation should be obtained, read and understood prior to the installation.

- 4600/5600 Series IP Phone Installation.
- Embedded Voicemail Installation.
- Voicemail Pro Installation.
- · Delta Server (SMDR) Installation.
- Compact Business Center (CBC) Installation.
- Compact Contact Center (CCC) Installation.
- · Contact Store Installation.
- · Compact DECT Installation.
- · IP DECT Installation.
- 3600 Series Wireless IP Installation.
- · Phone Manager Installation Manual.
- SoftConsole Installation Manual.
- Conferencing Center Installation Manual.

# 1.1 Equipment Availability

SAP codes and details of specific items within this documentation are for reference only. Items available in any specific locale should be confirmed against the local Avaya IP Office price list for that locale. The local price list may also include additional items relative to the installation requirements of that locale.

# **1.2 RoHS**

RoHS is an European Union directive for the Removal of Certain Hazardous Substances from Electrical and Electronic Equipment. Similar legislation has been or is being introduced in a number of other countries. Avaya has decided to make its global product range compliant with the requirements of RoHS.

The actions taken vary

- In some cases equipment has been discontinued and is no longer available from Avaya.
- In some cases new manufactured stock has been made RoHS compliant and keeps its existing SAP code.
- In other cases the equipment has been replaced by a new RoHS compliant alternative with new SAP codes.

The SAP codes within this document are for RoHS compliant equipment unless otherwise stated.

# 1.3 Repair

IP Office systems do not contain any user serviceable or repairable components. If a faulty unit is suspected the whole unit should be replace.

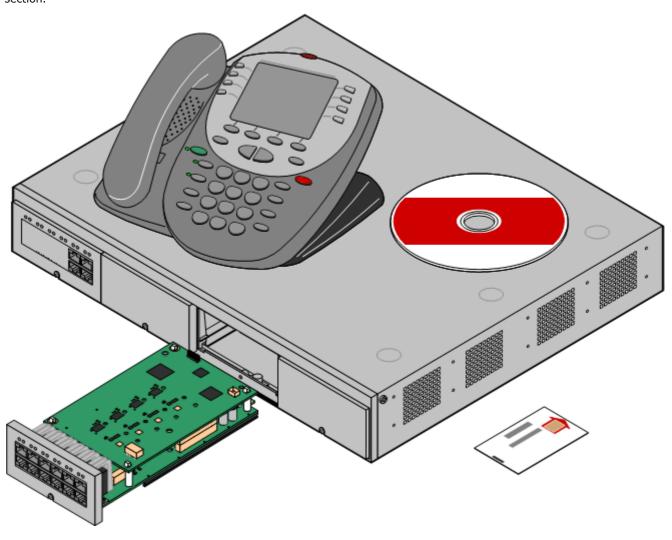
- IP400 and Small Office Edition control units should only be opened where indicated for the installation of IP400 cards.
- IP500 control units should not be opened under any circumstances.

# **Chapter 2. System Overview**

# 2. System Overview

This section looks at the components that collectively form IP Office systems. This includes aspects such as cabling and the need for additional non-Avaya IP Office equipment.

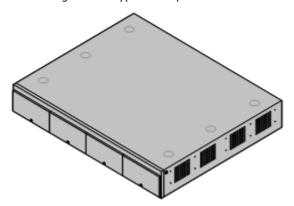
This section provides just a general description of individual units. For greater detail refer to the **System Components** 



IP Office Installation Page 12 **IP Office** 

# 2.1 IP500 Office System Components

The following are the typical components of an IP Office IP500 system.



#### • IP Office IP500 System Unit

The control unit holds the main configuration and performs the routing and switching for telephone calls and data traffic. Each control unit includes LAN ports, slots for additional internal cards and in some cases integral digital and analog phone ports.



#### • IP500 Base Cards

The IP500 control unit has slots for up to 4 IP500 base cards. These can be used to add analog extension port, digital extension ports, voice compression channels and some legacy IP400 cards.

- IP500 Digital Station Base Card
- IP500 Analog Phone Base Card
- IP500 VCM Base Card
- IP500 Legacy Card Carrier
- IP500 4-Port Expansion Base Card (IP Office 5.0+)

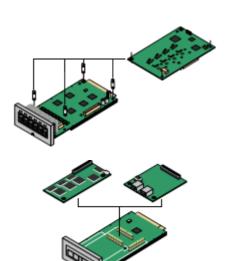


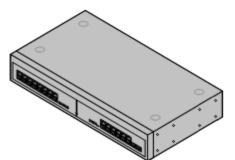
Many of the IP500 base cards can be fitted with a IP500 daughter card in order to support various types of trunk connections.

- IP500 Analog Trunk Card
- IP500 BRI Trunk Card
- IP500 PRI Trunk Card (IP Office 4.1+)



The IP500 Legacy Carrier base card can be used to allow IP400 trunk cards and IP400 VCM cards to be added to the IP500 control unit.







#### • IP500 External Expansion Modules

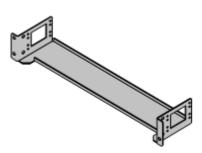
Additional analog and digital extension ports can be added using a number of IP500 external expansion modules.

- For IP Office 5.0+ systems, if an IP500 4-Port Expansion Base Card is fitted then up to 12 external expansion modules are supported.
- Support includes IP400 external expansion modules except for WAN3 modules.

#### Power Supplies

The IP500 control unit has an internal power supply unit. Each external expansion module is supplied with an external power supply unit. Additional power supply units may also be required for IP phones and some phone add-ons.

# JDDC:







VK00nDd15SDvXoxkw9cR9x jOXr AWz9





#### Power Cords

Depending on the locale, different power cords need to be ordered for each control unit, external expansion module and any phones or devices using external power supply units.

#### Cables

The IP Office is designed primarily for connection to a structured cabling system using CAT3 UTP cabling. This approach allows telephone and data traffic to share the same wiring infrastructure and simplifies equipment moves.

#### Mounting Kits

The IP500 control unit can be used free-standing, with external expansion modules stacked above it. With optional rack mounting kits, the control unit and external expansion modules can also be rack mounted. Alternatively with an optional wall mounting kit the IP500 control unit can be wall mounted.

#### • Surge Protectors and Barrier Boxes

Where the installation includes extensions in other buildings additional protective equipment is required. This equipment may also be required in areas where the lightning risk is high.

#### Phones

IP Office systems support a variety of Avaya digital and IP phones plus analog phones.

#### License Keys

Various IP Office features and applications require a license key to be entered into the system's configuration. Each key is a 32-character text string unique to the feature being activated and the serial number of the Feature Key dongle (see below) installed in the system.

#### Feature Key Dongle

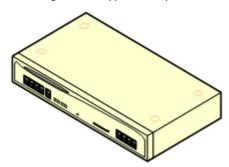
A uniquely numbered dongle used to validate license keys. For the IP500 control unit a Smart Card type Feature Key dongle is mandatory for correct system operation even if no licensed features are being used.

#### Application CD's/DVD's

The IP Office applications can be ordered on a number of CD's. In addition they can be downloaded from the IP Office section of the Avaya support web site (http://support.avaya.com).

# 2.2 IP400 Office System Components

The following are the typical components of an IP Office IP400 system.



#### • IP Office IP400 Control Unit

The control unit holds the main configuration and performs the routing and switching for telephone calls and data traffic. Each control unit includes LAN ports, slots for additional internal cards and in some cases integral digital and analog phone ports. IP Office 5.0 supports the following IP400 control units:

#### • IP406 V2

Includes 8 integral digital extension (DS) ports, 2 analog phone ports and an 8 port ethernet LAN switch. Can be expanded by the addition of up to 6 external expansion modules.

#### • IP412

Includes a 2 port ethernet switch. Can be expanded by the addition of up to 12 external expansion modules.



#### • Trunk Cards

Each IP400 control unit supports the addition of two IP400 trunk cards.



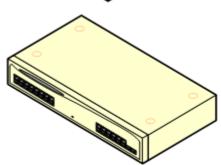
#### Internal Cards

Additional cards can be added to the IP400 control units for features such as modem ports and voice compression channels (used for VoIP).



#### • Embedded Voicemail Memory Card

The IP460 V2 supports IP Office embedded voicemail by the addition of an Embedded Voicemail memory card.



#### • IP400 External Expansion Modules

Additional extension and trunk ports can be added using a number of external expansion modules. The number supported depends on the control unit type and the module type.



#### • Power Supplies

Each IP400 Office control unit and external expansion module is supplied with an external power supply unit. Additional power supply units may also be required for IP phones and some phone add-ons.



Depending on the locale, different power cords need to be ordered for each control unit, external expansion module and any phones or devices using external power supply units.



#### Cables

The IP Office is designed primarily for connection to a structured cabling system using CAT3 UTP cabling. This approach allows telephone and data traffic to share the same wiring infrastructure and simplifies equipment moves.



#### • IP400 Rack Mounting Kit

The IP400 control units and expansion modules are designed to be stacked free-standing. However they can also be rack mounted using an optional rack mounting kit for each unit and module.



### • Surge Protectors and Barrier Boxes

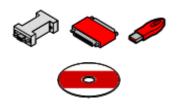
Where the installation includes extensions in other buildings additional protective equipment is required. This equipment may also be required in areas where the lightning risk is high.



#### Phones

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{IP}}$  Office systems support a variety of Avaya digital and  $\ensuremath{\mathsf{IP}}$  phones plus analog phones.

VK00nDd15SDvXoxkw9cR9x\_jOXr\_AWz9



#### • License Keys

Various IP Office features and applications require a license key to be entered into the system's configuration. Each key is a 32-character text string unique to the feature being activated and the serial number of the Feature Key dongle (see below) installed in the system.

• Feature Key Dongle
A uniquely numbered dongle used to validate license keys. Several different types of Feature Key dongle are available.

#### • Application CD's/DVD's

The IP Office applications can be ordered on a number of CD's. In addition they can be downloaded from the IP Office section of the Avaya support web site (<a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a>).

# 2.3 Control Units

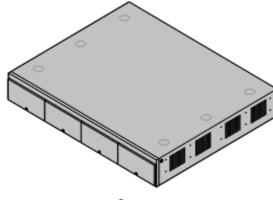
The base of any IP Office system is the system or control unit. It stores the system configuration and controls the system operation.

Each control unit can be customized by adding various <u>internal cards</u> such as trunk cards. Except for the Small Office Edition control unit, external expansion modules can be also be connected to add additional extension and trunk ports.

IP Office 5.0 supports the following IP Office control units.

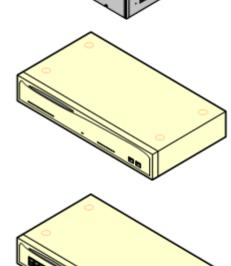
#### • IP500 System Unit

This control unit has four front slots for IP500 base cards. It has an internal power supply unit and uses a mandatory credit-card sized Smart Card Feature Key dongle. It includes a 2 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 3 managed) on the rear.



#### • IP412 Control Unit

This unit supports 2 IP400 trunk cards of any type. Up to 12 external expansion modules can be added plus 2 WAN3 10/100 modules. It includes a 2 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 3 managed).



#### • IP406 V2 Control Unit

This unit supports up to 6 external expansion modules plus 2 WAN3 10/100 modules. It supports 2 IP400 trunk cards of all types though only one may be a dual PRI trunk card. The unit has 8 Avaya digital DS phone ports and 2 analog phone ports plus an 8 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 2 unmanaged).

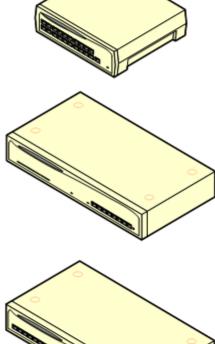
The following IP Office control units are not supported by IP Office 5.0. Where their details are included it is for maintenance of existing systems only.

#### **Small Office Edition Control Unit (SOE)**

This is a single unit IP Office system supported up to IP Office 4.2. It does not support any external expansion modules and only supports a single IP400 trunk interface card. The Small Office was available in a number of models, with differing numbers of integral analog trunk, analog extension and Avaya DS phone ports. The models all have a 4 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 2 unmanaged) and an Ethernet WAN port.

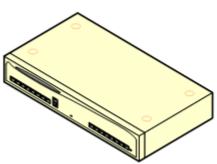
#### **IP406 V1 Control Unit**

Support for software up to IP Office 3.2. The IP406 Office control unit supports up to 180 extensions by using up to 6 Expansion modules. It includes an eight port 10/100Mbps Ethernet LAN hub. The IP406 V1 has been superseded by the IP406 V2 control



#### • IP403 Control Unit

Support for software up to IP Office 3.2. The front panel of the IP403 control unit includes eight digital extension ports, two analog phone ports and an eight port 10/100Mbps Ethernet LAN hub. The IP403 has been superseded by the IP406 V2 control unit.



#### **IP401 Control Unit**

Supported for software up to IP Office 2.0. Available in 2 models. The IP401 Compact Office 2 supported 2 digital phones, 2 analog phones, a BRI ISDN port (2 trunks) and a 4 port LAN hub. The IP401 Compact 4 supported double the capacity.

**IP Office Installation** Page 18 **IP Office** 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# 2.4 Control Unit Summary

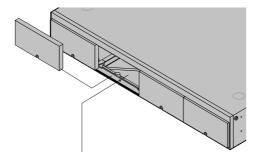
The following table summarizes the capacities of the IP Office control units supported by IP Office 5.0 software.

	IP4	100	I	IP500		
Feature	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500	Plus 4-Port Exp Card		
Integral Digital Station (DS) Ports	8	0	Up to 24	Up to 24		
Integral Analog Phone (PHONE) Ports	2	0	Up to 32	Up to 24		
Optional Embedded Voicemail Card Slot	-	×	-	<b>-</b>		
Integral WAN Port	7	<b>J</b>	×	×		
External Expansion Ports	6	12	8	12		
DTE Port	9-way	9-way	9-way	9-way		
Audio In (MOH) Port	<b>7</b>	<b>√</b>	<b>✓</b>	· ·		
External O/P Switch Port	\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	<b>J</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>		
Conference Parties[1]	64	128	128[4]	128[4]		
Configuration Memory	256KB	1024KB	1024KB	1024KB		
Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV Channels	20	30	40[2]	40[2]		
Maximum Extension Capacity	190	360	384[3]	384[3]		
- Digital ( <u>DS</u> ) Phones only.	188	360	264	384		
- Analog Phones only.	182	360	272	384		
- IP Phones only.	190	360	384[3]	384		
IP400 Trunk Cards Supported	2	2	2	2		
- Analog trunk cards	<b>-</b>	<i>y</i>	J	7		
- Quad BRI trunk cards	<b>y</b>	<b>y</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>J</b>		
- Single PRI trunk cards	<b>y</b>	<b>J</b>	<b>J</b>	<b>J</b>		
- Dual PRI trunks cards	√ (Slot A)	<b>y</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>✓</b>		
- WAN port card	×	×	×	X		
IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards	0	0	4	3		
- IP500 Analog trunks	×	×	<b>√</b> 16	<b>√</b> 12		
- IP500 BRI trunk channels	×	×	<b>√</b> 32	<b>√</b> 24		
- IP500 PRI trunk channels	×	×	<b>√</b> 240	<b>√</b> 180		
VCM Cards						
- IP400 VCM Cards	1	2	2	2		
- IP500 VCM Cards	×	×	2	2		
Maximum voice compression channels	30 60		128	128		
	Dimension	is				
Height x Width x Depth		x245mm .5"x9.7"		5x365mm 7.5"x14.4"		

#### **Notes**

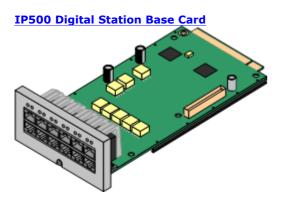
- 1. Where IP Office Conferencing Center is installed, 5 conference slots are reserved by the control unit for its own use (call recording, etc) and are not available to IP Office Conferencing Center or for general conference usage.
- 2.IP500 Voicemail/TAPI WAV channels increased from 30 to 40 for IP Office 5.0+.
- 3. IP500 Maximum extensions increased from 272 to 384 for IP Office 5.0+.
- 4. IP500 Conference capacity increased from 64 to 128 for IP Office 5.0+.
- 5. For IP Office 5.0+, the IP500 no longer runs in separate Standard or Professional modes. No **IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional** license is required.

#### 2.5 IP500 Base Cards



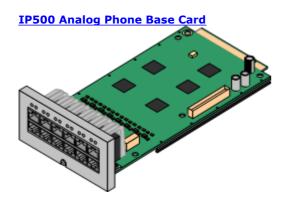
The IP500 control unit has 4 slots for the insertion of base cards. Each base cards includes an integral front panel with ports for cable connections.

The slots are numbered 1 to 4 from left to right. Normally they can be used in any order, however if the capacity for a particular type of card is exceeded, the card in the highest slot will be disabled.



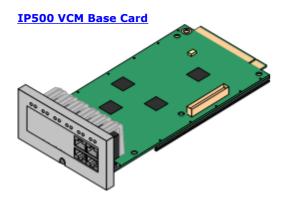
This card has 12 RJ45 ports. The first 8 ports are  $\underline{\text{DS}}$  ports for the connection of Avaya digital phones other than IP phones. The card can be fitted with an IP500 daughter card which then uses the additional 4 RJ45 ports for connections.

- This card accepts one IP500 daughter card of any type.
- Maximum: 3 per IP500 control unit.
- 4400 Series phones (4406D, 4412D and 4424D) are not supported on this card. They are supported on an external expansion module.



This card has 12 RJ45 ports. The card is available in two variants, providing 2 or 8 analog extension ports for the connection of analog phones. The card can be fitted with an IP500 daughter card which then uses the additional 4 RJ45 ports for connections.

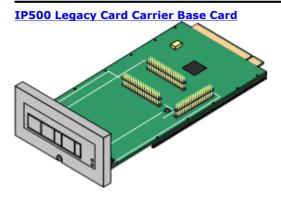
- This card accepts one IP500 daughter card of any type.
- Maximum: 4 per IP500 control unit.
- When fitted with an IP500 Analog Trunk daughter card, the Phone 8 base card supports 1 power failure extension to trunk (loop-start only) connection.
- The analog extension ports do not include a ringing capacitor. Where this is a requirement, connection should be via a Master socket containing ringing capacitors.



This card provides voice compression channels for use with VoIP calls. The module is available in variants supporting up to 32 or 64 channels. Each card provides 4 initial channels with additional channels being enabled by licenses in the IP Office configuration. The card can be fitted with an IP500 daughter card which then uses the 4 RJ45 ports for connections.

The maximum number of voice compression channels supported, using IP500 VCM cards and or IP400 VCM cards on IP500 carrier cards is 128.

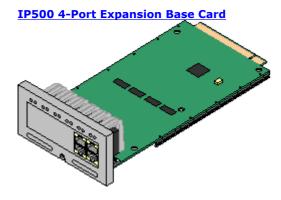
- This accepts one IP500 daughter card of any type.
- Maximum: 2 per IP500 control unit.



This card allows a various IP400 trunk and VCM cards to be used with the IP500 control unit. The front of the card includes a number of panels that can be snapped off to match the ports when a trunk card being fitted.

- This card does not accept an IP500 daughter card.
- Maximum: 2 per IP500 control unit.
- **IP400 Cards Supported:** The following cards are supported. Any card not listed is not supported.

✓ PRI T1	
✓ Dual PRI T1	ANLG 4 Uni (US only)
✓ PRI 30 E1 (1.4)	√ VCM 4
✓ Dual PRI E1	√ VCM 8
✓ PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45	√ VCM 16
✓ Dual PRI E1R2 RJ45	√ VCM 24
	√ VCM 30

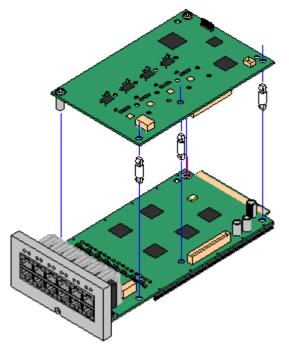


This card adds an additional 4 expansion ports for external expansion modules. The card is supplied with four 2m yellow interconnect cables.

- This card does not accept an IP500 daughter card.
- Maximum: 1 per IP500 control unit (Right-hand slot 4 only).
- **Supported Expansion Modules:** The following external expansion modules are supported:
  - IP500 Analogue Trunk Module
  - IP500 BRI So Module
  - IP500 Digital Station Module
- IP500 Phone Module
- IP400 Digital Station Module V2 (DS16/DS30 V2)
- IP400 Phone Module V2 (Phone8 V2/Phone16 V2/Phone30 V2)

# 2.6 IP500 Trunk Cards

Updated for IP500 PRI-U trunk daughter card. Need to add accurate picture of card and also update fitting picture for the new pillar arrangment.



IP500 daughter trunk cards can be fitted to IP500 base cards to provide support for trunk. The daughter card uses the physical ports provided on the front panel of the base card for cable connection.

The addition of an IP500 daughter card is supported on any IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card.

For those base card that support daughter cards, there are no restrictions on the combination of card types. However in systems with both analog phone base cards and analog trunk daughter cards, combining the two type is recommended as it then provides analog power failure support for one trunk/extension.

Each daughter card is supplied with the stand off pillars required for installation and a label to identify the cards presence on the physical unit once installed.

#### Note: Change to Installation

With the introduction of the IP500 PRI-U trunk daughter card, the 5 plastic stand off pillars supplied with these card were changed. All trunk daughter cards are now supplied with two pre-fitted metal pillars and 3 plastic pillars. Two screws and washers for final attachment of the metal pillars to the base card are also included. This change does not affect existing cards supplied with 5 plastic pillars.

This card can be added to an IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card. It allows that base card to then also support 4 analog loop-start trunks.

- When fitted to an IP500 Analog Phone 8 base card, the combination supports 1 power failure extension to trunk (loop-start only) connection.
- Maximum: 4 per IP500 control unit.

This card can be added to an IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card. It allows that card to then also support up 4 BRI trunk connections, each trunk providing 2B+D digital channels. The card is available in 2 port (4 channels) and 4 port (8 channels) variants.

- Maximum: 4 per IP500 control unit.
- S-Bus Connection: On IP Office 4.2+ systems, the card can be switched from To trunk mode to So mode. This mode requires additional terminating resistors and an ISDN crossover cable connection, see BRI Port (So).

This card can be added to an IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card. The card is a universal card that can be configured in software for E1 PRI, T1 robbed bit, T1 PRI or E1R2. The card is available in single and dual port variants.

- Maximum: 4 per IP500 control unit.
- The IP500 PRI-U card supports E1, T1 and E1-R2 PRI modes. The IP Office system supports 8 unlicensed B-channels on each IP500 PRI-U port fitted. Additional B-channels, up to the capacity of ports installed and PRI mode selected require IP500 Universal PRI (Additional Channels) licenses added to the configuration. These additional channels consume the licenses based on which additional channels are configured as in-service from port 9 of slot 1 upwards. D-channels are not affected by licensing.

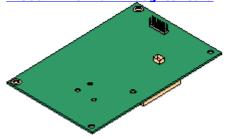




**IP500 BRI Trunk Daughter Card** 



**IP500 PRI-U Trunk Daughter Card** 



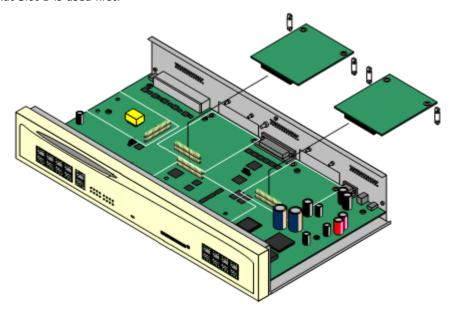
# 2.7 IP400 Trunk Cards

A range of IP400 trunk cards are available for different trunk types. Each IP400 trunk card is supplied with stand off pillars and a replacement blanking plate for use with IP400 control units.

#### • Small Office Edition Control Units

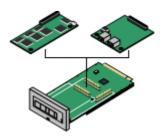
All versions of the Small Office Edition control include either two or four integral analog trunk ports on the front of the unit. In addition a single IP400 trunk card can be fitted to the rear of the unit.

The IP406 V2 and IP412 can be fitted with up to 2 IP400 trunk cards. Except where otherwise indicated, it is recommended that Slot B is used first.



#### **IP500 Control Unit**

The IP500 control unit can accept up to two IP400 trunk cards by mounting each card on an IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card.



**IP Office Installation** Page 23 **IP Office** 

The following IP400 trunk card types are supported by IP Office 4.0:

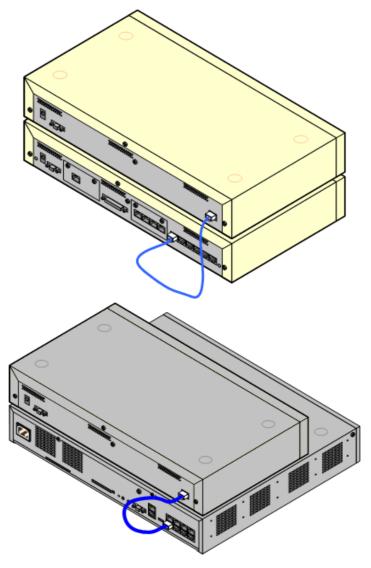
IP400 Trunk Cards		SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
Same as	Analog Trunk Card (ATM4) Provides 4 RJ45 loop-start analog trunk ports. The card is available in several locale specific variants. This card has been superseded by the ATM4U card below.	×	<b>V</b>	7	7
	Additional loop or ground start analog trunks can also be added using <b>Analog Trunk</b> external expansion modules.				
	Analog Trunk Card (ATM4U) Provides 4 RJ45 loop-start analog trunk ports as per the ATM4 above but available in a single worldwide variant. Also supports adjustable echo cancellation on IP Office 3.1.	X	7	J	7
	Additional loop or ground start analog trunks can also be added using <u>Analog Trunk</u> external expansion modules.				
STATE OF THE PARTY	Quad BRI Trunk Card Provides support for 4 RJ45 BRI (2B+D) trunk ports. These can be configured to ETSI or AusTS013 operation. The ports include 100ohm termination.	7	7	J	7
	Single PRI T1 Trunk Cards Supports PRI (23B+D) trunks and T1 Robbed-Bit (24B) trunks through a single RJ45 port. The mode of operation is selected in the IP Office configuration.	7	7	7	7
	Single E1 PRI Trunk Cards Supports PRI (30B+D) trunks through a single RJ45 port. The port can be configured for PRI or QSIG operation.	×	7	7	7
	Single E1R2 Trunk Cards Supports PRI (30B+D) trunks using E1R2 signalling. Available in coaxial or RJ45 connector variants. Coaxial variants are not supported on an IP500 carrier card.	x	<i>y</i>	7	7
STATE OF THE PARTY	Dual PRI Trunk Cards As the single PRI cards above but supporting the connection of two PRI trunks. On the IP406 V2, supported in Slot A only.	×	7	7	7
	WAN Port Card Used only with the Small Office Edition. Provides a single 37-way D-type socket for connection to a V.24, V.35 or X.21 WAN service. Includes a replacement back panel for the control unit.	7	×	7	×

# 2.8 External Expansion Modules

These modules can be used to add additional ports to an IP400 and IP500 systems. The number of external expansion modules supported depends on the control unit type.

- Each external expansion module (except the WAN3 10/100) is supplied with a blue 1 meter (3'3") expansion interconnect cable. This cable must be used when connecting to expansion ports on the rear of a control unit.
- When connecting to expansion ports on an IP500 4-Port Expansion card, a yellow 2 meter (6'6") expansion interconnect cable can be used in place of the standard blue cable. 4 Yellow cables are supplied with the IP500 4-Port Expansion card.
- The WAN3 10/100 module differs in that it connects via a LAN port on its front to one of the control unit's LAN ports. This type of external expansion module is not supported by IP500 control units.
- Pre-IP Office 5.0 IP500 systems require an IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional license to support external expansion modules. This license is not required for IP Office 5.0+.

Each module uses an external <u>power supply unit</u> supplied with the module. A locale specific <u>power cord</u> for the PSU must be ordered separately.



Control Unit	External Expansion Ports	WAN3 10/100 Supported
IP406 V2	6	<b>✓</b>
IP412	12	<b>√</b>
IP500	8	×
IP500 plus 4-Port Expansion Card	12	×

#### **IP500 External Expansion Modules**

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and a 1m blue interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

Variant		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP40 6 V2		IP500	IP500 4-Port Exp
Analog Trunk	IPO 500 Analog Trunk 16	US	700449473	X	7	7	7	7
BRI So8	IPO 500 BRI So8	All	700449515	×	7	7	-	<b>y</b>
<b>Digital Station</b>	IPO 500 Digital Station 16	All	700449499	X	7	7	1	<b>J</b>
	IPO 500 Digital Station 30	All	700426216	×	7	7	-	<b>y</b>
<b>Analog Phone</b>	IPO 500 Phone 16	All	700449507	X	7	7	1	<b>J</b>
	IPO 500 Phone 30	All	700426224	×	7	1	-	7

#### **IP400 External Expansion Modules**

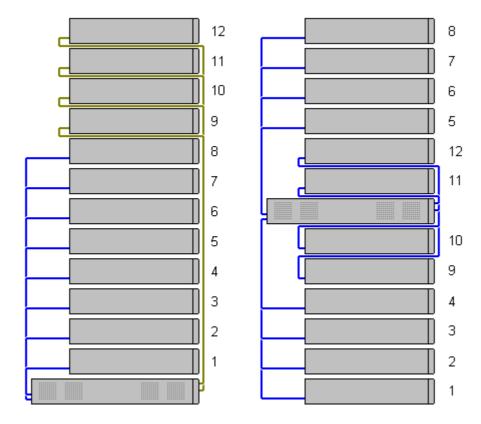
Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and a 1m blue interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

Variant		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP41 2	IP500	IP500 4-Port Exp
Analog Trunk	IP400 Analog Trunk 16	North America/ CALA	700211360	×	7	7	7	×
		Europe	700241680	×	7	7	7	×
		New Zealand	700241698	×	7	7	7	×
Digital Station	IP400 Digital Station 16 V2	All	700359839	×	7	7	7	7
	IP400 Digital Station 30 V2	All	700359847	×	7	7	7	7
	IP400 Digital Station 16	All	700184807	×	7	7	7	×
	IP400 Digital Station 30	All	700184880	×	7	7	7	×
Phone	IP400 Phone 8 V2	All	700359896	×	7	7	-	7
	IP400 Phone 16 V2	All	700359904	×	7	7	1	-
	IP400 Phone 30 V2	All	700359912	×	7	7	-	-
	IP400 Phone 8	All	700184773	×	7	7	1	×
	IP400 Phone 16	All	700184781	×	7	7	1	×
	IP400 Phone 30	All	700184799	×	7	7	-	×
SO (BRI)	IP400 So8	All	700185077	X	7	7	-	7
WAN	IP400 WAN3	All	700185028	×	1	7	×	×
	IP400 WAN3 10/100	All	700262009	×	7	7	×	×

#### **Connecting External Expansion Modules**

The integral expansion ports on a control unit are located on the rear of the unit. For IP500 systems, an additional 4 expansion ports can be added to the front of the control unit by installing an IP500 4-Port Expansion card.

- Each external expansion module (except the WAN3 10/100) is supplied with a blue 1 meter (3'3") expansion interconnect cable. This cable must be used when connecting to expansion ports on the rear of a control unit.
- When connecting to expansion ports on an IP500 4-Port Expansion card, a yellow 2 meter (6'6") expansion interconnect cable can be used in place of the standard blue cable. 4 Yellow cables are supplied with the IP500 4-Port Expansion card.
- The WAN3 10/100 module differs in that it connects via a LAN port on its front to one of the control unit's LAN ports. This type of external expansion module is not supported by IP500 control units.
- Pre-IP Office 5.0 IP500 systems require an IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional license to support external expansion modules. This license is not required for IP Office 5.0+.



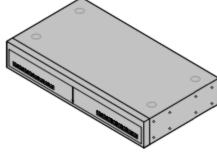
# 2.8.1 IP500 External Expansion Modules

The following IP500 external expansion modules are supported by IP Office 5.0. They are intended for use with an IP500 control unit but can also be used with IP400 control units. Unlike IP400 external expansion modules, these units use the IP500 rack mounting kit.

#### **IP500 Analog Trunk Module**

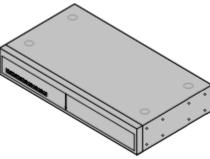
Provides an additional 16 ANALOG ports for connection of analog trunks. Supports both loop-start and ground-start trunks.

- Currently only available for the US locale.
- Use with ground start trunks requires that the trunk module and the IP Office control unit are grounded.



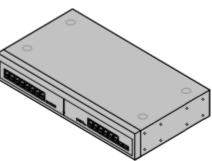
#### **IP500 BRI So8 Module**

Provides 8 ETSI BRI-So ports for the connection of ISDN devices. This unit is not intended to support BRI trunks.



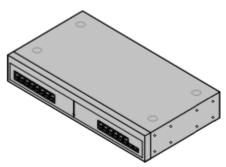
#### **IP500 Digital Station Module**

Provides, depending on variant, an additional 16 or 30 DS ports for supported Avaya digital phones



#### **IP500 Phone Module**

Provides, depending on variant, an additional 16 or 30 PHONE ports for analog phones.



**IP Office Installation** Page 28 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

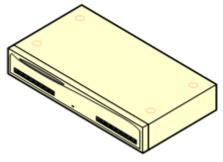
# 2.8.2 IP400 External Expansion Modules

The following IP400 external expansion modules are supported by IP Office 5.0. Except for the WAN3 10/100, these modules can also be used with an IP500 control unit.

#### • IP400 Analog Trunk Module (ATM16)

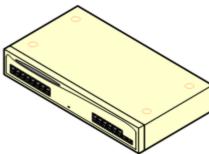
Provides an additional 16 <u>ANALOG</u> ports for connection of analog trunks. Supports both loop-start and ground-start trunks.

- Available in a number of variants for different locales.
- Use with ground start trunks requires that the trunk module and the IP Office control unit are grounded.



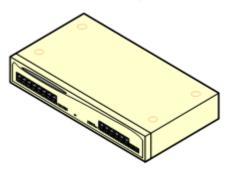
#### • IP400 Digital Station Module (DS16/DS30)

Provides, depending on the variant, an additional 16 or 30 <u>DS</u> ports for supported Avaya digital phones. This module has been superseded by the Digital Station V2.



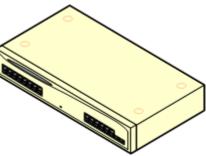
• IP400 Digital Station Module V2 (DS16 V2/DS30 V2)

Provides, depending on variant, an additional 16 or 30 <u>DS</u> ports for supported <u>Avaya digital phones</u>. Supersedes the previous Digital Station module.



• IP400 Phone Module (Phone8/Phone16/Phone30)

Provides, depending on variant, an additional 8, 16 or 30 <u>POT</u> ports for analog phones. This module has been superseded by the Phone Module V2.



• IP400 Phone Module V2 (Phone8 V2/Phone16 V2/Phone30 V2)

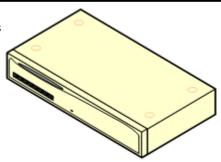
Provides, depending on variant, an additional 8, 16 or 30 <a href="PHONE">PHONE</a> ports for analog phones. Supersedes the previous Phone module. With IP Office 3.1, the Phone V2 supports a wider range of message waiting indication (MWI) options than Phone V1 modules.

 With V2 units, the labeling of analog phone ports was changed from POT to PHONE.



#### IP400 So8 Module

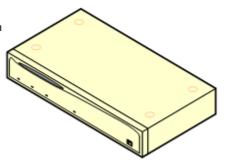
Provides 8 ETSI <u>BRI-So</u> ports for the connection of ISDN devices. This unit is not intended to support BRI trunks.



#### **IP400 WAN3 10/100 Module**

Provides on its rear an additional three 37-way  $\underline{\text{D-type WAN}}$  ports. These can be used for the connection of  $\underline{\text{V.24}}$ ,  $\underline{\text{V.35}}$  and  $\underline{\text{X.21}}$  WAN services. The module connects to the control unit via a LAN port rather than an expansion port.

- The WAN3 has been superseded by the WAN3 10/100 and is not supported by IP Office 3.2 and higher.
- IP Office systems are restricted to a maximum of 2 WAN3 modules regardless of the control unit type.
- This module is not supported with the IP500.



IP Office Installation Page 30 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# 2.9 Other Cards

Each IP Office control unit can be fitted with a number of internal cards. The cards supported depend on the control unit type.

#### **Modem Cards**



These cards provide modem circuits to answer incoming V.90 analog modem calls.

 The first analog trunk on control units fitted with analog trunks can be set to answer V.32 analog modem calls. Whilst in this mode, the trunk cannot be used for voice calls.

Modem Cards	SAP Code	Small Office Edition	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
Internal Modem Card/Modem 12: Provides 12 V.90 modem channels, 4 only in the IP403 control unit.	700343452	×	7	7	×
Modem 2 Card: Provides 2 V.90 modem channels.	700185226	×	7	7	×

#### **Embedded Voicemail Memory Cards**

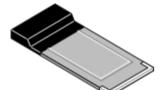


These cards provide message and prompt storage space for embedded voicemail and auto-attendant options. The cards used are specially formatted compact flash cards.

Embedded Voicemail Memory Cards	SAP Code	Small Office Edition	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
Small Office Edition Memory Card: Supports a 64Mb Compact Flash card fitted in a PCMCIA slot caddy. This provides up to 10 hours of compressed message and prompt storage. Compression uses voice compression channels during usage.	700289721	,	×	X	×
IP406 V2 Memory Card: Supports a 512MB Compact Flash card. This provides up to 15 hours of uncompressed message storage.	700343460	×	,	×	,

- Memory cards in these slots can also be used for storage of files normally obtained via TFTP transfer. For example the music-on-hold .wav file and supported 4600 Series/5600 Series software files. This will however reduce storage space for prompt and message files if embedded voicemail is being used.
- IP Office systems that have downloaded an internal music on hold source can then backup and restore that music on hold to and from the memory card.
- Non-Avaya cards can be used for file storage but will not support Embedded Voicemail.

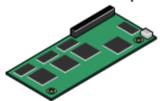
#### **Small Office Edition Wireless Card**



The Small Office Edition supports an Avaya supplied 802.11b WiFi wireless card. This allows the control unit to act as a wireless access point.

Wireless Card	SAP Code	Small Office Edition	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
Wireless Card	700289739	1	×	×	×

#### **IP400 Voice Compression Modules**



VCM cards are used to provide voice compression channels for calls between IP and non-IP devices, devices being both trunks and extensions. VCM cards with differing numbers of voice compression channels are available.

- For the Small Office Edition control unit, either 3 or 16 voice compression channels with 40ms echo cancellation are pre-built into the module. These cannot be changed.
- For IP500 control units, voice compression channels can be added using either IP400 VCM modules mounted on a IP500 Carrier Card or using IP500 VCM cards.

VCM Cards		SAP Code	Small Office Edition	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
25ms echo cancellation.	IP400 VCM5*	700185119	×	7	~	×
	IP400 VCM10*	700185127	×	-	7	×
	IP400 VCM20*	700185135	×	7	7	×
	IP400 VCM30	700293939	×	1	1	<b>y</b>
64ms echo cancellation.	IP400 VCM4	700359854	×	1	7	<b>J</b>
	IP400 VCM8	700359862	×	1	1	<b>y</b>
	IP400 VCM16	700359870	×	1	7	<b>J</b>
	IP400 VCM24	700359888	×	1	7	<b>J</b>
Number of IP400 VCM cards.		0	1	2	2	
Maximum number of channels.		3/16	30	60	128	

• \*These modules are still supported but are no longer available from Avaya.

# 2.10 Power Supplies

The IP500 has an internal power supply unit and so only requires a suitable locale specific power cord.

Small Office Edition, IP406 V2, IP412 control units and external expansion modules are all supplied with an external power supply unit (PSU). These external power supply units include an integral 1.5 meter lead for connection to the control unit or expansion module. A <u>power cord</u> for connection from the PSU to the power outlet is not included as this varies by locale. The appropriate power cord must be ordered separately or sourced locally.

Additional power supply units are required for 4450, EU24, XM24 and T3 DSS add-on modules and may also be required for 4600 Series/5600 Series IP phones.

Area	Туре	Used on:	Connector Type	
IP Office Control Units and External Expansion Modules	40W PSU	Analog, Digital Station V1, Phone V1.	IEC60320 C7	
	45W Earthed PSU	Small Office Edition.	IEC60320 C13	
	60W Earthed PSU	IP406 V2, IP412, IP400 Digital Station V2, IP400 Phone V2, IP400 So8, IP400 WAN3 10/100, IP500 Phone 30, IP500 Digital Station 30.		
IP Phones and Phone Add-Ons	1151D1	All phones with XM24 Phone add-ons. All phones with EU24/EU24BL Phone add-ons unless using	999	
	1151D2	Class 3 PoE. 4600 and 56000 Series IP Phones when not using a PoE.		
	1600PWR 5V	Plug-top PSU used with 1600 Series phones on IP Office when not being power using PoE.	Various country variants.	

- Some units previously supplied with a 40W unearthed PSU are now approved for and supplied with a 60W earthed PSU. That changes affects the IP412, So8 and WAN3 10/100 units.
- The 1151D2 is the same as the 1151D1 except that it includes a backup battery that is charged during normal operation. This can provide typically 15 minutes backup at maximum load (20 Watts) and up to 8 hours at light load (2 Watts).
- Avaya 4600 Series and 5600 Series can use IEEE 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) power supplies. Refer to the IP
  Office IP Phone Installation Manual for full details.

# 2.11 Power Supply Cords

Each control unit and expansion module requires a switched power outlet socket rated at 110-240V ac, 50-60Hz. Connection from that power outlet socket requires an appropriate locale specific power cord which is not supplied with the unit and must be ordered separately.

Power cords must not be attached to the building surface or run through walls, ceilings, floors and similar openings. Installation measures must be taken to prevent physical damage to the power supply cord, including proper routing of the power supply cord and provision of a socket outlet near the fixed equipment or positioning of the equipment near a socket outlet.

For locales not detailed below an appropriate power cord must be obtained locally.

Power Cord Type	Power Outlet Plug Type	Locales	SAP Codes
Earthed Power Cords (IEC60320 C13)	CEE7/7 (Schuko)	Europe and South Africa.	700289762
Control Units  IP500.  IP406 V2.  IP412.*  Small Office Edition.  IP400 External Expansion Modules  Digital Station V2.	BS1363	Czech Republic, Ireland, United Kingdom.	700289747
<ul> <li>Phone V2.</li> <li>So8.*</li> <li>WAN3 10/100.*</li> <li>IP500 External Expansion Modules</li> <li>BRI So8.</li> <li>Digital Station 16/30.</li> </ul>	NEMA5-15P / CS22.2 No.42	North, Central and South America.	700289770
• Phone 16/30.	CPCS-CCC	China.	700261977
Unearthed Power Cord (IEC60320 C7)	CEE7/16 (Europlug)	Europe and South Africa.	700213382
<ul> <li>IP400 External Expansion Modules</li> <li>Analog.</li> <li>Digital Station V1.</li> <li>Phone V1.</li> <li>IP500 External Expansion Modules</li> <li>Analog Trunk 16.</li> </ul>	BS1363	Czech Republic, Ireland, United Kingdom.	700213374
	NEMA1-15	North, Central and South America.	700213390
		Korea.	700254519
		China.	700314172

<sup>\*</sup>Older units were supplied with a 40W unearthed PSU and required an IEC60320 C7 power cord.

# 2.12 Power Supply Backup

The use of an Uninterrupted Power Supply (UPS) with any telephone system is recommended. Even at sites that rarely lose electrical power, that power may occasionally have to be switched off for maintenance of other equipment. In addition, most UPS's also provide an element of power conditioning, reducing spikes and surges.

The capacity of UPS systems and the total equipment load the UPS is expected to support are usually quoted in VA. Where equipment load is quoted in Watts, multiply by 1.4 to get the VA load.

The calculation of how much UPS capacity is required depends on several choices.

#### · What equipment to place on the UPS?

Remember to include server PC's such as the voicemail and Feature Key Server PC's. It is recommended that the total load on a new UPS is never greater than 75% capacity, thus allowing for future equipment.

#### How many minutes of UPS support is required?

Actual UPS runtime is variable, it depends on what percentage of the UPS's capacity the total equipment load represents. For example, a 1000VA capacity UPS may only support a 1000VA (100%) load for 5 minutes. This relationship is not linear, the same UPS would support a 500VA (50%) load for 16 minutes. Therefore the lower the percentage of capacity used, the increasingly longer the UPS runtime, typically up to 8 hours maximum. Remember also that for most UPS's the ratio of discharge to full recharge time is 1:10.

#### How many output sockets does the UPS provide?

Multiple UPS units may be required to ensure that every item of supported equipment has its own supply socket.

The web site <a href="http://ups.avayaups.com">http://ups.avayaups.com</a> provides a calculator into which you can enter the equipment you want supported on a UPS. It will then display various UPS options. The site uses VA values for typical IP Office systems. However, if more specific values are required for a particular system, the table below can be used to enter values.

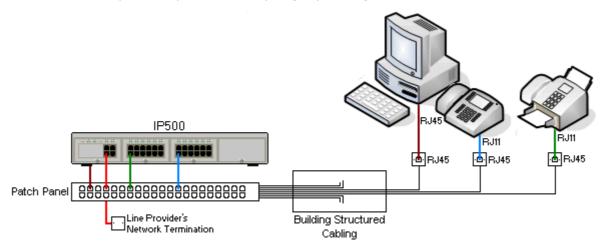
Typical IP Office System	VA	Typical IP Office System	VA
Small Office Edition	17	IP412 System	312
IP406 V2 System	168	IP500 System	230
Individual Equipment	VA	Individual Equipment	VA
Small Office Edition	17	So8 Module	34
IP406 V2 Control Unit	23	Phone 8 Module	17
IP412 Control Unit	25	Phone 16 Module	23
Analog 16 Module	88	Phone 30 Module	42
Digital Station 16 Module	34	Typical Server PC	600
Digital Station 30 Module	42	Typical Desktop PC	400
WAN3 Module	17	Mid Span PSU - 6 ports	150
		Mid Span PSU - 12/24 ports	300

• The 1151D2 power supply unit for Avaya H.323 IP phones includes a backup battery. This typically provides 15 minutes backup at maximum load (20 Watts) and up to 8 hours at light load (2 Watts).

# 2.13 Cabling and Cables

The IP Office systems are designed primarily for use within an RJ45 structured cabling system using CAT3 unshielded twisted-pair (UTP) cabling and RJ45 sockets.

A structured cabling system is one where cables are run from a central RJ45 patch panel in the communications/data room to individual RJ45 sockets at user's desk. All wires in each cable between the patch panel and the desk socket are connected straight through. This arrangement allows devices connected at the patch panel to be swapped to match the type of device that needs to be connected at the user socket. For example, making one user socket a phone port and another user socket a computer LAN port, without requiring any rewiring of the cables in between.



#### • Traditional IDC Punchdown Wiring Installations

Where necessary, the far end RJ45 plug can be stripped from IP Office cables and wired into traditional wiring systems using punch-block connectors. This type of installation should be performed by an experienced wiring technician.

#### **Trunk Connections**

The majority of IP Office trunk ports use RJ45 connectors for acceptance of an RJ45-to-RJ45 cable. However, connection at the line providers end may require use of a different plug type in order to match the line providers equipment.

#### • RJ11 Phone Connectors

Many phones use RJ11 sockets and are supplied with RJ11-to-RJ11 cables. RJ11 plugs can be inserted into RJ45 sockets and in many case the connection will work. However this is not recommended or supported as the connection lock is not truly positive and may become disconnected. An RJ45-to-RJ11 cable is available for these connections.

**IP Office Installation** Page 36 **IP Office** 

## **Standard IP Office Cables**

The following are Avaya standard cables available for use with IP Office systems. The maximum length is applicable if the standard Avaya cable is replaced with an alternate cable.

Cable	Description	SAP Code	Standard Length	Maximum Length
9-Way DTE Cable	Connects to control unit RS232 DTE port. 9-Way D-type plug to 9-way D-type socket.	-	2m/6'6''.	2m/6'6".
Structured Cabling DS Line Cable	Connects from RJ45 sockets to RJ11 socketed DS and analog phones.	700047871	4m/13'2".	See table below.
BRI/PRI Trunk Cable	Connects BRI/PRI trunk ports to the line providers network termination point. RJ45 to RJ45. Red.	700213440	3m/9'10''.	-
Expansion Interconnect Cable	Connects the control unit to expansion modules (except WAN3 modules). RJ45 to RJ45. Blue.	700213457	1m/3'3".	1m/3'3".
LAN Cable	Connects from IP Office LAN ports to IP devices. RJ45 to RJ45. Grey.	700213481	3m/9'10".	100m/328'.
LAN Interconnect Cable	Connects WAN3 module to the control unit. Replace with a LAN crossover cable for IP412 control units. Green.	700213465	1m/3'3".	_
LAN Crossover Cable	Used for connection of IP devices to LAN ports on the IP412 control unit. Black	700213473	3m/9'10''.	100m/328'.
V.24 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 25-way D-type plug.	700213416	3m/9'10".	5m/16'5''
V.35 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 34-way MRAC plug.	700213424	3m/9'10".	5m/16'5''
X.21 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 15-way D-type plug.	700213408	3m/9'10''.	5m/16'5''

The table below details the maximum total cable distances for DS and analog extensions using different cable types.

	Unshielde			
Telephone	AWG22 (0.65mm)	AWG24 (0.5mm)	AWG26 (0.4mm)	CW1308
2400/5400 Series	1200m/3937'.	1000m/3280'.	670m/2200'.	400m/1310'.
4406D Phone	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
4412D Phone	1000m/3280'.	700m/2295'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
4424D	500m/1640'.	500m/1640'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
6400 Series	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
T3 Series (Upn)	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	-
Analog Phones	1000m/3280'.	1000m/ 3280'.	400m/1640'.	800m/2620'.

# 2.14 Grounding

Use of ground connections reduces the likelihood of problems in most telephony and data systems. This is especially important in buildings where multiple items of equipment are interconnected using long cable runs, for example phone and data networks.

All IP Office control units and external expansion modules must be connected to a functional ground. In some cases, such as ground start trunks, in addition to being a protective measure this is a functional requirement for the equipment to operate. In other cases it may be a locale regulatory requirement and or a necessary protective step, for example areas of high lightning risk.

## WARNING

During installation do not assume that ground points are correctly connected to ground. Test ground points before relying on them to ground connected equipment.

The ground point on IP Office control units and external expansion modules are marked with a H or  $\Theta$  symbol. Ground connections to these points should use a 14 AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve for a functional ground or green and yellow sleeve for a protective ground.

#### · Additional protective equipment

In addition to grounding, additional protective equipment will be required in the following situations. Refer to "Out of Building Telephone Installations".

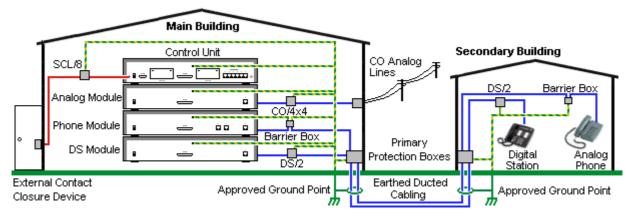
- On any Digital Station or Phones external expansion module connected to an extension located in another building.
- In the Republic of South Africa, on all Analog Trunk external expansion modules (ATM16) and on any control units containing an analog trunk cards (ATM4/ATM4U).

**IP Office Installation** Page 38 **IP Office** 

# 2.15 Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections

The following are the only supported scenarios in which wired extensions and devices outside the main building can be connected to the IP Office system. In these scenarios, additional protection, in the form of protective grounding and surge protectors, must be fitted.

• 👫 The fitting of additional protection does not remove the risk of damage. It merely reduces the chances of damage.



#### **Cabling Requirements**

- Cables of different types, for example trunk lines, extensions, ground and power connections, should be kept separate.
- All cabling between building should be enclosed in grounded ducting. Ideally this ducting should be buried.
- A Primary Protection Box must be provided at the point where the cables enter the building. This should be three point protection (tip, ring and ground). Typically this would be gas tube protection provided by the local telephone company. The ground wire must be thick enough to handle all the lines being affected by indirect strike at the same time.

Connection Type	Protection Device Type	Requirement
DS Phone Extensions  ⚠ Digital Station Expansion module DS ports only.	ITWLinx towerMAX DS/2 Supports up to 4 connections. (This device was previously referred to as the Avaya 146E).	Connection from the expansion module to the phone must be via a surge protector at each end and via the primary protection point in each building.
Analog Phone Extensions  Phones Expansion module ( POT or PHONE) ports only.	IP Office Barrier Box Supports a single connection. Maximum of 16 on any expansion module.	<ul> <li>The IP Office expansion module and control unit and IROB devices must be connected to the protective ground point in their building.</li> <li>The between building connection must be via earthed ducting, preferable underground. The cable must not be exposed externally at any point.</li> </ul>
Analog Trunks	ITWLinx towerMAX CO/4x4 Supports up to 4 two-wire lines. (This device was previously referred to as the Avaya 146C).	For installations in the Republic of South Africa, the fitting of surge protection on analog trunks is a requirement.  For other locations where the risk of lightning strikes is felt to be high, additional protection of incoming analog trunks is recommended.
External Output Switch	ITWLinx towerMAX SCL/8 (This device was previously referred to as the Avaya 146G)	Connections from an IP Office Ext O/P port to an external relay device must be via a surge protector.

The towerMAX range of devices are supplied by ITWLinx (<a href="http://www.itwlinx.com">http://www.itwlinx.com</a>).

# 2.16 Wall and Rack Mounting

All the IP Office control units are designed to be free-standing. On systems with external expansion modules, the control unit and modules are intended to be stacked.

Using additional option mounting kits, some systems can be wall or rack mounted.

	Wall Mount	Rack Mount
Small Office Edition	<i>-</i>	×
IP400 Control Unit	×	<i>,</i>
IP400 External Expansion Modules	×	<i>J</i>
IP500 Control Unit	<b>√</b>	<i>J</i>
IP500 External Expansion Modules	×	<i>,</i>

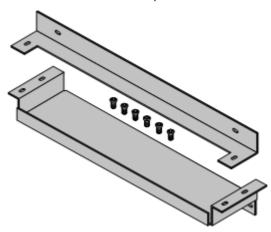
# **Wall Mounting**

The Small Office Edition control unit can be wall mounted if required. The base of the unit includes mouldings suitable for this purpose and an additional securing bracket is supplied with the unit.

The IP500 control unit can also be wall mounted if not using an external expansion units. An IP500 wall mounting kit is required in addition to suitable wall fixings.

## • IP500 Wall Mounting Kit (SAP Code 700430150)

This kit must be used when wall mounting an IP500 control unit. Additional 4.5mm fixings suitable for the wall type are required. A clearance of 500mm around the control unit is required.



IP Office Installation
IP Office
Page 40
15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

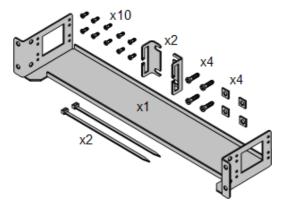
#### **Rack Mounting**

With the exception of the Small Office Edition, all IP Office control units and external expansion modules can be rack mounted into standard 19" rack systems. Each unit requires a 2U slot space within the rack. Rack mounting requires an IP400 or IP500 rack mounting kit for each control unit and external expansion module.

Where IP Office systems are being rack mounted, the effect of conditions with the rack cabinet must be considered. For example the rack temperature may be above the room temperature and airflow within the rack will be restricted. The environmental requirements for the individual IP Office units are still applicable.

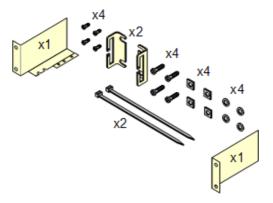
#### • IP500 Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700429202)

This kit contains all the components required for the rack mounting of a single IP500 control unit or IP500 external expansion module. This includes screws for fixing of the brackets to the module, bolts for securing the module in the rack and cable tidy brackets.



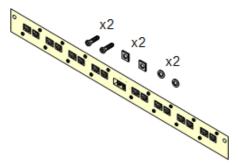
#### • IP400 Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700210800)

This kit contains all the components required for the rack mounting of a single control unit or expansion module. This includes screws for fixing of the brackets to the module and bolts for securing the module in the rack.



# • Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700293905)

Barrier boxes must be used for out-of-building analog phone extensions. This bracket allows up to 8 IP Office barrier boxes to be rack mounted and simplifies the number of connections to the protective ground point in the rack. This kit must be used when more than 3 barrier boxes are in use and supports a maximum of 16 barrier boxes for a single external expansion module.



IP Office Installation Page 41 **IP Office** 

# 2.17 Feature Key Dongles

Various IP Office features and applications require entry of a licence key or keys into the system's configuration. Each licence key is a unique 32-character number based on the feature being activated and the serial number of a Feature Key dongle installed somewhere with the IP Office system.



Uses a feature key dongle inserted or attached to the rear of the control unit. This method can be used with any of the IP Office control units supported by IP Office 4.0 and is mandatory with the IP500 control unit.



**PC-Base Licensing** 

This method uses a dongle attached to a PC running the IP Office Feature Key server application. This PC must be on the same LAN segment as the IP Office control unit. Typically the dongle and IP Office Feature Key server application are installed on the same PC as the IP Office Voicemail Pro application if present.

There are three type of Feature Key dongle available. The serial number is printed either directly onto the dongle or onto a label on the dongle.

Feature K	еу Туре	Description	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP50 0	SAP Code
Smart Card		Inserts into a dedicated slot on the rear of the IP500 control unit. This card is required on IP500 systems even if not using any IP Office licenses.	×	X	×	7	MU-Law 700417470 A-Law 700417488
Serial		Plugs directly into the DTE serial port on the rear of the control unit allowing PC-less operation.	7	7	1	×	700293095
Parallel		Plugs into the appropriate port on a PC running the IP Office Feature Key server application. This PC must on the same LAN segment as the IP Office control unit.	7	7	7	×	700185234
USB		Control diffe.	1	1	1	×	700261506

## **Software Upgrades**

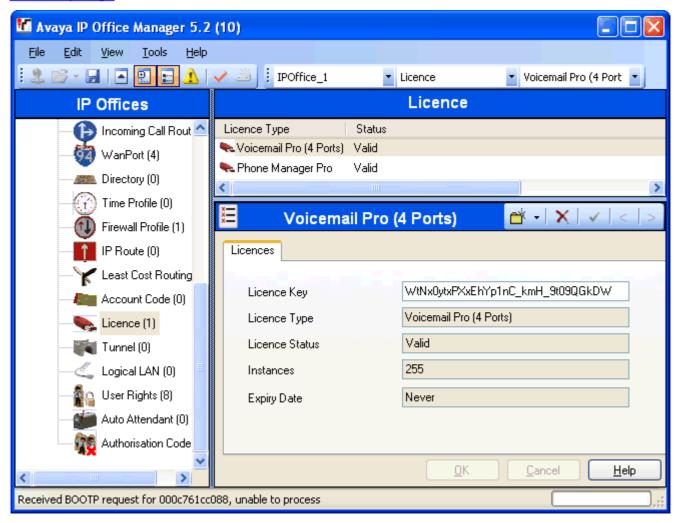
When upgrading the IP Office administrator applications suite on a PC hosting the Feature Key Server software, the USB feature key dongle should be removed prior to the upgrade. Following the upgrade, reinsert the USB Feature Key and either restart the PC or manually restart the Sentinel System Driver service.

If the Feature Key Server software is upgraded with the USB Feature Key installed and all licenses are now reported as invalid, remove the USB Feature Key and the Feature Key server software. Ensure that the USB Feature Key is uninstalled from the list of USB Hardware on the USB port. Then reinstall the Feature Key Server software.

**IP Office Installation** Page 42 **IP Office** 

# 2.18 License Keys

Various IP Office features and applications require entry of <u>license keys</u> into the system's configuration. The license keys are unique 32-character codes based on the feature being activated and the serial number of the IP Office system's Feature Key dongle.



## • Example 1: Enabling Software Features

In the example above, the IP Office system has a valid Phone Manager Pro license. In this case the license is for 20 instances. That means that up to 20 IP Office users can be configured to use Phone Manager Pro simultaneously. Their previously license free Phone Manager Lite software will automatically change to display Phone Manager Pro features.

## • Example 2: Enabling Software and Features

The example above the IP Office also a license for Voicemail Pro. This initial Voicemail Pro license provide for 4 ports between the IP Office system and the Voicemail Pro PC. Additional Voicemail Pro (ports) licenses can be added to cumulative increase the number of port up to the limit supported by the particular type of IP Office control unit.

When a license key is entered into the IP Office configuration, the following information is shown.

#### • Status

The status, which is Unknown until the configuration file is sent back to the IP Office system.

#### License

The name of the licensed feature. This may differ from the ordered RFA name.

#### Instances

Depending on the license, this may be the number of ports enabled or number of simultaneous users of the licensed feature. Sometime the number of instances is specified in the license name.

#### Expires

Most purchased licenses have no expiry setting. For some features, trial licenses may be available which will have an expiry date.

# 2.19 IP Office Phones

IP Office 5.0 supports the following phones and phone add-ons. Availability may be subject to local restrictions.

Digital stations connect to the IP Office via DS ports.

Series	IP Office Supported Digital Station (DS) Phones	Region
2400	<u>2402, 2410, 2420</u> .	Global
4400	4406D, 4412D+, 4424D+. Not supported on the IP500 Digital Station card.	North America
5400	<u>5402, 5410, 5420</u> .	Global
6400	6408D, 6416D+M, 6424D+M.	Global
T3 (Upn)	T3 Compact, T3 Classic, T3 Comfort.	Europe, Middle East and Africa
_	3810 Wireless phone.	North America

IP Phones connect to the IP Office system via the RJ45 LAN or WAN.

Series	IP Office Supported H323 IP Phones	Region
1600	1603IP/SW, 1608, 1616	Global
3600	3616, 3620, 3626, 3641, 3645 (Connect via AVPP add-on module).	
4600	<u>4601</u> , <u>4602</u> , <u>4602SW</u> , <u>4610</u> , <u>4610SW</u> , <u>4620</u> , <u>4620SW</u> , <u>4621SW</u> , <u>4625</u> .	
5600	<u>5601</u> , <u>5602</u> , <u>5602SW</u> , <u>5610</u> , <u>5620</u> , <u>5621</u> .	
Softphone	Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone application (requires Phone Manager Pro and Phone Manager IP Audio licenses).	
T3 (IP)		Europe, Middle East and Africa
SIP Extensions	These phones attach using IP Endpoint licenses.	_
Others	Other IP softphones and hardphones require entry of an IP Endpoints license. Functionality beyond making and answering calls is not guaranteed by Avaya.	-

Analog phones and devices connect to <a href="PHONE">PHONE</a> ports with the IP Office system. However due to the variety of analog phones and device available no guarantee of operation is given. It is the responsibility of the IP Office installer and maintainer to test and verify the operation of proposed analog equipment.

Series	IP Office Recommended Analog Phones	Region
6200 Series	6211, 6219, 6221.	North America
Interquartz Gemini		Europe, Middle East, Africa, Asia- Pacific

Series	IP Office Supported DECT Phones	Region
IP DECT	3701, 3711 - Connection via IP DECT base stations.	Global
DECT R4	3720, 3725 - Connection via Unified DECT base stations.	Global

## 2.20 Core Software & BIN Files

Each IP Office control unit and expansion module contains and runs its own part of the IP Office core software. These parts take the form of .bin files (binary files).

IP400 control units and external expansion modules are supplied with a base level of core software .bin files loaded. Currently this base level is IP Office 2.1. Therefore one of the first steps of the installation process is to upgrade the modules from this base level to the level of IP Office core software required.

IP500 control units are supplied with a base level of IP Office software that acts as a software loader for upgrading the unit to the required software level. This software loader supports the LAN connection necessary for local PC to IP Office upgrade.

The .bin files for each IP Office software level are included on the IP Office Administrator Applications CD for that software level. They are installed from that CD as part of the IP Office Manager application. IP Office Manager can then be used to upgrade the .bin files loaded in the modules within an IP Office system.

Updated sets of software and bin files may also be made available through the Avaya support web site. See Web Sites.

#### Software Level

The IP Office core software level is expressed in the form X.Y(Z), for example 2.1(27), where X is the major software level, Y is the minor level and Z is the build number.

The following rules apply to the core software level used by modules within an IP Office system and between linked IP Office systems.

- All modules within an IP Office should run the same level of core software. Doing otherwise will lead to incorrect
  operation of the system.
- By default the IP500 runs in a software mode called IP Office Express. To run in full IP Office mode requires the addition of various licenses.

## **Upgrading**

Upgrading is performed using the Upgrade Wizard tool within the IP Office Manager application (File | Advanced | Upgrade). It displays the systems it can detect, there existing software level and the levels it has available.

#### • Check IP Office Technical Bulletins

Whenever upgrading check the latest IP Office Technical Bulletins for the various IP Office software releases involved before proceeding. These may contain information relating to changes that occurred after this document was completed. Bulletins are available from <a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a>.

## • Multi-Stage Upgrades

As indicated in the table below, the upgrade path may require several intermediate upgrades. Skipping an intermediate level may lead to incorrect system operation and configuration corruption. Multi-stage upgrades are only necessary for control units. External expansion modules can be upgraded directly between any two levels supported by the module.

Control Unit		Unvalidated Only	Validated
<u>IP406 V2</u>	ip406u.bin	_	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.0(999) > 3.1 > 3.1(999) > 3.2 > 5.0.
<u>IP412</u>	ip412.bin	1.3 > 2.1	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.1 > 3.2 > 5.0.
<u>IP500</u>	ip500.bin	-	4.0.0 > 5.0.

#### WAN3 10/100 Modules

In systems containing these modules, it is recommended that control unit and any other external expansion modules are upgraded first before then upgrading the WAN3 10/100 module.

#### Large Systems

In systems with a large number of external expansion modules, for example an IP412 with 12 external expansion modules, it may be necessary to upgrade the control unit first and then the modules.

There are three methods that the IP Office may use for upgrading, these are Validated, Offline and Unvalidated.

#### Validated Upgrade

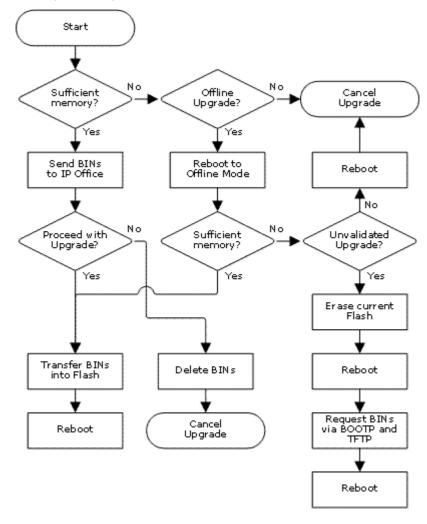
This is the preferred method and can be used with any IP Office system that already has IP Office 2.1 or higher software. By default the Validate option within the Upgrade Wizard is pre-selected. During this process, the required BIN files are first transferred to the IP Office's RAM memory. Only when the files are received will the IP Office overwrite the existing software in its Flash memory and restart using the new files.

#### Offline Upgrade

On some systems, it may not be possible for the validated upgrade to download all the BIN files required into the IP Office system's RAM memory. If this is the case, the IP Office will offer to reboot in Offline mode and then attempt to continue the validated upgrade. In offline mode the IP Office only supports the service necessary to allow upgrading, for example it does not support Small Community Networking (SCN). If in offline mode for more than 15 minutes without being upgraded, the IP Office will reboot again back to normal operation.

#### Unvalidated Upgrade

This is the least preferred upgrade method. It should only be used from a PC directly connected to the IP Office and with a fixed IP address on the same LAN domain as the IP Office LAN1. This method involves erasing the existing software in the IP Office's Flash memory and then copying the new BIN files directly to the Flash memory. Its uses BOOTP and TFTP and requires a BOOTP entry for the IP Office system to exist on the Manager PC. This method should not be used unless absolutely necessary.



# 2.21 Supported Country Locales

When a new or defaulted system's configuration is first opened in Manager, the value set in the Locale field (System | System | Locale) should always be checked and changed if necessary. The system's Locale sets factors such as the default ringing patterns and caller display settings. The locale also controls the language that a voicemail server will use for prompts.

This following table indicates locale settings supported for different functions. Note that this does not necessarily indicate support, availability or approval for IP Office within that country.

This following table indicates locale settings used within 4.0 and higher for different functions. Note that reference to a locale does not necessarily indicate support, availability or approval for IP Office within that country.

TLA	Locale	Language	Telephony	Phone Display	Applications			Voicemail			
				Display	Manager	Phone Manager	Soft Console	Conf' Center	EVM	Lite	Pro
ess	Argentina	Latin Spanish	1	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7
ena	Australia	UK English	<b>V</b>	1	7	7	7	1	7	1	7
nlb	Belgium	Dutch	1	-	7	-	-	×	7	7	7
frb	Belgium	French	-	1	7	7	7	1	7	7	7
ptb	Brazil	Brazilian	-	7	7	<b>J</b>	<b>J</b>	X	7	7	7
frc	Canada	Canadian French	-	<b>J</b>	×	×	×	X	7	7	7
esl	Chile	Latin Spanish	-	J	7	<b>J</b>	<b>J</b>	<b>J</b>	7	7	J
chs	China	Mandarin	-	X	X	<b>J</b>	<b>J</b>	X	7	7	7
eso	Colombia	Latin Spanish	1	7	7	<b>J</b>	<b>√</b>	7	7	7	7
dan	Denmark	Danish	-	<b>J</b>	X	<b>J</b>	<b>-</b>	X	7	7	7
fin	Finland	Suomi	-	<b>J</b>	×	<b>J</b>	<b>✓</b>	<b>J</b>	7	7	7
fra	France	French	-	-		<b>-</b>		-	7	7	7
deu	Germany	German	-	<b>J</b>	7	<b>J</b>	<b>J</b>	<b>J</b>	7	7	7
ell	Greece	Greek	-	X	×	X	X	X	×	7	7
zhh	Hong Kong	Cantonese	-	X	X	X	X	X	×	×	7
hun	Hungary	Hungarian	×	X	X	X	X	X	×	7	7
isl	Iceland	Icelandic	-	X	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
ind	India	UK English	-	X	7	7	7	1	×	7	7
ita	Italy	Italian	1	-	7	7	7	1	7	7	7
kor	Korea	Korean	-	X	×	<b>J</b>	<b>-</b>	X	7	7	7
esm	Mexico	Latin Spanish	1	1	7	7	7	1	7	7	7
nld	Netherlands	Dutch	-	1	7	7	7	X	7	1	1
enz	New Zealand	UK English	1	-	7	-	-	1	7	7	×
nor	Norway	Norwegian	-	1	X	7	7	X	7	7	7
esr	Peru	Latin Spanish	-	1	7	7	7	1	7	1	1
plk	Poland	Polish	1	×	×	×	×	×	×	7	1
ptg	Portugal	Portuguese	<b>V</b>	1	X	7	×	×	7	1	1
rus	Russia	Russian	<b>/</b>	×	X	7	7	×	7	1	7
ara	Saudi Arabia	UK English	<b>J</b>	×	7	7	7	7	×	×	×
ens	South Africa	UK English	-	1	7	7	7	1	1	J	×
esp	Spain	Spanish	1	1	7	7	7	×	7	7	7
sve	Sweden	Svenska	-	1	×	7	7	1	7	J	7
frs	Switzerland	French	-	1	X	×	X	×	7	J	7
cht	Taiwan	Putonghua	-	×	×	7	7	×	×	X	7
trk	Turkey	US English	1	1	7	7	7	1	×	Х	×
eng	UK	UK English	-	1	7	7	7	1	7	7	7
enu	USA	US English	-	1	7	7	7	1	7	7	7
esv	Venezuela	Latin Spanish	1	1	7	7	7	7	7	7	7

## • TLA:

These are the three character codes used by pre-3.2 IP Office systems to set locales. In IP Office 3.2 they have been replaced by selection of the required country or language by name. The special locale TTY may appear for some users. This is used in conjunction with Voicemail Pro and TTY devices for hearing impaired users. Refer to the Voicemail Pro Installation manual for full details.

#### Locale:

The country represented by the locale.

#### Language:

The voicemail prompt language used for that locale.

#### Manager:

Indicates that the IP Office Manager application can run in the specific locale language. Manager uses the best match it has (French, German, Brazilian, Dutch, Italian, Mexican Spanish or US English) for the regional location settings setting of the PC on which it is running, otherwise it defaults to UK English. If required the language used within the Manager screens can be overridden.

#### · Telephony:

The IP Office provides default telephony settings matching the normal expected defaults for the locale.

#### · Phone Display:

Indicates that display messages from the IP Office to Avaya <u>DS</u> and IP phones can be sent using the appropriate language for that locale. Note that the user locale can be used to override the system locale for these messages. Note also that some phones support their own language selection options for menus displayed by the phone's software.

#### Voicemail:

These columns indicate for which locales the different Avaya IP Office voicemail servers can provide the appropriate language prompts. In all cases, the system locale can be overridden by setting a different user locale.

#### EVM:

Indicates that the locale is recognized by Embedded Voicemail and appropriate language prompts are then used. If an unsupported locale is used, Embedded Voicemail will attempt the best match using the first two characters of the locale.

• **VM Lite:** (Voicemail Lite is not supported on IP Office 5.0 and higher)
Indicates that the locale is recognized by Voicemail Lite and appropriate language prompts are then used. For an unsupported locale is used, or one for which the necessary prompts are not available, Voicemail Lite will attempt the best match using a sequence of alternate locales.

#### • VM Pro:

Indicates that the locale is recognized by Voicemail Pro and appropriate language prompts are then used. For an unsupported locale is used, or one for which the necessary prompts are not available, Voicemail Pro will attempt the best match using a sequence of alternate locales. For example French Canadian (frc) fallback to French (fra), then US English (enu) and finally UK English (eng). Note that the languages available are selectable during Voicemail Pro installation. For further details refer to the Voicemail Pro manual.

IP Office Installation Page 48
IP Office 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# 2.22 Programming Applications

The following Windows applications are used to program and maintain an IP Office system. They run on PC's connected to the IP Office system via its LAN interface. These applications are all provided on the IP Office Administrator Applications CD and don't require any licenses.

Typically, with the exception of SNMP, all these applications would be installed onto a single PC on the customer's LAN in order to ensure that each is available on site if required. Due to the nature of the applications, this should be a secure PC. If a voicemail server PC is also being installed, the same PC can be used for the programming and maintenance applications.

For maintainers most of these applications can also be run remotely if a route for data connections to the customer IP Office exists from the maintainers location.

#### • IP Office Manager

This tool is used to access all parts of the IP Office configuration. Different levels of access can be defined to control which parts of the configuration the Manager user can view and alter. Manager is also used to upgrade the software files used by an IP Office system. When running is can also act as the TFTP server from which upgradeable Avaya phones can request new software.

## **System Status Application**

This application can be used to inspect the current status of IP Office lines and extensions and to view records of recent alarms and events. It runs as a Java application.

#### **Feature Key Server**

This application is required for IP Office systems where licenses are being validated against a parallel or USB port Feature Key dongle. It must be installed on the same PC as the dongle.

#### **SNMP MIB's**

Not an application as such. Using IP Office SNMP MIB files the status of the IP Office system to be monitored by 3rd-party SNMP applications such as Castlerock and HP OpenView. When configured for SNMP operation, the IP Office can also send alerts for potential problems. IP Office 3.2 and higher supports the sending of the same alerts used for SNMP to SMTP email addresses.

# Monitor (SysMon)

Monitor is a tool that can show a trace of all activity on the IP Office system in detail. As a consequence, interpretation of Monitor traces requires a high-level of data and telephony protocol knowledge. Despite that however, all IP Office installers and maintainers need to understand how to run Monitor when necessary as Avaya may request copies of Monitor traces to resolve support issues.

This application is used to display current calls in progress. Call Status is not supported on IP Office 4.0 but is still included in the IP Office Admin applications suite for maintainers who are supported IP Office's with earlier software levels.

# 2.23 User Applications

Through its LAN interfaces, the IP Office is able to let users run a number of Windows applications that operate in parallel with their telephones.

These applications are installed from the IP Office User Applications CD. Some of them require licenses to be entered into the IP Office system's configuration to enable features or to set the number of simultaneous users.

#### Phone Manager

Phone Manager allows a user to control and monitor their phone through their PC. For Avaya phones that support handsfree operation, Phone Manager can be used to make and answer calls. During use, Phone Manager records details of calls made, answered and missed. It can also be configured to show the status of other users on the system. Phone Manager also allows the user to access and change many of the setting stored in the IP Office configuration that relate to their own phone operation, for example their forwarding destination numbers. Phone Manager software can operate in several modes:

#### • Phone Manager Lite

The default mode of Phone Manager. Requires no license, this application can be installed for any IP Office user.

#### Phone Manager Pro

Users configured for Phone Manager Pro are able to access a range of additional features. Phone Manager Pro requires entry of licenses into the IP Office system. The licenses also control the number of simultaneous Phone Manager Pro users. The user's Phone Manager software then automatically changes from Lite mode to Professional Edition mode.

#### Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone

This is a PC softphone mode of Phone Manager operation. The user acts as a VoIP extension, making calls through the speaker and microphone of their PC. This mode requires further licenses in addition to the Phone Manager Pro licenses.

#### TAPILink Lite

The Microsoft Telephony Application Program Interface (TAPI) allows TAPI compliant applications to interact with IP Office phones by installing an IP Office TAPI driver. TAPILink Lite does not require any licenses entered into the IP Office system's configuration. It allows TAPI compliant applications such as Outlook to make and answer calls. The speech part of the calls is still via the user's physical phone.

#### SoftConsole

This is a licensed application. It is intended for telephone system operators or receptionists. Its displays details of calls directed to the user and allows them to quickly see the status of the callers required destination and transfer the call. The SoftConsole user is able to access a range of details about the status of users and groups on the IP Office system. Up to 4 simultaneous SoftConsole users can be licensed.

## • Conferencing Center

This is a server application that is then accessed via web browser. It also users with a Conferencing Center password to book conferences. Details of the conference invitees can be entered and those people set to receive either an email or, using IP Office Voicemail Pro, a call asking them to join the conference.

#### • IP Office MS-CRM

Microsoft's MS-CRM is an application that allows the customer to maintain a database of their business contacts and details of interactions with those contacts. The IP Office MS-CRM component consists of three parts, one installed on the MS-CRM user PC, one installed on the customer's MS-CRM server and a license entered into the IP Office system's configuration. It allows the MS-CRM user to make and answer calls through their MS-CRM application.

For pre-IP Office 5.0, the Conferencing Center application required the IP500 control unit to include an **IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional** license. This no longer applies for IP Office 5.0+.

# 2.24 Voicemail Applications

The IP Office supports a range of applications for the recording and playing of voicemail messages.

#### Embedded Voicemail

Also called Integral Voicemail, this application is supported on Small Office Edition, IP406 V2 and IP500 control units. It is unlicensed but requires the addition of an Avaya memory card to store messages and prompts. Embedded Voicemail supports basic voicemail mailbox operation, simple auto-attendants and hunt group announcements.

#### Voicemail Pro

This application requires various licenses entered into the IP Office configuration to control the features it offers and the number of simultaneous connections, up to 40 on the IP500 control unit. The operation of Voicemail Pro can be customized to provide special services.

#### Campaigns

The Voicemail Pro can be configured to run a campaign. This consists of a series of questions for which the Voicemail Pro records the callers answer or key presses. The resulting recordings can then be played back by users. The web aspect of campaigns allows user to perform this playback and processing of campaign recordings via their web browser. This requires a web server to be run on the same PC as the Voicemail Pro software.

#### • Text to Speech (TTS)

Through adding additional licenses, the Voicemail Pro is able to use the TTS functions of Windows to speak text and numbers to callers in addition to recording prompts. This is intended mainly for scenarios where the Voicemail Pro is obtaining text and number values from a customer database.

#### Unified Messaging Service (UMS)

Voicemail Pro supports a feature called voicemail email to send messages or message alerts to a user's email mailbox. This however is a one-way process with no link back to the user's voicemail mailbox on whether the email has been read or deleted. UMS allows this to become a two-way process, where users can play voicemail messages through their email mailbox or voicemail mailbox. UMS can be used to allow email access through the following routes:

#### Web Browser

Using a web browser the user can view and playback messages in the voicemail mailbox.

#### • IMAP Email Client

Using an email application that supports IMAP, for example Outlook, the user can see the contents of their voicemail mailbox and playback messages in the mailbox.

#### UMS Exchange 2007

IP Office 5.0 allows voicemail messages to be forwarded to an Exchange 2007 email account. That account is used as a users voicemail repository for all voicemail access. This mode is not compatible with the above two other UMS methods.

#### Database Integration

With an additional license, the Voicemail Pro can be integrated with customer database through Windows ODBC. When combined with TTS operation, this allows the construction of interactive voice response (IVR) applications on Voicemail Pro.

#### ContactStore for IP Office

Voicemail Pro can be used for manual and automatic call recording. Those recording are placed into a mailbox and treated as normal messages. Contact Store allows those recordings to be redirected into a database on the ContactStore PC. This allows recordings to be archived and searched separately from mailbox messages. This application requires entry of a license into the IP Office configuration.

For pre-IP Office 5.0, the applications above, except Embedded Voicemail, required the IP500 control unit to include an **IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional** license. This no longer applies for IP Office 5.0+.

For IP Office 5.0 and higher, Voicemail Lite is no longer supported.

# 2.25 Call Logging Applications

A wide range of 3rd -party applications exist to provide call logging and accounting for telephone systems. The IP Office has a number of options for providing call details to those applications.

## • Station Message Detail Reporting (SMDR)

This type of information can be output in two ways:

## • Delta Server SMDR Output

Supported for IP Office 1.0 and higher. This application receives call information from the IP Office systems which it then shares with other applications. The Delta Server does not require a license in the IP Office configuration. Only one Delta Server can be used with each IP Office system. The Delta server can be configured to output a call log of all calls made and received by the IP Office system. The Delta sever send these records to an SMDR file stored on the PC and which can then be accessed by 3rd-party call logging applications. The Delta Server can also send SMDR records to a remote IP address.

#### • Direct SMDR Output

IP Office 4.2 and higher, the IP Office control unit can directly output SMDR records to a specified IP address.

#### • Call Detail Records (CDR)

IP Office 3.1 to 4.2 supports the sending of CDR records via TCP or UDP to an IP address. A range of common CDR record formats are supported. This option is configured within the IP Office itself.

# 2.26 Call Center Applications

## • Delta Server

The applications below do not communicate directly with the IP Office system. They communicate across the LAN with a PC running the IP Office Delta Server application. This application receives call information from the IP Office systems which it then shares with other applications. The Delta Server does not require a license in the IP Office configuration. Only one Delta Server can be used with each IP Office system.

### • Compact Contact Center (CCC)

CCC is a reporting application designed for use in call centers. It provides a range of both real-time and historical reporting options. CCC consists of a CCC Server application that receives call information from the IP Office Delta Server, and a number of client applications for the displaying of that information. CCC and its clients are controlled by a range of licenses entered into the IP Office configuration.

• The CCC server applications are listed below. They are installed onto the same PC:

#### CCC Archiver

The Archiver manages the collection and storage of call activity information.

#### Wallboard Manager

Wallboards provide current information on the number of calls waiting, response times and service levels. Wallboard Manager provides the ability to control both physical wallboards and PC wallboards.

• The CCC clients are:

# • Call Center View (CCV)

Provides a realtime information about call center activity.

#### Alarm Reporter

Provides real-time and past 7-days information on alarms that have occurred within the call center.

#### PC Wallboard

The PC Wallboard allows call center agents and supervisors to display real-time call center performance information on their Windows PC screen.

#### Report Manager

Provides in depth historical reporting on calls, agents and groups.

#### • Workforce Management

This application allows CCC to share information with a third-party agent scheduling application - Blue Pumpkin.

## Customer Call Reporter

This application is accessed by web browser. It obtains data direct from the IP Office system and stores that data in an MS-SQL database. It can support up to 150 agents and 75 supervisors.

For pre-IP Office 5.0, the Compact Contact Center application required the IP500 control unit to include an **IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional** license. This no longer applies for IP Office 5.0+.

# 2.27 CTI Applications

#### TAPILink Pro

Using the same software as TAPILink Lite, TAPILink Pro provides all of the features and functionality of TAPILink Lite, but additionally provides third party CTI operation. This means that a single server can control and monitor any number of telephone devices. This requires entry of a CTI Link Pro license. TAPILink Pro also provides the ability to monitor and control groups. This allows an application to be notified when a call enters a queue, and can also redirect it to another location. TAPILink Pro also supports additional TAPI functionality such as:

- · Agent login.
- · Agent logout.
- · Set and retrieve divert destination.
- Set and retrieve extended divert status (Forward All Calls, Forward on Busy, Forward on No Answer, Do not Disturb).
- Retrieving the extension locale (language).
- · Set and clear the message waiting lamp.
- · Enable and disable group membership.
- Generate and detect DTMF digits and tones (requires the TAPI-WAV driver).

#### TAPI WAV driver

Provides software-based support for voice processing. Purchasing the CTI Link Pro RFA license key also enables 4 ports of voice processing; additional ports can be purchased in 4 port increments. The TAPI-WAV driver is for use with TAPI 2.1 only; for TAPI 3.0, IP Office supports the Media Service Provider (MSP) interface, defined by Microsoft in TAPI 3.0.

#### DevLink Pro

Provides a real-time event stream in addition to the SMDR interface provided in IP Office SMDR (see below). The real-time event stream takes the form of a call record, which is issued whenever the state of any endpoint of a call changes (typically there are two endpoints on a call, but for some circumstances, such as conference calls, intruded calls there may be more).

# 2.28 Application DVD's

The IP Office applications are available on a number of DVD's. These can be ordered at a nominal cost to cover order processing and delivery. Separate installation packages for IP Office applications can also be downloaded from the Avaya support website at <a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a>.

Title	Discs	Description	SAP Code
IP Office 5.0 Admin and User DVD	1	This DVD contains installation packages for all the main IP Office administration and user applications. It replaces the separate DVD's previously used for IP Office user application and administrator application suites.	700472863
Voicemail Pro ScanSoft TTS DVD	2	Contains text to speech engines for use with Voicemail Pro's TTS functions. Supports the same languages as Voicemail Pro pre-recorded prompts except Hungarian.	-

• It is acceptable to make copies of the Avaya IP Office CD's and DVD's listed above. However the content must remain intact, unaltered and without change or addition. Avaya does not accept any liability and responsibility for damage or problems arising from the use of such copies.

IP Office Installation
IP Office
Page 54
IP Office
15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

## 2.29 VoIP

The IP Office is a converged telephony system, that is it combines aspects of traditional PABX telephone systems and IP data network systems. This works at various levels.

- Individual phone users can control the operation of their phone through applications running on their PC.
- Data traffic can be routed from the LAN interface to a telephony trunk interface, for example a dial-up ISP connection.
- · Voice traffic can be routed across internal and or external data links. This option is referred to as voice over IP (VoIP).

The VoIP mode of operation can include IP trunks between customer systems and or H.323 IP telephones for users. In either case the following factors must be considered:

- The IP Office control unit must be fitted with voice compression channels. These channels are used whenever a IP
  device (trunk or extension) needs to communicate with a non-IP device (trunk or extension). See <u>Voice Compression</u>
  <u>Channels</u>.
- A network assessment is a mandatory requirement. For support issues with VoIP, Avaya may request access to the network assessment results and may refuse support if those are not available or satisfactory.

A network assessment would include a determination of the following:

- A network audit to review existing equipment and evaluate its capabilities, including its ability to meet both current and planned voice and data needs.
- A determination of network objectives, including the dominant traffic type, choice of technologies, and setting voice quality objectives.
- The assessment should leave you confident that the implemented network will have the capacity for the foreseen data and voice traffic, and can support H.323, DHCP, TFTP and jitter buffers in H.323 applications.
- An outline of the expected network assessment targets is:

Test	Minimum Assessment Target		
Latency	Less than 150ms.		
Packet Loss	Less than 2%.		
Duration	Monitor statistics once every minute for a full week.		

# 2.30 Voice Compression Channels

Calls to and from IP devices can require conversion to the audio codec format being used by the IP device. For IP Office systems this conversion is done by voice compression channels. These support the common IP audio codecs G711, G723 and G729a.

For IP400 control units channels can be added by fitting <u>IP400 Voice Compression Modules (VCMs)</u>. For the IP500 control units, channels can be added using <u>IP500 VCM cards and licenses</u> or IP400 Voice Compression Modules.

#### When are Voice Compression Channels Used

The voice compression channels are used as follows.

#### • IP Device to Non-IP Device

These calls require a voice compression channel for the duration of the call. If no channel is available, busy indication is returned to the caller.

#### • IP Device to IP Device

- Call progress tones (for example dial tone, secondary dial tone, etc) do not require voice compression channels with the following exceptions:
  - Short code confirmation, ARS camp on and account code entry tones require a voice compression channel.
  - Devices using G723 require a voice compression channel for all tones except call waiting.
- When a call is connected:
  - If the IP devices use the same audio codec no voice compression channel is used.
  - If the devices use differing audio codecs, a voice compression channel is required for each.

#### • Non-IP Device to Non-IP Device

No voice compression channels are required except for Small Office Edition Embedded Voicemail access.

#### Music on Hold

This is provided from the IP Office's TDM bus and therefore requires a voice compression channel when played to an IP device.

#### • Conference Resources and IP Devices

Conferencing resources are managed by the conference chip which is on the IP Office's TDM bus. Therefore, a voice compression channel is required for each IP device involved in a conference. This includes services that use conference resources such as call listen, intrusion, call recording and silent monitoring.

#### • Page Calls to IP Device

Page calls require 1 voice compression channel per audio codec being used by any IP devices involved. IP Office 4.0 and higher only uses G729a for page calls, therefore only requiring one channel but also only supporting pages to G729a capable devices.

## Voicemail Services and IP Devices

Calls to the IP Office voicemail servers are treated as data calls from the TDM bus. Therefore calls from an IP device to voicemail require a voice compression channel.

On the Small Office Edition, embedded voicemail uses voice compression channels for audio conversion.
 Therefore all calls to Small Office Edition embedded voicemail require a voice compression channel and calls from IP devices require two voice compression channels.

#### Fax Calls

These are voice calls but with a slightly wider frequency range than spoken voice calls. IP Office only supports fax across IP between IP Office systems with the Fax Transport option selected. It does not currently support T38.

#### SIP Calls

## SIP Line Call to/from Non-IP Devices

Voice compression channel required.

## • Outgoing SIP Line Call from IP Device

No voice compression channel required.

# Incoming SIP Line Call to IP Device

Voice compression channel reserved until call connected.

#### • T38 Fax Calls

IP Office 5.0+ supports T38 fax on SIP trunks and SIP extensions. Each T38 fax call uses a VCM channel.

- Within a Small Community Network, an T38 fax call can be converted to a call across across an H323 SCN lines using the IP Office **Fax Transport Support** protocol. This conversion uses 2 VCM channels.
- In order use T38 Fax connection, the Equipment Classification of an analog extension connected to a fax machine can be set Fax Machine. Additionally, a new short code feature Dial Fax is available.

Note: T3 IP devices must be configured to 20ms packet size for the above conditions to apply. If left configured for 10ms packet size, a voice compression channel is needed for all tones and for non-direct media calls.

## **Measuring Channel Usage**

The IP Office System Status Application can be used to display voice compression channel usage. Within the Resources section it displays the number of channel in use. It also displays how often there have been insufficient channels available and the last time such an event occurred.

The IP500 VCM cards, the level of channel usage is also indicated by the LED's (1 to 8) on the front of the  $\underline{\text{IP500 VCM}}$   $\underline{\text{card}}$ .

IP Office Installation Page 57
IP Office 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# 2.31 Training

Avaya University provides a wide range of training courses for IP Office and its associated applications. This includes courses necessary for IP Office resellers to become Avaya Authorized Channel Partners and for individuals to achieve IP Office certification.

Details of all the course can be found on the Avaya University web site (<a href="http://www.avaya-learning.com">http://www.avaya-learning.com</a>). The site can be used to check course availability and to book course. It also includes on-line courses and on-line course assessments. The site requires users to setup a user name and password in order to track their personal training record.

The Avaya University site also includes details of the processes necessary for achieving different levels of product certification. These processes allow installers and maintainers to achieve certification in different areas such as Selling, Design, Implementation, Maintenance, Voicemail and Contact Centers. Levels of individual certification within those areas are:

- Avaya Certified Associate (ACA).
- Avaya Certified Specialists (ACS).
- Avaya Certified Expert (ACE).

Key IP Office courses are:

Course	Course Code
IP Office Hardware and Applications Overview	AVA00136WEN
IP Office Data Components	AVA00138WEN
IP Office Voicemail Pro	AVA00139WEN
IP Office Implementation Workshop	AVA00140H00
IP Office Advanced Applications Workshop	AVA00484H00
IP Office Telephones End-User Training	AVA00619WEN
IP Office Telephones End-User Training ILT	AVA00619H00
IP DECT (Europe only)	AVA00757WEN
IP Office Maintenance and Troubleshooting Workshop	AVA00758H00
IP Office Release 4.0 Product Delta	-

## 2.32 Web Sites

Information to support the IP Office can be found on a number of web sites.

#### • Avaya - http://www.avaya.com

The official web site for Avaya. The front page also provides access to individual Avaya web sites for different countries.

## • Avaya Enterprise Portal - <a href="http://partner.avaya.com">http://partner.avaya.com</a>

This is the official web site for all Avaya Business Partners. The site requires registration for a user name and password. Once accessed, the site portal can be individually customized for what products and information types you wish to see and to be notified about by email.

#### Avaya Support - <a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a>

Contains documentation and other support materials for Avaya products including IP Office. Copies of the IP Office CD images are available from this site and updated core software .bin files.

#### Avaya University - <a href="http://www.avaya-learning.com">http://www.avaya-learning.com</a>

This site provides access to the full range of Avaya training courses. That includes both on-line courses, course assessments and access to details of classroom based courses. The site requires users to register in order to provide the user with access to details of their training record. See Training.

#### • Avaya Community - <a href="http://www.aucommunity.com">http://www.aucommunity.com</a>

This is the official discussion forum for Avaya product users. However it does not include any separate area for discussion of IP Office issues.

### • Avaya IP Office Knowledge Base - http://marketingtools.avaya.com/knowledgebase

Access to an on-line regularly updated version of the IP Office Knowledge Base.

# • Avaya UPS Calculator - <a href="http://ups.avayaups.com">http://ups.avayaups.com</a>

An online calculator for uninterruptable power supply (UPS) requirements. Allows specification of a range of equipment to be supported including IP Office 403, 406 and 412 control units. See Power Supply Backup (UPS).

#### · Other Non-Avaya Web Sites

A number of third-party web forums exist that discuss IP Office. These can act as useful source of information about how the IP Office is used. Some of these forums require you to be a member and to register. These are not official Avaya forums and their content is not monitored or sanctioned by Avaya.

- Tek-Tips: <a href="http://www.tek-tips.com">http://www.tek-tips.com</a>.
- IP Office Info: <a href="http://www.ipofficeinfo.com">http://www.ipofficeinfo.com</a>.
- Yahoo Groups: http://groups.yahoo.com/group/ipoffice.
- Lycos Forum: http://members.lycos.co.uk/ipoffice.
- PBX Tech: http://www.pbxtech.info/forumdisplay.php?f=8.
- IP Office Italian: http://www.ipoffice.it.
- IP Office UK: http://www.ipoffficeforum.co.uk.

# 2.33 IP500 Standard/Professional Edition

This section is retained for reference only. IP500 systems running IP Office 5.0+ software do not run in either Standard or Professional mode and do not use the **IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional** license.

Pre-IP Office 5.0 IP500 system control units start operation in a mode called IP Office Standard Edition mode. In this mode, the number and range of features supported is limited. The limitations can be overridden by the addition of an **IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional** license to the IP Office 500 configuration. Features not detailed in the table below are not affected directly by Standard Edition or Professional Edition mode selection.

Feature	Standard	Professional
Extensions	32	272
External Expansion Modules	X	<b>✓</b>
Applications		
Phone Manager (All modes) <sup>[1]</sup>	<b>-</b>	<b>J</b>
SoftConsole <sup>[1]</sup>	<b>J</b>	<b>J</b>
IP Office TAPI	J	<b>√</b>
Delta Server	<b>J</b>	<b>√</b>
Compact Business Center (CBC)	<b>J</b>	<b>√</b>
Compact Contact Center (CCC)[1]	X	<b>√</b>
Embedded Voicemail	<b>J</b>	<b>√</b>
Voicemail Lite[2]	X	<b>√</b>
Voicemail Pro <sup>[1]</sup>	X	<b>√</b>
ContactStore <sup>[1]</sup>	X	<b>√</b>
Conferencing Center <sup>[1]</sup>	X	<b>√</b>
MS-CRM	X	<b>√</b>
Meet-me Conferences	X	<b>√</b>
IP DECT Trunks	<b>J</b>	<b>√</b>
SIP Trunks[1]	<b>J</b>	<b>J</b>
SES Trunks[1]	<b>/</b>	<b>✓</b>

<sup>1.</sup> Also require appropriate application licenses.

<sup>2.</sup> Voicemail Lite is not supported on IP Office 5.0 and higher.

System Overview: IP500 Standard/Professional Edition

IP Office Installation
IP Office
Page 61
15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# **Chapter 3. Planning**

# 3. Planning

# 3.1 Space Requirements

The Small Office Edition is designed to be free-standing or wall mounted. The base includes integral screw-head slots for wall mounting and an additional bracket is supplied with the module for a locking screw.

All the other IP Office control units and modules are designed to be installed either in a free-standing stack or into a 19" rack system. Rack installation requires a <u>rack mounting kit</u> for each control unit and expansion module.

#### • Cable Clearance

Clearance must be provided at the front and rear of all modules for cable access and feature key dongle connection.

- On IP400 and Small Office Edition systems, allow a minimum clearance of 75mm (3 inches).
- On IP500 systems allow a minimum clearance of 90mm (3.5 inches).

#### Additional Clearance

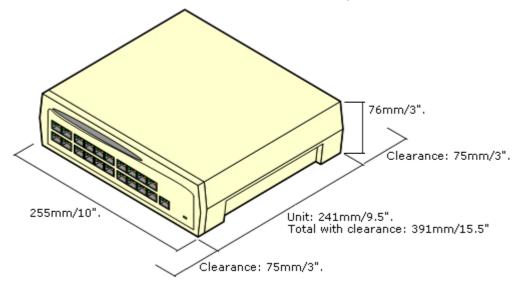
Care should be taken to ensure that the positioning of the modules does not interrupt air flow and other factors that may affect <u>environmental requirements</u>. This is especially important on IP500 control units which have ventilation slots at the side.

#### Cable Access

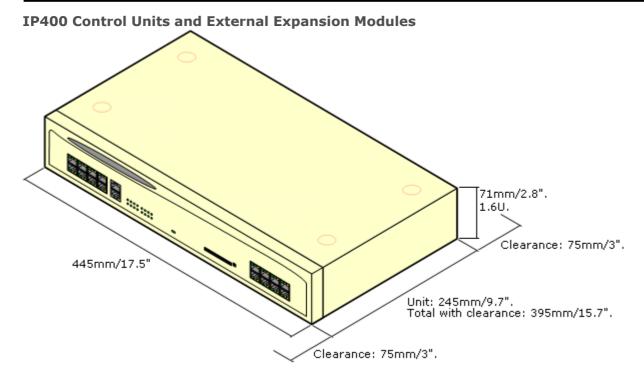
Power cords must not be attached to the building surface or run through walls, ceilings, floors and similar openings. Installation measures must be taken to prevent physical damage to the power supply cord, including proper routing of the power supply cord and provision of a socket outlet near the fixed equipment or positioning of the equipment near a socket outlet.

## **Small Office Edition Control Unit**

The Small Office Edition control unit can be used free-standing or wall mounted.

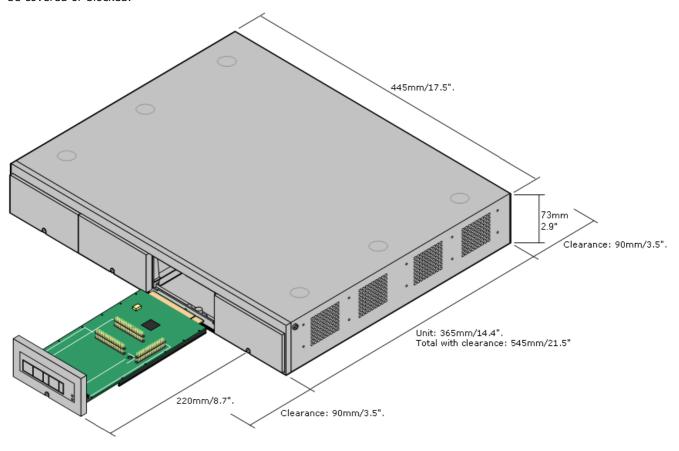


IP Office Installation
IP Office
Page 64
IP Office
15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)



## **IP500 Control Unit**

When wall mounted, a clearance of 500mm is required on all sides. The ventilation slots on the rear and sides should not be covered or blocked.



# 3.2 Environmental Requirements

The planned location must meet the following requirements. If being installed into a rack system, these are requirements for within the rack:

- 1. ☐ Temperature: 0°C to 40°C / 32°F to 104°F.
- 2. ☐ Humidity: 10% to 95% non-condensing.
- 3. ☐ Check there are no flammable materials in the area.
- 4. ☐ Check there is no possibility of flooding.
- 5. ☐ Check that no other machinery or equipment needs to be moved first.
- 6. ☐ Check that it is not an excessively dusty atmosphere.
- 7. ☐ Check that the area is unlikely to suffer rapid changes in temperature and humidity.
- 8. ☐ Check for the proximity of strong magnetic fields, sources of radio frequency and other electrical interference.
- 9. ☐ Check there are no corrosive chemicals or gasses.
- 10. Check there is no excessive vibration or potential of excessive vibration, especially of any mounting surface.
- 11. Check that where telephones are installed in another building, that the appropriate protectors and protective grounds are fitted (see Out of Building Telephone Installation).
- 12.□ Check there is suitable lighting for installation, system programming and future maintenance.
- 13. Check that there is sufficient working space for installation and future maintenance.
- 14.□ Ensure that likely activities near the system will not cause any problems, e.g. access to and maintenance of any other equipment in the area.
- 15. Where ventilation holes are present on any of the IP Office units, those holes should not be covered or blocked.
- 16. The surface must be flat horizontal for free-standing or rack mounted installations.

#### **Wall Mounting**

In additional to the requirements above, the following are applicable to IP Office units that support wall mounting.

- 1. Units must only be mounted onto permanent wall surfaces.
- 2. The surface must be vertical and flat.
- 3. Orientation of the unit must be as shown in the sections on IP500 Wall Mounting or Small Office Edition Wall Mounting.
- 4. The appropriate Avaya wall mounting kits must be used.

## **IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS**

When using your telephone equipment, basic safety precautions should always be followed to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock and injury to persons, including the following:

- 1. Do not use this product near water, for example, near a bath tub, wash bowl, kitchen sink or laundry tub, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- 2. Avoid using a telephone (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- 3. Do not use the telephone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.
- 4. Use only the power cord and batteries indicated in this manual. Do not dispose of batteries in a fire. They may explode. Check with local codes for possible special disposal instructions.

**IP Office Installation** Page 66 IP Office 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# 3.3 Tools and Parts Required

This section outlines the tools and miscellaneous parts likely to be required during the setup of an IP Office system. Other tools may also be required.



- 1. ☐ Pozidrive No. 1 screwdriver for removal of module covers.
- 2. ☐ Cutter for cable ties.
- 3. ☐ Pozidrive No. 4 screwdriver.
- 4. ☐ Wrist-strap for anti-static grounding or similar.
- 5. ☐ PC running Windows XP/2003.

During the Staging Installation later in this manual, we recommend that you use a customer PC that will eventually remain on site. Ideally this will be the same PC that will be used as the customers Feature Key server and or voicemail server.

6. ☐ Indelible marker for cable labelling.

# Parts Required

# 1. ☐ Cable ties.

- \_\_\_\_\_
- $2.\square$  Cabling labels.
- 3.LI POTFICE CD Pack

  Contains IP Office Administration Applications CD, IP Office User Applications CD and IP Office Engineers Toolkit CD.
- 4. ☐ Technical Bulletins Each IP Office software release is normally accompanied by a Technical Bulletin detailing special installation requirements, known issues, etc. Various software releases and their associated Technical Bulletins can also be obtained from <a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a>.

IP Office Installation
IP Office
Page 68
15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# Chapter 4. Pre-Configuration

# 4. Pre-Configuration

# 4.1 Off Line Configuration

Manager supports a number of methods by which the configuration of an IP Office system can be setup in advanced of the physical IP Office. This allows pre-configuration and speeds up the actual on-site installation.

It also allows potential configuration questions to be raised and resolved with the customer in advance of the on-site installation, reducing the number of post-installation changes required.

## • Creating a New Configuration

Manager can be used to create a new configuration, specifying the locale, control unit type, expansion modules and trunk cards in the process. This then gives a default configuration onto which the customer requirements can be prepared.

### **Importing Settings**

Manager can import settings in the form a simple CSV files. It can also be used to export the settings from another IP Office system's configuration and then import those settings into a different configuration.

**IP Office Installation** Page 70 **IP Office** 

# 4.2 Creating a New Configuration

Manager can be used to create a new configuration without connecting to an IP Office system. During the process, you can specify the locale of the system, what type of trunk cards it uses and what type of control unit and expansion modules to include.

This allows the creation of a configuration prior to installation of the real system and so can be used to speed up installation.

- The configuration created must match the physical equipment in the IP Office system onto which the configuration will be loaded. Doing otherwise may cause the IP Office system to reset and experience other problems.
- The Create Configuration tool includes all control units, external expansion modules and trunk cards supported by IP Office. It is you responsibility to confirm what IP Office equipment is supported in your locale.

## **Creating a New Configuration**

- 1. Click in the main toolbar or select File | Offline | Create New Config from the menu bar.
- 2. Select the Locale for the system. This defines a range of features such as default telephony settings. Click Next.
- 3. Fixed Length Numbering is supported for IP Office 4.1+. The value can be None or 3 to 9. Click Next.
  - If a value is selected, all default extension, user and hunt group extension numbers created by Manager will be that length. in addition Manager will display a warning if an extension number of a different length is entered when editing the configuration.
- 4. Select the type of IP Office control unit. Click Next.
- 5. Select the additional cards to include in the control unit. The number and type of cards selectable will depend on the control unit type. Click **Next**.
- 6. For IP400 and IP500 control units, select the external expansion modules, excluding WAN3, to also include in the system. Click Next.
- 7. Click Finish.
- 8. The configuration is created and loaded into Manager.
- 9. Once this configuration has been edited as required it can be saved on the PC. In order to send it to the matching IP Office system, File | Offline | Send Configuration has to be used.

**IP Office Installation** Page 71 **IP Office** 

# 4.3 Importing and Exporting Settings

Manager can import configuration settings created elsewhere. This can be useful when setting up a new system or sharing common settings such as a directory between systems.

Settings are imported and exported in two formats:

#### • Binary Files (.exp)

These are non-editable files. During import and export it is possible to select what types of entries should be included in the file. During import the whole file is imported.

#### Comma Separated Variable Text Files (.csv)

These are plain text files. In addition to being exported from an IP Office system these files can be created and edited using programs such as WordPad or Excel.

#### • UTF-8 Character Encoding

Manager imports and exports CSV files using UTF-8 character encoding which uses a double byte to support characters with diacritic marks such as ä. Other applications, such as Excel, may, depending on the user PC settings, use different encoding which will cause such characters to be removed or corrupted. Care should be taken to ensure that any tool used to create or edit the CSV supports all the characters expected and uses UTF-8 format.

#### • Importing into Manager from Excel

From Excel save the file as a .csv. This file will use ANSI character encoding. Open the file in Notepad and use the Save As option to rename the file and select UTF-8 encoding. Import the UTF-8 version of the file into Manager.

## Exporting from Manager into Excel

Do not double-click on the file exported from Manager. Start Excel and use File | Open to select the file. Excel will recognize that the file uses UTF-8 encoding and will start its text file importation wizard. Follow the wizard instructions and select comma as the field delimiter.

#### **Exporting Settings**

- 1. Select File | Import/Export... from the menu bar.
- Select Export.
- 3. Select the type of file. The list of exportable entry types will change to match the file type.
- 4. Select the types of items that should be exported.
- 5. Use the Save In path to select the location for the exported files. The default location used is sub-directory of the Manager application directory based on system name of the currently loaded IP Office system.
- 6. Click OK.

#### **Importing Settings**

Importing settings will overwrite any existing entries that match an entry being imported.

- 1. Select File | Import/Export... from the menu bar.
- 2. Select Import.
- 3. Select the type of file. The list of items will change to match the type of file selected and whether a matching file or files is found in the current file path.
- 4. Use Look In to adjust the file path. The default location used is sub-directory of the Manager application directory based on system name of the currently loaded IP Office system.
- 5. Select the types of items that should be imported.
- 6. Click OK.

**IP Office Installation** Page 72 **IP Office** 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

#### **CSV File Formats**

The format is CSV using commas as field separator, no text delimiters and no header row. The simplest way to check the required format for a CSV file prior to import, is to export and study the settings from an existing system.

File Name	Fields in Order
Directory	Name, Number.
HuntGroup	Name, Extension, Group, Hunt, Rotary, Idle, Queuing On, Voicemail On, Broadcast, Voicemail Email.
License	License, License Key
ShortCode	Code, Telephone Number, Feature.
User	Name, Extension, User Restriction/Rights, Voicemail Email.
Configuration	Proprietary format

#### Notes

- Hunt Group: Apart from Name, Extension and Voicemail Email, the fields use a 1 or 0 value for on or off.
- License:
  - The License field is for information only and is ignored during import.
  - Following import the License name may appear as invalid with Manager. To resolve this save and then reload the configuration file.
- **System:** The format of the system CSV is too complex to be described. It is a full export of all the IP Office system's configuration settings. This file format should only be used for export and import between systems and not for any offline editing.

# **Chapter 5. IP500 Basic Installation**

## 5. IP500 Basic Installation

## 5.1 Tools Required



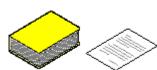
The following is a general summary of the tools required. Additional tools and equipment will be required for wall and or rack mounting and to fashion ground cable connections suitable to local requirements.



## Tools Required.

- 1. ☐ 5mm Flat-blade screwdriver.
- 2. ☐ Crosshead screwdriver.
- 3. ☐ Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.
- 4. □ PC with IP Office Admin suite (Manager and System Status application) and RJ45 Ethernet LAN port.
- 5. ☐ RJ45-RJ45 Ethernet LAN Cable.
- 6. ☐ Tools and materials suitable for ground cabling.

#### 5.2 Read the Documentation



Ensure that you have read this manual in full before starting installation. Also include the installation documentation for any other equipment and applications being installed as part of the IP Office system.

#### IP Office Technical Bulletins

Ensure that you have obtained and read the IP Office Technical Bulletin relating to the IP Office software release which you intend to install on the IP500 Office. This bulletin will contain important information that may not have been included in this manual. IP Office Technical Bulletins are available from the web sites listed below.

#### **Other IP Office Installation Manuals**

The following components of IP Office are outside the range of a basic IP Office installation. They are covered by separate installation and configuration documentation. If those components are to be part of the IP Office system installation, that documentation should be obtained, read and understood prior to the installation.

- 4600/5600 Series IP Phone Installation.
- · Embedded Voicemail Installation.
- · Voicemail Pro Installation.
- Delta Server (SMDR) Installation.
- Compact Business Center (CBC) Installation.
- Compact Contact Center (CCC) Installation.
- Contact Store Installation.

- Compact DECT Installation.
- . IP DECT Installation.
- 3600 Series Wireless IP Installation.
- Phone Manager Installation Manual.
- SoftConsole Installation Manual.
- Conferencing Center Installation Manual.

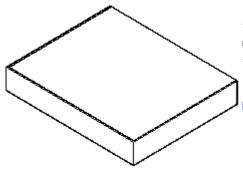
#### **Information Web Sites**

IP Office documentation is available from the following web sites.

- Avaya Support <a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a>
  - Contains documentation and other support materials for Avaya products including IP Office. Copies of the IP Office CD images are available from this site and updated core software .bin files.
- Avaya IP Office Knowledge Base <a href="http://marketingtools.avaya.com/knowledgebase">http://marketingtools.avaya.com/knowledgebase</a>
  Access to an on-line regularly updated version of the IP Office Knowledge Base. Currently this link is only available to Avaya Business Partners while running an ARA account (Avaya Remote Access) connection.

IP Office Installation
IP Office

#### 5.3 Unpacking



Use the following procedure when unpacking any equipment supplied by Avaya or an Avaya reseller or distributor.

Objective - To check that the correct equipment has been supplied and that no damage has occurred during transit.

U Information Required

• 

□ Equipment Checklist.

Draw up an installation checklist of the parts and equipment expected.

## 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure

#### • $\square$ Check for Package Damage.

Before unpacking any equipment, check for any signs of damage that may have occurred during transit. If any damage exists bring it to the attention of the carrier.

#### • ☐ Check the Correct Parts Have Been Delivered.

Check all cartons against the packing slip and ensure that you have the correct items. Report any errors or omissions to the equipment supplier.

#### ☐ Retain All Packaging and Documentation.

While unpacking the equipment, retain all the packaging material. Fault returns are accepted only if repackaged in the original packaging. If performing a staged installation, the original packaging will also assist when repacking equipment to be moved to the final install site.

#### • $\square$ Ensure that Anti-Static Protection Measures are Observed.

Ensure that anti-static protection measures are observed at all times when handling equipment with exposed electrical circuit boards.

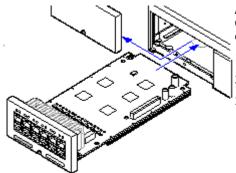
#### • ☐ Check All Parts.

Visually inspect each item and check that all the necessary documentation and accessory items have been included. Report any errors or omissions to the dealer who supplied the equipment.

#### • $\square$ Check All Documentation.

Ensure that you read and retain any documentation included with the equipment.

#### 5.4 IP500 Card Installation



At this stage fit all the internal IP500 cards before powering up the IP500 Office control unit. These processes should be performed with no power to the control unit and following full anti-static precautions.

- 1. Fitting IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards.
- 2. Fitting IP400 Legacy Cards.
- 3. Installing IP500 Cards.

#### Warnings

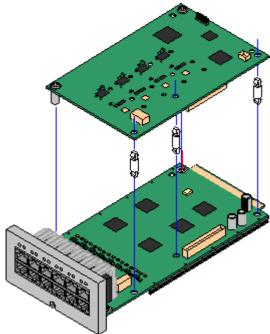
- Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
- During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.

#### **General Notes**

- Cards can be fitted in any order into any available slots. The only exception is the IP500 4-Port Expansion card which can only be installed in right hand slot 4.
- It is recommended that cards are fitted from left to right.
- There are restrictions to the number of supported cards of some types. When such a limit is exceed, the rightmost card of that type will not function.
- Ensure that you use the labels supplied to identify the card fitted into the control unit.

#### 1. IP500 Trunk Daughter Card Installation

IP500 trunk daughter cards can be fitted to any IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier.



Objective - To fit a IP500 trunk card to an IP500 base card.

- 1. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
- 2. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.

## Parts and Equipment Required

- 1. ☐ Any IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base
- 2. ☐ IP500 Trunk Card
- 3. ☐ 5 Stand Off Pillars

These are supplied with the trunk daughter card.

With the release of the IP500 PRI-U trunk daughter card, the design of stand off pillars supplied with all types of trunk daughter card has changed. The original 5 plastic pillars have been replaced by 2 metal pillars and 3 plastic pillars. The metals pillars are prefitted to the trunk daughter cards in their intended position and two screws and washers are supplied for final attachment to the base card.



#### Tools Required.

- 1. ☐ 5mm Flat-blade screwdriver.
- 2. ☐ Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.



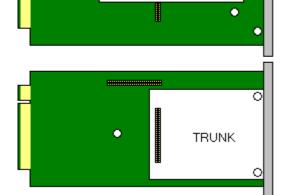
# 1.₫ 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure: Installing an IP500 Trunk Daughter Card

- 1. Check that correct cards have been supplied.
- 2. Ensure that you are wearing an anti-static wrist strap connected to a suitable ground point.
- 3. On the base card identify the position of 3 holes for the plastic pillars for the IP500 card. These are along the same edge as the card connector.
- 4. Fit the stand off pillars to the IP500 base card.
- 5. If there is a clip-on metal shield over the connector block on the base card, remove it.
- 6. Using minimal force and checking that the pins are correctly located, push the IP500 trunk card onto its connector block and the stand off
- 7. Check that the card connector has snapped into position.
- 8. Using the washers and screws provided, secure the metal stand off pillars to the base card.
- 9. A set of labels are supplied with the trunk daughter card. Fit the appropriate label to the front of the base card.
- 10. Prepare any other IP500 cards. Then proceed to Inserting an IP500

#### 2. IP400 Legacy Card Installation

An IP500 Legacy Carrier card can be used to fit IP400 trunk or VCM cards into an IP500 control unit. Up to 2 IP500 carrier cards can be inserted.

- ✓ PRI T1 ✓ Dual PRI T1 ✓ ANLG 4 Uni (US only) ✓ PRI 30 E1 (1.4) √ VCM 4 ✓ Dual PRI E1 √ VCM 8 √ PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45 √ VCM 16 ✓ Dual PRI E1R2 RJ45 √ VCM 24 √ VCM 30



0

VCM

Objective - To fit a IP400 card to an IP500 Legacy Card Carrier.



#### Warnings

- 1. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
- 2. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.



## Parts and Equipment Required

- 1. ☐ IP500 Carrier Card.
- 2. ☐ IP400 Card

The table opposite lists supported cards. Any card not listed is not supported. Cards are supplied with 2 plastic stand off pillars. Trunk cards are also supplied with a replacement blanking plate which are not required with the IP500.



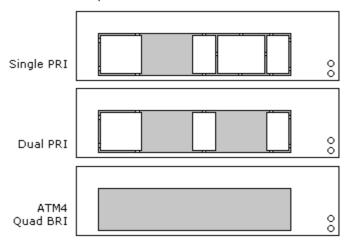
#### **Tools Required**

- 1. ☐ 5mm Flat-blade screwdriver.
- 2. ☐ Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.



#### **Procedure: Installing a Carrier Card**

- 1. Check that correct cards have been supplied.
- 2. Ensure that you are wearing an anti-static wrist strap connected to a suitable ground point.
- 3. On the carrier card identify the position of the jumper block and stand off pillar holes for the IP400 card. The peg holes are labeled as VCM or TRUNK.
- 4. If fitting an IP400 trunk card, identify which of the plastic snap-off panels on the front of the carrier card need to be removed to allow the trunk cable connections. Carefully remove those panels.



- 5. Fit the stand off pillars to the IP500 carrier card.
- 6. Using minimal force and checking that the pins are correctly located, push the IP400 card onto its jumper and the stand off pillars.

#### D3. IP500 Card Installation

Having prepared each IP500 card by adding any IP400 cards or IP500 trunk daughter cards required, the base cards can be inserted into the control unit.



Objective - To fit a IP500 base card into the IP500 control unit.



#### Warnings

- Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
- During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.



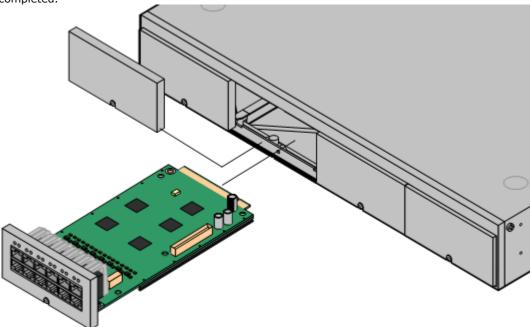
#### **Tools Required.**

- □ 5mm Flat-blade screwdriver.
- $\square$  Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.



# 1.0 2.0 3.0 Procedure: Installing a Carrier Card

- 1. Switch off power to the IP500 control unit.
- 2. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, remove the cover from the slot on the front of the control unit that will be used for each card being installed. This cover is no longer required but should be retained until installation has been completed.



- 3. Allowing the card to rest against the bottom of the slot, begin sliding it into the control unit. When half inserted, check that the card rails have engaged with the slot edges by trying to gently rotate it. I the card does rotate remove it and begin inserting it again.
- 4. The card should slide in freely until almost fully inserted. At this point apply pressure at the base of the front of the card to complete insertion.
- 5. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver secure the carrier card.
- 6. Reapply power to the control unit. Initially each card should show a red LED (two if a daughter card is fitted) as the control unit restarts. After approximately 30 seconds these should change to flashing red as the card is started. These should then change to flashing every 5 seconds if the cards have started correctly.
- 7. Run the IP Office System Status Application and verify that the cards have all been recognized.
- 8. IP Office Manager can now be used to configure the extensions and trunk lines. For any IP500 VCM base cards, VCM Channel licenses must be added to the configuration to enable channels above the base 4.

## 5.5 Inserting the Feature Key



The IP500 uses a smart card feature key dongle. In addition to feature licensing the IP500 control unit uses this feature key dongle to determine various systems defaults such as A-Law or Mu-Law operation, default short codes and trunk settings.

Warnings

- 1. The feature key is required for all IP500 control units and must be present when the system is started and during operation. This applies even if the IP500 is not using any licensed features.
- 2. The feature key slot cover must remain present to protect the card and the card reader from
- 3. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
- 4. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.



## Parts Required

#### IP500 Feature Key

The correct key will depend on the locale. The listing below is typical and may not apply in all cases. Ensure that the serial number of the key, shown on the card, is recorded.

- 🗆 Mu-Law: Used in North America and Korea.
- □ **A-Law:** Used in all other locales.

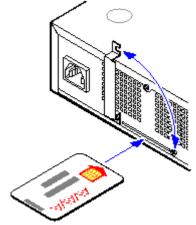


#### **Tools Required:**

• □ 5mm Flat-blade screwdriver.

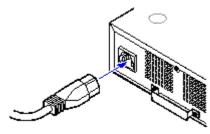


- 1. Locate the feature key slot on the rear of the IP500 control unit. The slot is adjacent to the power input socket and is protected by a metal cover.
- 2. Undo the screws on the cover until it can be rotated clear of the feature key card slot.



- 3. Insert the feature key. The card should be face up and inserted in the direction of the arrow on the card.
- 4. Rotate the slot cover back into position and tighten the screws.

#### 5.6 Applying Power



This procedure starts a new IP Office control unit not connected to any LAN. In this scenario the IP Office control unit will assume its default configuration

Objective - To power up the IP Office control unit to a known state with a known set of defaults.



#### 😃 Warnings

- 1. When powering up the control unit for the first time do not connect the LAN or WAN ports of the control unit to any network.
- 2. The power cord must be connected directly from the control unit to the switched power outlet socket. The cord must not be fixed in anyway or routed through any permanent structure.



## Parts and Equipment Required

- □ Switched power outlet socket.
- ☐ IP Office Control Unit.
- □ Locale Specific Power Cord.



## 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure

- 1. Connect the power cord from the power supply outlet to the power input socket on the rear of the control unit.
  - · Power cords must not be attached to the building surface or run through walls, ceilings, floors and similar openings. Installation measures must be taken to prevent physical damage to the power supply cord, including proper routing of the power supply cord and provision of a socket outlet near the fixed equipment or positioning of the equipment near a socket outlet.
- 2. Switch on power to the control unit.
- 3. New IP Office 500 control units are supplied with a base software level of 4.0.0. The CPU LED on these units will flash red until the unit is upgraded to the required level of released IP Office core software.
- 4. The CPU LED on units that have already been upgraded from 4.0.0 will go through a green red cycle several times and then stay green on. During this time other LED's may flash as the unit goes through its power on self test cycle.

#### **IP Office Default Settings**

The following are the basic default configuration settings for an IP Office system.

System	Name	MAC address of the control unit.		
	System Password	password		
	License Server IP Address	255.255.255.255		
LAN*		LAN1	LAN2/WAN	
	IP address	192.168.42.1.	192.168.43.1	
	IP Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0	
	DHCP Mode	Server	Server	
	No of DHCP IP Addresses	200.	200.	

<sup>\*</sup>See **Default DHCP/Data Settings** detail below.

#### Extensions and Users

A user is automatically created for each physical extension port detected in the system. Users are assigned extension numbers starting from 201. User names take the form Extn201, Extn202, ....

#### Hunt Group

A single hunt group 200 called Main is created and the first 10 users are placed into that hunt group as members.

#### **Incoming Call Routes**

Two default incoming call routes are created. Voice calls are routed to the hunt group Main. Data calls are routed to the RAS user DialIn.

#### • Default Short Codes

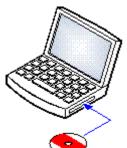
IP400 control units are manufactured as either A-Law or U-Law variants. For IP500 control units, A-Law or U-Law variant operation is determined by the IP500 Smart Card installed. Depending on the variant, different sets of short codes are created for the default configuration. Refer to the IP Office Manager application help for full details.

#### • Default DHCP/Data Settings

When a defaulted IP Office control unit is switched on, it requests IP address information from a DHCP Server on the network. This operation will occur whether the LAN cable is plugged in or not.

- If a DHCP server responds within approximately 10 seconds, the control unit defaults to being a DHCP client and uses the IP address information supplied by the DHCP server.
- If no DHCP Server responds, the control unit defaults to being the DHCP server for the LAN using the following settings:
  - For its LAN1 it allocates the IP address 192.168.42.1 and IP Mask 255.255.255.0. It supports 200 DHCP clients using the addresses range 192.168.42.2 and 192.168.42.201, the IP Mask 255.255.255.0 and default gateway address 192.168.42.1 (the Control Unit's LAN1 address).
  - For its LAN2 if supported, it allocates the IP address 192.168.43.1 and IP Mask 255.255.255.0.
  - Note that the IP Office does not check that these addresses are valid and or available on the network.
- This mode of operation will persist for subsequent power ups, until a config save occurs due to one of the following
  - The unit performs its automatic midnight backup.
  - A configuration is merged using IP Office Manager.
  - A soft reboot is performed using IP Office Manager.
  - A software upgrade is performed.

## 5.7 Installing the Admin Applications



This procedure covers installation of applications in the IP Office Admin suite.

Objective - To install the applications necessary for the installation and maintenance of an IP Office system.

#### Information Required

1. ☐ Which IP Office Admin Suite applications are being installed? The following list indicates those that are required for installation and configuration:

#### □ System Monitor - Install

Monitor is a tool intended primarily for Avaya technicians and engineers. However it is able to report on all aspects of IP Office operation and is therefore an important tool for diagnostics.

#### • □ Feature Key Server - Not required. X

The Feature Key Server should only be installed if the PC will host the parallel port or USB port Feature Key dongle for the IP Office system.

#### □ Manager - Install

This application is required to edit and manage the software on the IP Office system.

#### □ System Status Application - Install

This application is used with IP Office 4.0 systems to show equipment and resource within the system, alarms and calls in progress.

#### □ Previous System Monitor - Not required. X

This application is only required for supporting IP400 systems running pre-IP Office 4.0 software. It is not required for IP500 control units.

#### □ Call Status - Not required. X

This application is only supported for pre-4.0 IP Office systems. For IP Office 4.0 and higher it has been replaced by the System Status Application above.

## Parts Required

•  $\square$  IP Office Administrator Applications CD.

#### □ Windows PC

This should meet the requirements of the administrator applications being installed. If a server PC from the customer installation is available, for example for Voicemail Pro, use that PC. The specification below is just for IP Office Manager. If other applications are to be installed on the PC then their requirements should also be meet.

Requirement	Minimum	Recommended	
Processor	600MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.	800MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.	
RAM	128MB	256MB	
HD Space	1GB - 800MB for .NET2, 200MB for Manager.	1.4GB - 800MB for .NET2, 600MB for the full IP Office Admin suite.	
Display	800 x 600 - 256 Colors	1024 x 768 - 16-bit High Color	
Operating System	Windows XP Professional with SP2. Windows 2003 Server. Windows 2003 SBS. Note: 64-bit versions of the operating systems above are not supported.		

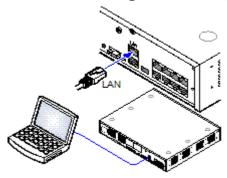
#### **Procedure: Installing the IP Office Admin Applications**

- 1. Using the **Add or Remove Programs** option in the Windows Control Panel, check that the PC does not already have a version of the IP Office Admin suite installed.
  - If 'yes' and the suite is a pre-IP Office 3.2 version, remove the existing IP Office Admin suite via Add/Remove Programs.
  - If the existing suite is IP Office 3.2 or higher, it is possible to upgrade without removing the previous installation. However, if the system already has a USB Feature Key, the key should be removed prior to upgrading and then reinserted and the PC restarted.
- 2. Insert the IP Office Administrator Applications CD. The installation process should auto start. If it does not auto start, open the CD contents and double-click setup.exe.
- 3. Select the language you want to use for the installation process. This does not affect the language used by Manager which will attempt to match your Windows regional setting. Click Next >.
- 4. Select whether only the current Windows logon account should be able to run the Admin Suite applications or whether they will be available to all users of the PC. Click Next >.
  - The previous selection does not affect the IP Office Feature key server application, if installed. That application runs as a service whenever the PC is running.
- 5. If required select the destination to which the applications should be installed. We recommend that you accept the default destination. Click **Next >**.
- 6. The next screen is used to select which applications in the suite should be installed. Clicking on each will display a description of the application. Click on the ▼ next to each application to change the installation selection. When you have selected the installations required, click **Next** >.



- 7. For IP Office system installations, ensure that at minimum System Monitor and Manager are selected.
  - Deselect Feature Key Server unless this PC will be hosting a Parallel port or USB port Feature Key dongle for the customer's IP Office system.
- 8. Click Install.
- 9. Installation of Windows .Net2 components may be required. If dialogs for this appear, follow the prompts to install .Net.
- 10.If requested, reboot the PC.

## 5.8 Connecting the Manager PC (IP500)



At this stage we will directly connect the Manager PC to the new IP Office control unit. For this the PC will need to be set to a fixed IP address in the same subnet range as the IP Office control unit's default address (192.168.42.1/255.255.255.0).

Objective - Physically connecting the Manager PC and the IP Office without needing to adjust or configure any intervening equipment.



#### Parts and Equipment Required

- ☐ Manager PC.
- □ LAN Cable.
  - ☐ IP Office Small Office Edition, IP406 V2 and IP500 control units: A standard RJ45-RJ45 LAN cable can be used.
  - ☐ IP412 Control Unit: A RJ45-RJ45 cross-over LAN cable is required.



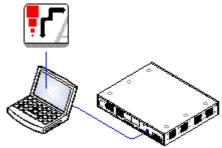
#### **Procedure: Direct Connection to a Defaulted IP Office Control Unit**

1. Check that the TCP/IP properties for the Manager PC's Local Area Network connection are set as follow:

• Fixed IP address: 192.168.42.203 Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0 • Default gateway: 192.168.42.1.

- 2. Connect the LAN cable from the PC's LAN port the LAN 1 port on the IP Office control unit.
- 3. Check that the orange LED lamp on the IP Office LAN port is on. The green LED may also be flickering as it indicates traffic across the LAN connection.
- 4. Select Start | Run and enter cmd.
- 5. In the command window that appears enter ping 192.168.42.1. The results should show a number of ping replies from the IP Office. This confirms basic communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
- 6. If there are no ping replies enter **ipconfig**. The results should list the IP address settings of the Manager PC as required above and with no mention of DHCP being used. Enter exit.
- 7. Check the cable connection.

## 5.9 Start Manager



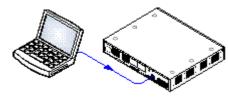
At this stage we will simple check that Manager is able to run and to see the connected IP Office control unit.



#### **Procedure: Receiving the Configuration**

- 1. Select Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager.
- 2. If the PC has firewall software installed, you should be prompted as to whether you want to allow this program to access the network. Select **Yes** or **OK**.
- 3. Click  $\stackrel{4}{=}$  in the main toolbar or select **File | Open Configuration** from the menu bar.
- 4. The Select IP Office window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control units MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the Unit/Broadcast Address field and then click Refresh to perform a new search.
- 5. Click the check the box next to the system and then click **OK**.
- 6. The name and password request is displayed. The name and password must match one of those setup through the security settings. The default name and password for full configuration settings access is Administrator and Administrator.
- 7. Successful receiving of the configuration is shown by the full configuration tree being shown in the left-hand panel. With no configuration loaded the navigation pane shows just BOOTP and Operator entries.

## 5.10 Upgrading the Core Software



New IP500 control units are supplied with a basic level of software (4.0.0). That software is sufficient to allow LAN network connect to the control unit in order to then upgrade it to the level of IP Office software required.

**Objective -** Upgrade the control unit to IP Office 4.0 software.

- U Information Required
  - $\square$  **System Password** For a new or defaulted system this is password.



#### **Tools Required**

•  $\square$  Manager PC - The Upgrade Wizard tool is part of the Manager application.



#### WARNINGS

#### Check IP Office Technical Bulletins

Check the latest IP Office Technical Bulletin for the IP Office software release before proceeding any further. It may contain information relating to changes that occurred after this document was completed. Bulletins are available from http://support.avaya.com.

#### Multiple Managers

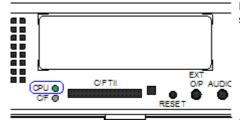
If more than one copy of Manager is running it is possible for the IP Office to request BIN files from a different Manager from the one that started the upgrade process. Ensure that only one copy of Manager is running when upgrading an IP Office system.



## 2.4 2.4 3.0 Procedure: Upgrade Procedure

- 1. Using Manager, click 🚣 and receive the configuration from the IP Office. If not already done this action creates a BOOTP entry in Manager for the IP Office system. This action also confirms communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
- 2. Select File | Save Configuration As... and save a copy of the configuration file onto the PC. This action should be completed before upgrading any IP Office system.
- 3. Select File | Advanced | Upgrade.
- 4. The UpgradeWiz is started and scans for IP Office unit using the Unit/Broadcast address. Adjust this address and click Refresh if the expected modules are not shown.
- 5. For each the unit found, the UpgradeWiz displays the module type, its current version of software installed in the unit and the software version of the .bin file that Manager has available.
- 6. For those units and modules where manager detects that it has a higher version available, the tick box next to the unit or module is automatically selected.
- 7. For those modules which you want to upgrade, tick the check box. For modules where a later version of software is available the check box may have already been automatically ticked.
- 8. Select Upgrade.
- 9. The system password will be requested. Enter it and click **OK**.
- 10. The bin files required are transferred to the system and stored in temporary memory.
- 11. Once all the files have been transferred, the upgrade wizard will prompt whether it okay to proceed with the upgrade process. Select Yes to continue.
- 12. Each module being upgraded will delete its existing core software, restart and load the new software file that was transferred. This process may take several minutes for each unit. Do not cancel or close the upgrade wizard while this process is running.
- 13. Following the upgrade check that the upgrade wizard now shows that the selected units and modules have upgraded. It may be necessary to select Refresh to update the information in the upgrade wizard display.

#### 5.11 Check the CPU LED



#### Note

New IP Office 500 control units are supplied with a base software level of 4.0.0. The CPU LED on these units will flash red until the unit is upgraded to the required level of released IP Office core software.

#### **Normal Power On Sequence**

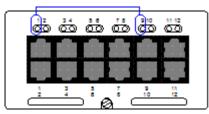
When power to the control unit is switched on, the normal sequence for the CPU LED is as follows.

- 1. Steady Red for 3 seconds
- 2. Off for 10 seconds
- 3. Flashing alternate red/green for 4 seconds.
- 4. The LED should be steady green following successful start up. Note that the IP500 cards on the front of the control unit may still be going through their own start up process.

#### • Flashing RED

A flashing red CPU LED at this stage indicates an error. The most likely cause is a missing Feature Key card.

#### 5.12 Check the Card LEDs



On all IP500 base cards, LED  ${\bf 1}$  is used to indicate general status. Okay status is indicated by a flash every 5 seconds.

When a trunk daughter card is fitted, LED is used to indicate the general status of that card. Okay status is indicated by a flash every 5 seconds.

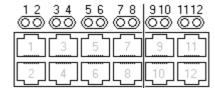
#### **IP500 Analog Phone Base Card**

Analog Extension Ports (1-8)

• LED1 only is used.

LED1 is used for card status:

- Red On Error
- Red Flashing Initializing.
- Red Flash every 5 seconds Okay.



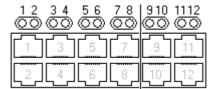
#### **IP500 Digital Station Base Card**

Digital Station Ports (1-8)

• Green On - Phone detected.

LED1 is used for card status:

- Red On Error
- Red Flashing Initializing.
- Red Flash every 5 seconds Okay.



#### **IP500 VCM Base Card**

- LEDs 1 to 8 are unlabelled. They are used to indicate voice compression channel usage. Each LED lit represents 12.5% of the available voice compression channel capacity in use (total card capacity rather than licensed capacity).
- LED1 is used for general card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

#### **IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards**



#### Daughter Card Ports (9-12)

The LED's for ports 9 and 10 are used as follows:

- Off: No trunk present/Analog Idle.
- Green on: BRI/PRO trunk present.
- Green flashing: Trunk in use.
- Red/Green Fast Flash (port 9) or Green Fast Flash (port 10):
   Alarm indication signal (AIS) from the PRI trunk remote end.
- Red with Green Blink (port 9) or Green Blink (port 1):
   PRI Port in loopback mode (set through IP Office System Monitor).
- LED 9 is also used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

## 5.13 Receiving the Configuration



The process here applies to systems running IP Office 3.2 and higher.

**Objective** - Receive a configuration from an IP Office running IP Office 3.2 or higher software.

#### Information Required

#### □ Service User Name and Password

The defaults for full configuration access are Administrator and Administrator. However these should have been changed as part of the installation process, see Configuring Security Settings.

#### 1.0 2.0

#### **Procedure: Receiving the Configuration**

- 1. Select Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager.
- 2. Click 4 in the main toolbar or select File | Open Configuration from the menu bar.
- 3. The Select IP Office window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control units MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the Unit/Broadcast Address field and then click Refresh to perform a new search.
- 4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click OK.
- 5. The name and password request is displayed. The name and password must match one of those setup through the security settings. The default name and password for full configuration settings access is Administrator and Administrator.
- 6. Successful receiving of the configuration is shown by the full configuration tree being shown in the left-hand panel. With no configuration loaded the navigation pane shows just BOOTP and Operator entries.

#### **IP Office Default Settings**

The following are the basic default configuration settings for an IP Office system.

System	Name	MAC address of the	MAC address of the control unit.		
	System Password	password	password		
	License Server IP Address	255.255.255.255			
LAN1		LAN1	LAN2/WAN		
	IP address	192.168.42.1.	192.168.43.1		
	IP Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0		
	DHCP Mode	Server	Server		
	No of DHCP IP Addresses	200.	200.		

#### Extensions and Users

A user is automatically created for each physical extension port detected in the system. Users are assigned extension numbers starting from 201. User names take the form Extn201, Extn202, ....

#### Hunt Group

A single hunt group 200 called Main is created and the first 10 users are placed into that hunt group as members.

#### Incoming Call Routes

Two default incoming call routes are created. Voice calls are routed to the hunt group Main. Data calls are routed to the RAS user DialIn.

#### 5.14 Adding Licences



32-Character license keys strings are used to activate various IP Office features. These keys are uniquely based on the feature being activated and the serial number of the Feature Key dongle installed with the IP Office system.

The IP500 uses licenses in the same way as other IP Office systems. However there are some licenses that are specific to the IP500 Office control unit and may be required during installation to ensure the systems correct operation.

#### IP500 Voice Networking

If IP trunks are required for voice networking between the IP Office and other systems, IP500 Voice Networking licenses are required. IP500 Standard/Professional Edition

Each IP500 VCM base card only support 4 voice compression channels unlicensed. Any additional channels available on the card must be licensed by adding IP500 VCM Channels licenses

Licenses can be added individually to the IP Office's configuration. However the licence key file provided by Avaya from their license ordering web site generates a License csv file containing all the ordered licenses. That file can be imported into the configuration.



## Parts and Equipment Required

#### • ☐ License Keys Documentation

Ensure that the Feature Key dongle serial number used to generate the license keys matches that of the Feature Key dongle installed and that all the licenses required have been included.



# 1.0 2.0 3.0 Importing a License.csv File

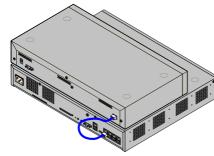
- 1. Copy the License.csv file to the Manager PC.
- 2. Start Manager and receive the IP Office system's configuration.
- 3. Select File | Import/Export | Import... .
- 4. Click the button next to Look In and browse to and select the folder containing the license file.
- 5. The file should be listed as Available along with an indication of the number of licenses it contains. Select the check box next to the file name and then clock OK.
- 6. Click on to send the configuration back to the IP Office.
- 7. Use Manager to receive the configuration again and check that the status of the licenses. They should now be Valid.

#### **Manually Adding Licenses**

Use this process to individually copy and paste license keys into the configuration. Cutting and pasting removes any errors that may be caused by the incorrect typing of any license key.

- 1. Start Manager and receive the IP Office system's configuration.
- 2. Select License.
- 3. To add a license, click and select **License**. Enter the new license and click **OK**.
- 4. The **Status** of the new license should show **Unknown** and name the license as expected. If its **Status** is **Unknown** and name **Invalid**, the most likely cause is incorrect entry of the license key characters.
- 5. Repeat the process for any other licences
- 6. Click on late to send the configuration back to the IP Office.
- 7. Use Manager to receive the configuration again and check that the status of the licenses. They should now be Valid.

## 5.15 Adding External Expansion Modules



External expansion modules connect to the IP Office control unit using an expansion interconnect cable.

Objective - Connect the external expansion modules and then restart the control unit so that the new modules are recognized.

Each module is supplied with an expansion connect cable and a <u>power supply unit</u>. An appropriate <u>locale specific power cord</u> for the power supply unit, and <u>cables</u> for the ports on the front of the module must be ordered separately.

- Each external expansion module (except the WAN3 10/100) is supplied with a blue 1 meter (3'3") expansion interconnect cable. This cable must be used when connecting to expansion ports on the rear of a control unit.
- When connecting to expansion ports on an IP500 4-Port Expansion card, a yellow 2 meter (6'6") expansion interconnect cable can be used in place of the standard blue cable. 4 Yellow cables are supplied with the IP500 4-Port Expansion card.
- The WAN3 10/100 module differs in that it connects via a LAN port on its front to one of the control unit's LAN ports. This type of external expansion module is not supported by IP500 control units.
- Pre-IP Office 5.0 IP500 systems require an IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional license to support external expansion modules. This license is not required for IP Office 5.0+.

#### Installation Requirements

- $\square$  Installation space either on or under the existing IP Office control unit.
- $\square$  Switched power outlet socket.
- □ Available EXPANSION port on the control unit.
- □ Grounding Requirements
  - | Functional Grounding

Connection of a functional ground is:

- □ Recommend for all modules.
- $\square$  Connection of a functional ground is mandatory for Analog Trunk module.
- Drotective Grounding

Connections of a protective ground via surge protection equipment is:

- $\bullet \;\; \square$  Mandatory for Analog trunk modules in the Republic of South Africa.
- $\bullet \;\;\square$  Mandatory for Digital Station and Phone modules connected to out of building extensions.
- $\bullet \;\;\square$  Mandatory for Digital Station V2 and Phone V2 modules.



#### Tools Required

- □ Manager PC.
- □ Tools for rack mounting (optional).



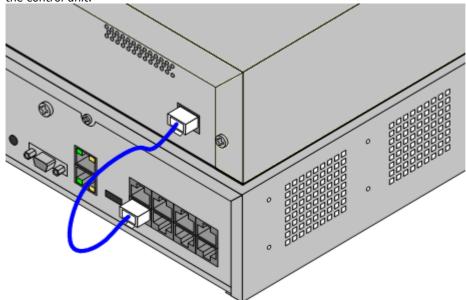
## Parts and Equipment Required

- External Expansion Module.
  - Each module is supplied with a suitable external power supply unit and a 1m blue interconnect cable. 2m Yellow interconnect cables are supplied with the IP500 4-Port Expansion card and should only be used with that card.
- $\square$  Power cord for the power supply unit.
- □ Rack mounting kit (optional).
- □ Cable labeling tags.



## 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure

- 1. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
- 2. Attach the external expansion module's power supply.
- 3. Connect the expansion interconnect cable from the module's EXPANSION port to the first free EXPANSION port on the control unit.



- 4. Make careful note of the port used and include this detail on the cable label and any other system records.
- 5. Switch on power to the module. Wait for the center LED on the front of the module to change from red to green.
- 6. Switch on power to the control unit.
- 7. Once the control unit has rebooted, using Manager receive the system configuration.
- 8. Click on **Unit** in the left-hand panel.
- 9. Check that the list of units shown in the right-hand panel is correct.
- 10. The external expansion modules should be upgraded to the same level of software as the control unit. Do this by repeating the IP Office upgrade process (see K. Upgrading the Core Software).

#### 5.16 Configuring Security Settings



Currently the system is defaulted, including the security passwords controlling access to the system's security and configuration settings.

U You should read and understand the **Security Settings** section of the IP Office Manager documentation. That section details the settings and operation of the IP Office security settings and is part of the Manager applications help file.

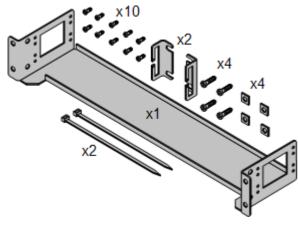
igoplus Objective - Make the control unit configuration settings secure from unauthorized changes by changing the default passwords.



# 1.₫ 2.₫ Procedure

- 1. Select Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager.
- 2. Select File | Advanced | Security Settings.
- 3. The Select IP Office window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control unit's MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the Unit/Broadcast Address field and then click Refresh to perform a new search.
- 4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click OK.
- 5. The name and password request is displayed. As the system has been upgrade to IP Office 3.2 software, the name and password now requested are a Service User name and password stored within the IP Office. The default name and password for security settings access are security and securitypwd.
- 6. The Manager should load and display the IP Office control unit's security settings.
- General. On the tab displayed, the Security Administrator section contains the default name and password used to access the IP Office's security settings. Click Change and set a new password. The default password is securitypwd. Click OK.
- 8. Click **OK** to save the changes to that tab.
- 9. Select **Rights Groups** and then the **Administrator Group**.
- 10. Select the System Status tab and check that System Status Access is selected. This is required for the System Status Application.
- 11. Click **OK** to save the changes to that tab.
- 12. Select Service Users. This tab shows the settings for one of the Service Users who have names and passwords used for access to the configuration settings on the IP Office control unit. Click Change and set a new password. The default password matches the name. Click OK.
- 13. Click **OK** to save the changes made on that tab.
- 14. Click > button to display the settings for the next Service User and repeat the process in the previous two steps to change their password.
- 15.Click OK.
- 16.The new security settings can now be sent to the IP Office control unit. Click 🗾.
- 17. The original name and password used to load the settings will be requested. Enter the details and click OK.

#### 5.17 Rack Mounting



The IP500 control unit and IP500 external expansion units can be rack mounted if required into 19-inch rack systems. This requires an IP500 Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700429202) for each unit.

#### The kit includes:

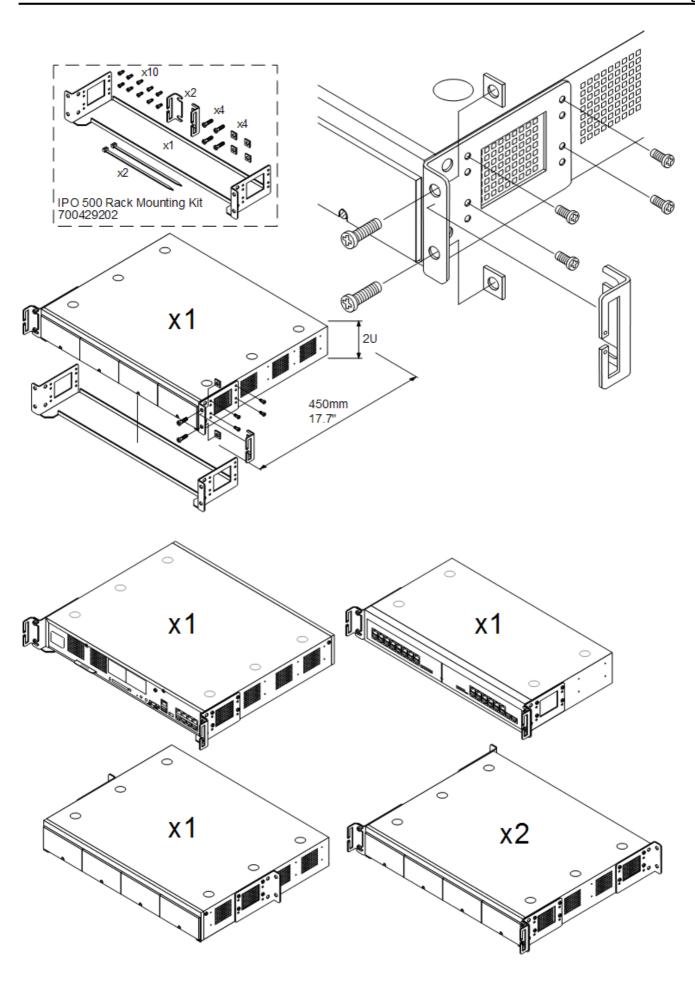
- A rack mounting bracket and screws for attachment of the bracket to the unit
- · Nuts and bolts for rack attachment.
- Brackets and cable ties for cable tidying.

As indicated in the diagram following, the rack mounting bracket can be used in several positions on the unit. IP400 external expansion units used in an IP500 system can also be rack mounted but use a separate IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.

#### **Environmental Requirements**

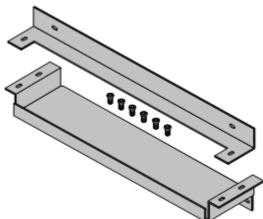
In addition to the existing <u>environmental requirements</u> for an IP Office system, the following additional factors must be considered when rack mounting a unit:

- 1. Rack Positioning Ensure compliance with the rack manufacturers safety instructions. For example check that the rack legs have been lowered and fixing brackets have been used to stop toppling.
- 2. Elevated Operating Ambient If installed in a closed or multi-unit rack assembly, the operating ambient temperature of the rack environment may be greater than room ambient. Therefore, consideration should be given to installing the equipment in an environment compatible with the maximum ambient temperature (Tma) specified by the manufacturer.
  - ☐ Operating Temperature: 0°C (32°F) to 40°C (104°F).
  - □ Operating Humidity: 10% to 95% non-condensing.
- 3. Reduced Air Flow Installation of the equipment in a rack should be such that the amount of air flow required for safe operation of the equipment is not compromised. Proper ventilation must be maintained. The side ventilation slots on the IP500 control unit should not be covered or blocked.
- 4. Mechanical Loading Mounting of the equipment in the rack should be such that a hazardous condition is not achieved due to uneven mechanical loading.
- 5. Circuit Overloading Consideration should be given to the connection of the equipment to the supply circuit and the effect that overloading of the circuits might have on overcurrent protection and supply wiring. Appropriate consideration of equipment nameplate ratings should be used when addressing this concern.
- 6. Reliable Earthing Reliable earthing of rack-mounted equipment should be maintained. Particular attention should be given to supply connections other than direct connections to the branch circuit (e.g. use of power strips).
- 7. Only the screws (M3 x 6mm) provided with the mounting kit should used to attach the brackets to the control unit.



• ① Only the screws (M3 x 6mm) provided with the mounting kit should used to attach the brackets to the control unit.

## 5.18 Wall Mounting

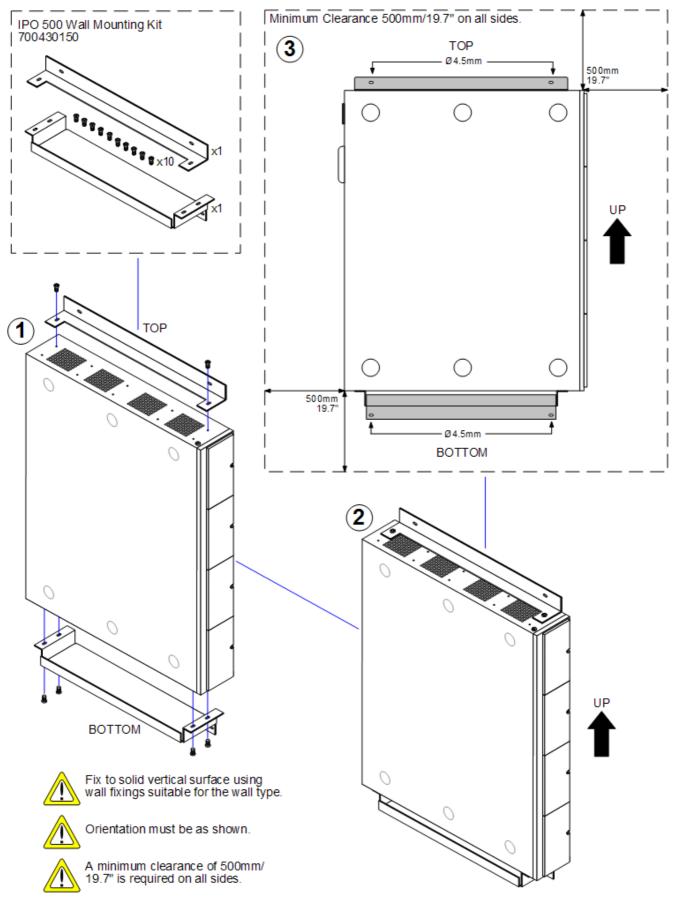


The IP500 control unit can be wall mounted. This requires an IP500 Wall Mounting Kit (SAP 700430150) plus additional 4.5mm fixtures and fittings suitable for the wall type. The wall mounting kit includes two brackets, one top and one bottom.

#### **Environmental Requirements**

In addition to the existing <u>environmental requirements</u> for an IP Office system, the following additional requirements apply when wall mounting a unit:

- The wall surface must be vertical, flat and vibration free.
- A minimum clearance of 500mm (19.7 inches) is required on all sides.
- The unit must be orientated as shown when mounted. That is with the base card slots facing right when viewed from in front of the unit.
- The brackets must be used as shown, with the deeper traylike bracket used at the bottom of the wall mounted control unit.
- Only the screws (M3 x 6mm) provided with the mounting kit should used to attach the brackets to the control unit.



• 1 The brackets must be used as shown, with the deeper tray-like bracket used at the bottom of the wall mounted control unit.

• ① Only the screws (M3 x 6mm) provided with the mounting kit should used to attach the brackets to the control unit.

#### 5.19 Grounding

Use of ground connections reduces the likelihood of problems in most telephony and data systems. This is especially important in buildings where multiple items of equipment are interconnected using long cable runs, for example phone and data networks.

All IP Office control units and external expansion modules must be connected to a functional ground. In some cases, such as ground start trunks, in addition to being a protective measure this is a functional requirement for the equipment to operate. In other cases it may be a locale regulatory requirement and or a necessary protective step, for example areas of high lightning risk.

#### WARNING

During installation do not assume that ground points are correctly connected to ground. Test ground points before relying on them to ground connected equipment.

The ground point on IP Office control units and external expansion modules are marked with a  $\mathbf{h}$  or  $\mathbf{v}$  symbol. Ground connections to these points should use a 14 AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve for a functional ground or green and yellow sleeve for a protective ground.

#### · Additional protective equipment

In addition to grounding, additional protective equipment will be required in the following situations. Refer to "Out of Building Telephone Installations".

- On any Digital Station or Phones external expansion module connected to an extension located in another buildina.
- In the Republic of South Africa, on all Analog Trunk external expansion modules (ATM16) and on any control units containing an analog trunk cards (ATM4/ATM4U).



#### **Tools Required**

- □ M4 Cross-Head Screwdriver.
- □ Tools suitable for crimping a cable spade.



## Parts and Equipment Required

- □ 14AWG Solid copper wire for ground connection.
- Cable sleeve matching local regulator requirements. Typically green for a functional ground and green/yellow for a protective ground.

IP Office Installation **IP Office** 



#### **Procedure**

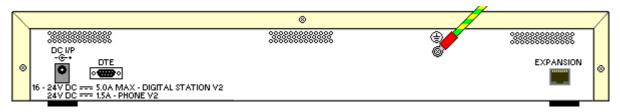
#### **IP500 Control Unit**

On IP500 control units the ground point is located above the RS232 DTE port.



#### **External Expansion Modules**

On expansion modules, the ground point is a 4mm screw located towards the right on the rear of the module.



 On some older modules, the dedicated ground point screw is not present. In those cases, the top-center cover fixing screw (3mm) can be used as an alternative ground connection point. A toothed washer should be added to ensure good contact.

## 5.20 Running System Status Application

In the previous process (Configuring Security Settings) the Administrator service user was configured to be able to use the IP Office System Status Application (SSA) with the control unit. This application is useful during the following installation processes as it can be used to validate the correct installation of equipment.

By default the System Status Application is enabled for the Administrator service user. For other service users, use of System Status Application must be enabled through the IP Office's security settings.

**Objective** - Allow SSA to be used to check the correct installation of additional equipment.



## 2.₫ 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure

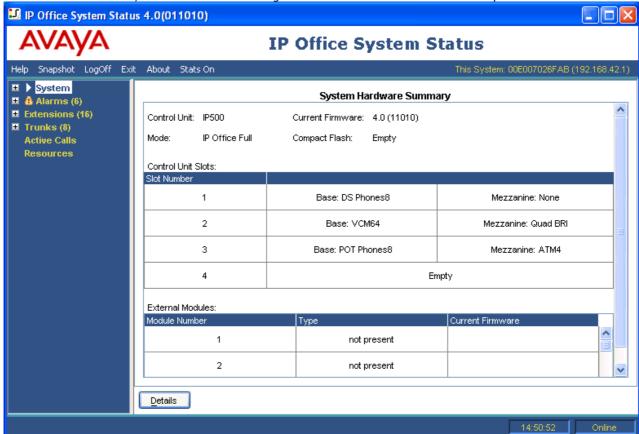
- 1. Select Start | Programs | IP Office | System Status.
- 2. On the Logon menu enter the required details. For a default systems these will be:

• Control Unit IP Address: 192.168.42.1

• Services Base TCP Port: 50804 • User Name: Administrator • Password: Administrator

3. Click Logon.

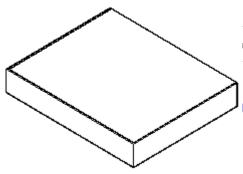
4. If the details are correct, SSA should show Waiting for connection and then the IP Office system status.



# **Chapter 6. IP400 Basic Installation**

## 6. IP400 Basic Installation

## 6.1 Unpacking



Use the following procedure when unpacking any equipment supplied by Avaya or an Avaya reseller or distributor.

Objective - To check that the correct equipment has been supplied and that no damage has occurred during transit.

## Information Required

## • $\square$ Equipment Checklist.

Draw up an installation checklist of the parts and equipment expected.

1.**0** 2.**0** 2.0

#### Procedure

#### • $\square$ Check for Package Damage.

Before unpacking any equipment, check for any signs of damage that may have occurred during transit. If any damage exists bring it to the attention of the carrier.

#### • ☐ Check the Correct Parts Have Been Delivered.

Check all cartons against the packing slip and ensure that you have the correct items. Report any errors or omissions to the equipment supplier.

## • $\square$ Retain All Packaging and Documentation.

While unpacking the equipment, retain all the packaging material. Fault returns are accepted only if repackaged in the original packaging. If performing a staged installation, the original packaging will also assist when repacking equipment to be moved to the final install site.

#### • $\square$ Ensure that Anti-Static Protection Measures are Observed.

Ensure that anti-static protection measures are observed at all times when handling equipment with exposed electrical circuit boards.

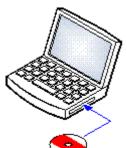
#### □ Check All Parts.

Visually inspect each item and check that all the necessary documentation and accessory items have been included. Report any errors or omissions to the dealer who supplied the equipment.

## • □ Check All Documentation.

Ensure that you read and retain any documentation included with the equipment.

# 6.2 Installing the Admin Applications



This procedure covers installation of applications in the IP Office Admin suite.

igoplus **Objective -** To install the applications necessary for the installation and maintenance of an IP Office system.

## Information Required

1. ☐ Which IP Office Admin Suite applications are being installed? The following list indicates those that are required for installation and configuration:

#### □ System Monitor - Install

Monitor is a tool intended primarily for Avaya technicians and engineers. However it is able to report on all aspects of IP Office operation and is therefore an important tool for diagnostics.

## • □ Feature Key Server - Not required. X

The Feature Key Server should only be installed if the PC will host the parallel port or USB port Feature Key dongle for the IP Office system.

## □ Manager - Install

This application is required to edit and manage the software on the IP Office system.

## □ System Status Application - Install

This application is used with IP Office 4.0 systems to show equipment and resource within the system, alarms and calls in progress.

## □ Previous System Monitor - Not required. X

This application is only required for supporting IP400 systems running pre-IP Office 4.0 software. It is not required for IP500 control units.

## • 🗆 Call Status - Not required. 🗙

This application is only supported for pre-4.0 IP Office systems. For IP Office 4.0 and higher it has been replaced by the System Status Application above.

## Parts Required

•  $\square$  IP Office Administrator Applications CD.

#### □ Windows PC

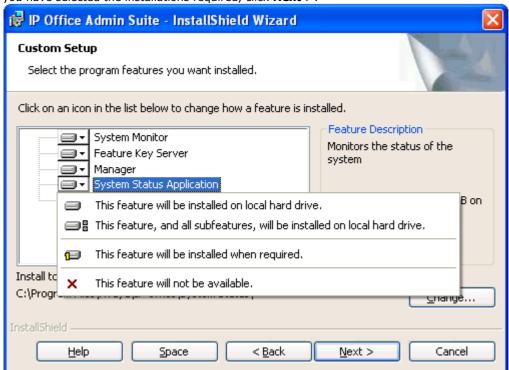
This should meet the requirements of the administrator applications being installed. If a server PC from the customer installation is available, for example for Voicemail Pro, use that PC. The specification below is just for IP Office Manager. If other applications are to be installed on the PC then their requirements should also be meet.

Requirement	Minimum	Recommended	
Processor	600MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.	800MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.	
RAM	128MB	256MB	
HD Space	1GB - 800MB for .NET2, 200MB for Manager.	1.4GB - 800MB for .NET2, 600MB for the full IP Office Admin suite.	
Display	800 x 600 - 256 Colors	1024 x 768 - 16-bit High Color	
Operating System	Windows XP Professional with SP2. Windows 2003 Server. Windows 2003 SBS. Note: 64-bit versions of the operating systems above are not supported.		

## 2.0

#### **Procedure: Installing the IP Office Admin Applications**

- 1. Using the **Add or Remove Programs** option in the Windows Control Panel, check that the PC does not already have a version of the IP Office Admin suite installed.
  - If 'yes' and the suite is a pre-IP Office 3.2 version, remove the existing IP Office Admin suite via Add/Remove Programs.
  - If the existing suite is IP Office 3.2 or higher, it is possible to upgrade without removing the previous installation. However, if the system already has a USB Feature Key, the key should be removed prior to upgrading and then reinserted and the PC restarted.
- 2. Insert the IP Office Administrator Applications CD. The installation process should auto start. If it does not auto start, open the CD contents and double-click setup.exe.
- 3. Select the language you want to use for the installation process. This does not affect the language used by Manager which will attempt to match your Windows regional setting. Click Next >.
- 4. Select whether only the current Windows logon account should be able to run the Admin Suite applications or whether they will be available to all users of the PC. Click Next >.
  - The previous selection does not affect the IP Office Feature key server application, if installed. That application runs as a service whenever the PC is running.
- 5. If required select the destination to which the applications should be installed. We recommend that you accept the default destination. Click **Next >**.
- 6. The next screen is used to select which applications in the suite should be installed. Clicking on each will display a description of the application. Click on the ▼ next to each application to change the installation selection. When you have selected the installations required, click **Next** >.



- 7. For IP Office system installations, ensure that at minimum System Monitor and Manager are selected.
  - Deselect Feature Key Server unless this PC will be hosting a Parallel port or USB port Feature Key dongle for the customer's IP Office system.

## 8. Click Install.

- 9. Installation of Windows .Net2 components may be required. If dialogs for this appear, follow the prompts to install .Net.
- 10.If requested, reboot the PC.

## 6.3 Control Unit Power Up

This procedure starts a new IP Office control unit not connected to any LAN. In this scenario the IP Office control unit will assume its default configuration settings.



Objective - To power up the IP Office control unit to a known state with a known set of defaults.



# Parts and Equipment Required

- $\square$  Switched power outlet socket.
- ☐ IP Office Control Unit.
- ☐ Locale Specific Power Cord.



# 2.₫ 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure

- 1. Remove the control unit from its box and check its condition. Check that an external power supply unit has been included with the control unit.
- 2. Connect the external power supply unit to the control unit.
- 3. Connect the power cord from the power supply outlet to the external power supply unit.
  - · Power cords must not be attached to the building surface or run through walls, ceilings, floors and similar openings. Installation measures must be taken to prevent physical damage to the power supply cord, including proper routing of the power supply cord and provision of a socket outlet near the fixed equipment or positioning of the equipment near a socket outlet.
- 4. Switch on power to the control unit.
- 5. Observe the center LED on the front of the control unit. Initially this LED will be red. After approximately 10 seconds it should change to green. During this time other LED's may flash as the unit goes through its power on self test cycle.

#### **IP Office Default Settings**

The following are the basic default configuration settings for an IP Office system.

System	Name	MAC address of the control unit.			
	System Password	password	password		
	License Server IP Address	255.255.255.255			
LAN*		LAN1	LAN2/WAN		
	IP address	192.168.42.1.	192.168.43.1		
	IP Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0		
	DHCP Mode	Server	Server		
	No of DHCP IP Addresses	200.	200.		

<sup>\*</sup>See Default DHCP/Data Settings detail below.

## Extensions and Users

A user is automatically created for each physical extension port detected in the system. Users are assigned extension numbers starting from 201. User names take the form Extn201, Extn202, ....

## Hunt Group

A single hunt group 200 called Main is created and the first 10 users are placed into that hunt group as members.

## Incoming Call Routes

Two default incoming call routes are created. Voice calls are routed to the hunt group Main. Data calls are routed to the RAS user DialIn.

## Default Short Codes

IP400 control units are manufactured as either A-Law or U-Law variants. For IP500 control units, A-Law or U-Law variant operation is determined by the IP500 Smart Card installed. Depending on the variant, different sets of short codes are created for the default configuration. Refer to the IP Office Manager application help for full details.

## • Default DHCP/Data Settings

When a defaulted IP Office control unit is switched on, it requests IP address information from a DHCP Server on the network. This operation will occur whether the LAN cable is plugged in or not.

- If a DHCP server responds within approximately 10 seconds, the control unit defaults to being a DHCP client and uses the IP address information supplied by the DHCP server.
- If no DHCP Server responds, the control unit defaults to being the DHCP server for the LAN using the following settings:
  - For its LAN1 it allocates the IP address 192.168.42.1 and IP Mask 255.255.255.0. It supports 200 DHCP clients using the addresses range 192.168.42.2 and 192.168.42.201, the IP Mask 255.255.255.0 and default gateway address 192.168.42.1 (the Control Unit's LAN1 address).
  - For its LAN2 if supported, it allocates the IP address 192.168.43.1 and IP Mask 255.255.255.0.
  - · Note that the IP Office does not check that these addresses are valid and or available on the network.
- This mode of operation will persist for subsequent power ups, until a config save occurs due to one of the following
  - The unit performs its automatic midnight backup.
  - A configuration is merged using IP Office Manager.
  - A soft reboot is performed using IP Office Manager.
  - A software upgrade is performed.

## 6.4 Connecting the Manager PC

At this stage we will directly connect the Manager PC to the new IP Office control unit. For this the PC will need to be set to a fixed IP address in the same subnet range as the IP Office control unit's default address (192.168.42.1/255.255.255.255).

Objective - Physically connecting the Manager PC and the IP Office without needing to adjust or configure any intervening equipment.



# Parts and Equipment Required

- ☐ Manager PC.
- ☐ LAN Cable.
  - $\hfill \square$  IP Office Small Office Edition, IP406 V2 and IP500 control units: A standard RJ45-RJ45 LAN cable can be used.
  - ☐ IP412 Control Unit: A RJ45-RJ45 cross-over LAN cable is required.

# 1.0 2.0 3.0 Procedure: Direct Connection to a Defaulted IP Office Control Unit

1. Check that the TCP/IP properties for the Manager PC's Local Area Network connection are set as follow:

• Fixed IP address: 192.168.42.203 • Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0 • **Default gateway:** 192.168.42.1.

- 2. Connect the LAN cable from the PC's LAN port the LAN 1 port on the IP Office control unit.
- 3. Check that the orange LED lamp on the IP Office LAN port is on. The green LED may also be flickering as it indicates traffic across the LAN connection.
- 4. Select Start | Run and enter cmd.
- 5. In the command window that appears enter ping 192.168.42.1. The results should show a number of ping replies from the IP Office. This confirms basic communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
- 6. If there are no ping replies enter *ipconfig*. The results should list the IP address settings of the Manager PC as required above and with no mention of DHCP being used. Enter exit.
- 7. Check the cable connection.

## 6.5 Receiving a Configuration (Pre 3.2)

The following is the normal procedure for receiving a copy of the IP Office configuration from a new or defaulted control unit running pre-3.2 IP Office core software.

Objective - This process tests the communication between the Manager application and the IP Office control unit.

## U Information Required

1. □ **System Password** - For a new or defaulted system this is password.



# 2.4 2.0 3.0 Procedure: Receiving the Configuration from a Pre-3.2 IP Office Control Unit

- 1. Select Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager.
- 2. Click  $\stackrel{4}{=}$  in the main toolbar or select **File | Open Configuration** from the menu bar.
- 3. The Select IP Office window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control units MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the Unit/Broadcast Address field and then click Refresh to perform a new search.
- 4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click **OK**.
- 5. The name and password request is displayed. The name must match a Manager operator and the password must match the IP Office control unit's system password. For a defaulted IP Office with pre-3.2 IP Office software enter Administrator and password.
- 6. The name and password used above are applicable to new control units which are supplied with a basic IP Office 2.1 level of software. Once upgraded to IP Office 3.2 the name and password required change.
- 7. Successful receiving of the configuration is shown by the full configuration tree being shown in the left-hand panel. With no configuration loaded the configuration tree shows just BOOTP and Operator.

**IP Office Installation IP Office** 

## **6.6 Using Monitor**

Monitor is a tool intended primarily for Avaya technicians and engineers. However it is also able to report the presence of hardware devices that are not reported by the IP Office Manager application and is therefore an important tool during the installation process. This process shows how System Monitor can be used to obtain information about the components installed with the IP Office control unit.



To introduce System Monitor so that it can be used during later stages of installation to confirm the correct installation of some components into the control unit.



## Warnings

 Running Monitor can create a high network load on the IP Office system. Therefore it should only be used when necessary and should be closed when not needed.

## U Information Required

- System IP Address For a new or defaulted system this will still be 192.168.42.1.
- 🗆 System Password For a new or defaulted system this is password.

# 2.0 2.0 3.0 Procedure: Running Monitor

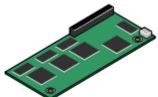
- 1. Select Start | Programs | IP Office | Monitor.
- 2. If Monitor has been run before it will attempt to connect will the system which is monitored previously. If you want to monitor a different system use the steps below.
- 3. Select File and then Select Unit.
- 4. Enter the IP Address and Password (see below) of the IP Office control unit you want to monitor.
  - For a new or defaulted control unit the IP address is 192.168.42.1 and the password is password.
  - · Following installation, the IP Office control unit can be configured with a specific Monitor Password for Monitor access to an IP Office system. If the IP Office does not have a Monitor Password set, Monitor uses the IP Office's System Password.
- 5. For an IP Office system, ensure that IP Office is selected.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. The first few lines give information about various aspects of the IP Office system. For example:

```
Oms PRN: Monitor Started IP=192.168.42.203 IP406 DS 3.2(8) IP0ffice_1
1ms PRN: LAW=U PRI=0, BRI=0, ALOG=0, ADSL=0, VCOMP=16, MDM=0, WAN=0 MODU=0 LANM-0, CkSRC=0 VMAIL=1(VER=2 TYPE
```

- LAW = A or MU law system.
- PRI = PRI channels
- BRI = BRI channels.
- ALOG = Analog Trunks
- VCOMP = VCM channels.
- MDM = Modem channels.
- WAN = WAN Ports configured.

- MODU = Number of external expansion modules.
- LANM = Number of WAN3 Modules attached.
- CkSRC = Current Clock Source (ISDN port number 0 = Internal Clock Source)
- VMAIL = 1 if connected, 0 if not connected.
- VER = Version of the voicemail server if obtainable.
- TYP = Type of Voicemail Server: 0= None, 1 = PC (Voicemail Lite or Pro), 2 = Line, 3 = Embedded, 4 = Group, 5 = Audix.
- CALLS = Number of current calls
- TOT = Total number of calls made to date since last IP Office reboot.
- 8. Close Monitor until it is need again. When restarted, Monitor will attempt to reconnect using the last settings entered. Proceed to Fitting VCM Cards.

## **6.7 Fitting VCM Cards**



VCM cards are used to provide voice compression channels for calls between IP and non-IP devices, devices being both trunks and extensions. VCM cards with differing numbers of voice compression channels are available.

igotimes Objective - To fit the card and confirm its presence after restarting the IP Office.



- Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
- During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.



# Parts and Equipment Required

## □ VCM Card

Check that the correct card has been supplied. The number and maximum capacity supported varies between different IP Office control units. All cards are supplied with 2 plastic snap-in stand off pillars.

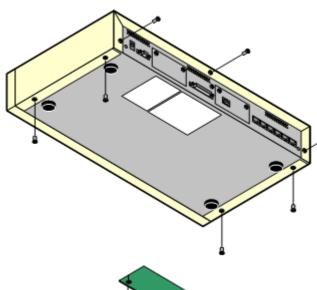
VCM Cards		SAP Code	IP406 V2	IP412
Voice Compression Modules	VCM5	700185119	~	<b>-</b>
(25ms echo	VCM10	700185127	7	7
cancellation)	VCM20	700185135	<b>*</b>	\ \
	VCM30	700293939	<b>y</b>	<b>y</b>
Voice Compression Modules	VCM4	700359854	<b>y</b>	<b>y</b>
(64ms echo	VCM8	700359862	<b>y</b>	<b>y</b>
cancellation)	VCM16	700359870	1	<b>y</b>
	VCM24	700359888	<b>y</b>	<b>&gt;</b>
Number of VCM cards.		1	2	
Maximum number of channels.		30	60	

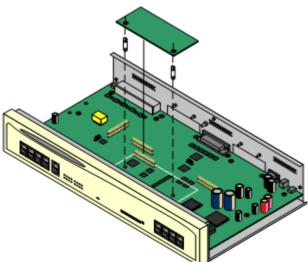


## **Tools Required.**

- □ Cross-head screwdriver.
- □ Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.
- ☐ IP Office Monitor application.

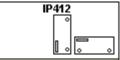
## **Procedure: Installing VCM Cards**





- 1. Check that correct card has been supplied.
- Ensure that you are wearing an anti-static wrist strap connected to a suitable ground point.
- 3. Remove the 7 screws fixing the IP Office control unit cover and slide the cover off the control unit.
- 4. Locate the position for the card and its jumper block.
- 5. Using the card as a template locate the two holes in the control unit circuit board. Insert the stand off pillars into these holes. For the IP412 either slot can be used in any order.





- Using minimal force and checking that the pins are correctly located, push the card onto the jumper block and stand off pillars.
- 7. If other cards are being fitted, proceed to <u>08. Fitting Modem Cards</u>.
- 8. Slide the control unit cover back on and replace the cover screws.
- Reapply power to the control unit and check that it restarts correctly.
- 10.Using the IP Office Monitor application, confirm that the correct number of voice compression channels are reported. They are shown by the value VCOMP= at the start of the Monitor trace.

## **6.8 Fitting Modem Cards**



Objective - To fit and verify the presence of a modem card.



## Warnings

- Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
- During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.



# Parts and Equipment Required

• ☐ Modem Card

Check that the correct card has been supplied. The number and maximum capacity supported varies between different IP Office control units. All cards are supplied with 2 plastic snap-in stand off pillars.

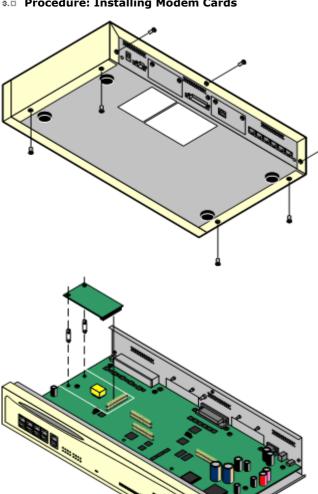
Modem Cards	SAP Code	IP406 V2	IP412
Internal Modem Card/Modem 12 Provides 12 V.90 modem channels.	700343452	7	7
Modem 2 Card Provides 2 V.90 modem channels.	700185226	<b>y</b>	7



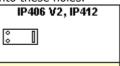
# Tools Required

- □ Cross-head screwdriver.
- □ Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.
- ☐ IP Office Monitor application.

## **Procedure: Installing Modem Cards**



- 1. Check that correct card has been supplied.
- 2. Ensure that you are wearing a anti-static wrist strap connected to a suitable ground point.
- 3. Remove the 7 screws fixing the IP Office control unit cover and slide the cover off the unit.
- 4. Locate the position for the card and its jumper block.
- 5. Using the card as a template locate the two holes in the control unit circuit board. Insert the stand off pillars into these holes.



- 6. Using minimal force and checking that the pins are correctly located, push the card onto the jumper block and stand off pillars.
- 7. If other cards are being fitted, proceed to Fitting Trunk
- 8. Slide the control unit cover back on and replace the
- 9. Reapply power to the control unit and check that it restarts correctly.
- 10. Using the IP Office Monitor application, confirm that the correct number of modem channels are now reported. They are shown by the value MDM= when Monitor first connects to the control unit.

## **6.9 Fitting Trunk Cards**

All trunk cards are supplied with 2 plastic snap-in stand off pillars and a blanking plate appropriate to the cards ports. E1R2 coaxial trunk cards include additional grounding strap, screws and bolts.



## Warnings

- Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
- During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.



# Parts and Equipment Required

## • 🗆 Trunk Card or Cards

Check that the correct card has been supplied. The number and maximum capacity supported varies between different IP Office control units. All cards are supplied with 2 plastic snap-in stand off pillars.

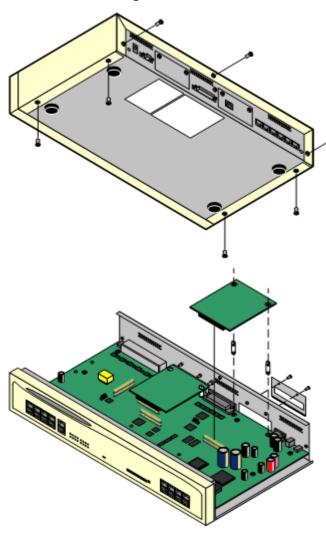
IP400 Trunk Cards	IP406 V2	IP412
Analog Trunk Card (ATM4)	7	7
Analog Trunk Card (ATM4U)	7	7
Quad BRI Trunk Card	7	7
Single PRI T1 Trunk Cards	7	7
Single E1 PRI Trunk Cards	7	7
Single E1R2 Trunk Cards	7	7
<b>Dual PRI Trunk Cards</b>	7	7
WAN Port Card	×	×



# Tools Required

- □ Cross-head screwdriver.
- □ Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.
- ☐ IP Office Monitor application.

## **Procedure: Fitting Trunk Cards**



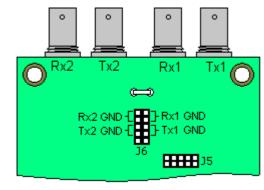
- Check that correct card has been supplied. Dual PRI cards are only supported in Slot A of the IP406 V2 control unit or both slots on an IP412 control unit.
- 2. Ensure that you are wearing a ground wrist strap connected to a suitable ground point.
- 3. Remove the 7 screws fixing the IP Office control unit cover and slide the cover off the unit.
- 4. Remove the 2 screws fixing the slot blanking plate.
- 5. Attach the replacement blanking plate.
- 6. Using the card as a template locate the two holes in the control unit circuit board. Insert the stand off pillars into these holes.
  - Except where otherwise indicated, it is recommended that Slot B is used first.
  - The IP406 V2 only supports dual PRI cards in Slot A.
- Using minimal force and checking that the pins are correctly located, push the card onto the jumper block and stand off pillars.
  - Coaxial E1R2 Trunk Cards Only:
     For these trunk cards care must be taken to ground the connectors. See the following section for details. This must be completed before proceeding any further.
- 8. Reapply power to the control unit and check that it restarts correctly.
- 9. Using Manager, receive the IP Office configuration and check that the lines are now shown.
- 10.If Modem and VCM cards were also fitted whilst the control unit was open, use Monitor to check that the VCOMP and MDM values match the cards fitted.
- 11. Proceed to Adding Expansion Modules.

## **Grounding E1R2 Coaxial Connections**

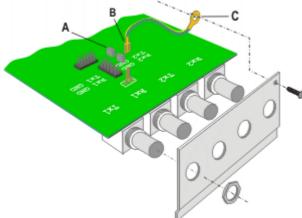
E1R2 coaxial trunk cards must be grounded correctly and require the IP Office control unit to be connected to a protective ground.

Normally the ends of one connection is grounded. For example, if the exchange Tx1 is grounded, the IP Office Rx1 should also be grounded. However this must be confirmed with the line provider to establish which ends they want grounded.

## 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure



- 1. Use the two jumpers supplied with the card, match the ground selection of the line provider. For example, if the line provider wants the IP Office Rx1 grounded, place a jumper across the two Rx1 pins of jumper block J6.
- Connect the ground strap spade end (B) to the spade connection on the board.
- 3. Connect the other end of the ground strap (C) to the blanking plate using the long securing screw supplied with the card.
- 4. Ensure that the coaxial connector ports are locked to the blanking plate using the nuts provided.
- 5. Continue with trunk card installation as in Stage 9a.



## 6.10 Rack Mounting

All IP Office control units and expansion modules except the Small Office Edition can be rack mounted. To do this requires a separate rack mounting kit for each unit and module.

## U Installation Requirements

In addition to the existing environmental requirements for an IP Office system, the following additional factors must be considered when rack mounting a unit:

## Rack Positioning

Ensure compliance with the rack manufacturers safety instructions. For example check that the rack legs have been lowered and fixing brackets have been used to stop toppling.

## • Elevated Operating Ambient

If installed in a closed or multi-unit rack assembly, the operating ambient temperature of the rack environment may be greater than room ambient. Therefore, consideration should be given to installing the equipment in an environment compatible with the maximum ambient temperature (Tma) specified by the manufacturer.

## **Reduced Air Flow**

Installation of the equipment in a rack should be such that the amount of air flow required for safe operation of the equipment is not compromised. Proper ventilation must be maintained. The side ventilation slots on the IP500 control unit should not be covered or blocked.

#### **Mechanical Loading**

Mounting of the equipment in the rack should be such that a hazardous condition is not achieved due to uneven mechanical loading.

#### · Circuit Overloading

Consideration should be given to the connection of the equipment to the supply circuit and the effect that overloading of the circuits might have on overcurrent protection and supply wiring. Appropriate consideration of equipment nameplate ratings should be used when addressing this concern.

### Reliable Earthing

Reliable earthing of rack-mounted equipment should be maintained. Particular attention should be given to supply connections other than direct connections to the branch circuit (e.g. use of power strips).

## Parts and Equipment Required

## Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700210800)

This kit contains all the components required for the rack mounting of a single control unit or expansion module. This includes screws for fixing of the brackets to the module and bolts for securing the module in the rack.

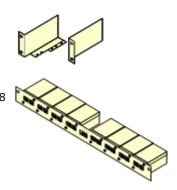


## • Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700293905)

Barrier boxes must be used for out-of-building analog phone extensions. This bracket allows up to 8 IP Office barrier boxes to be rack mounted and simplifies the number of connections to the protective ground point in the rack.

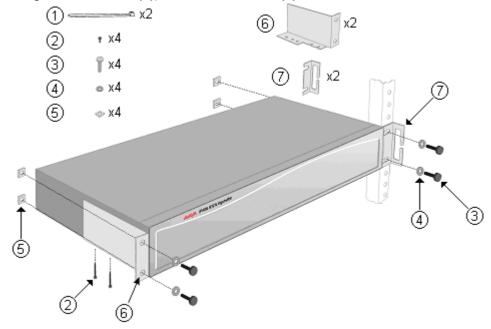
- Must be used when more than 3 Barrier Boxes are in use.
- A maximum of 16 Barrier Boxes are supported on any module.





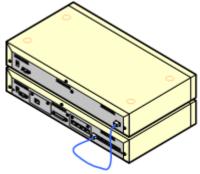
# 1.₫ 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure: Rack Mounting

1. Using the small screws (2), fix the main brackets (6) to the module.



- 2. Using the nut (5), bolt (3) and washer (4) provided, loosely fit the module into the rack system in its intended position.
- 3. If required, add the cable guide brackets (7) before finally tightening the nuts and bolts.
- 4. If required, connect the module ground points to the rack ground point. This should be done using 14AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve (functional ground) or green and yellow sleeve (protective ground).
- 5. Continue installation and setup as normal.

## **6.11 Adding Expansion Modules**



External expansion modules, except the WAN3, connect to the IP Office control unit using a blue 1 meter (3'3") expansion interconnect cable.

Expansion modules are only detected by the IP Office control unit, if the Expansion modules are powered up and running before the control unit is started. The control unit power on process includes a delay to ensure that if all modules in a system are started at the same time, the expansion modules should complete their power up before the control unit.

Each module is supplied with an expansion connect cable and a power supply unit. An appropriate locale specific power cord for the power supply unit, and cables for the ports on the front of the module must be ordered separately.



## Warnings

· No cable other than an Expansion Interconnect cable should be used. Use of any alternate cable will lead to system failure.

## Installation Requirements

- 🗆 Installation space either on or under the existing IP Office control unit.
- ☐ Free EXPANSION port on the rear of the control unit.
- □ Grounding Requirements

#### □ Functional Grounding

Connection of a functional ground is:

- □ Recommend for all modules.
- $\square$  Connection of a functional ground is mandatory for Analog Trunk module.

## • ☐ Protective Grounding

Connections of a protective ground via surge protection equipment is:

- $\square$  Mandatory for Analog trunk modules in the Republic of South Africa.
- 🛘 Mandatory for Digital Station and Phone modules connected to out of building extensions.
- □ Mandatory for Digital Station V2 and Phone V2 modules.



## **Tools Required**

- □ Manager PC.
- □ <u>Tools for rack mounting</u> (optional).



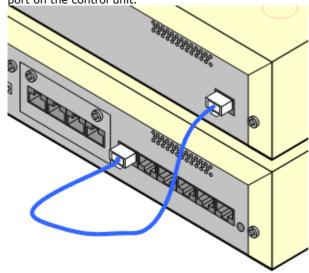
# Parts and Equipment Required

- □ External Expansion Module. Each module is supplied with a suitable external power supply unit and a RJ45-RJ45 expansion interconnect cable.
- □ Power cord for the power supply unit.
- □ Rack mounting kit (optional).
- □ Cable labeling tags.



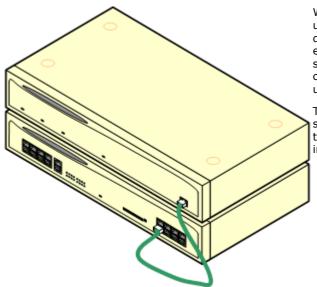
# 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure

- 1. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
- 2. Attach the external expansion module's power supply.
- 3. Connect the blue expansion interconnect cable from the module's EXPANSION port to the first free EXPANSION port on the control unit.



- 4. Make careful note of the port used and include this detail on the cable label and any other system records.
- 5. Switch on power to the module. Wait for the center LED on the front of the module to change from red to green.
- 6. Switch on power to the control unit.
- 7. Once the control unit has rebooted, using Manager receive the system configuration.
- 8. Click on Unit in the left-hand panel.
- 9. Check that the list of units shown in the right-hand panel is correct.
- 10. Proceed to Adding a WAN3 Module.

## 6.12 Adding a WAN3 Module



WAN3 expansion modules connect to the IP Office control unit using a LAN cable. It is preferred that the cable is connected directly to the IP Office control unit rather than via any other equipment. A green 1 meter (3'3") LAN interconnect cable is supplied with the module for this purpose though a replacement cross-over cable is required if connecting to an IP412 control

The WAN3 module requires its own IP address on the same subnet as the IP Office control unit. A WAN3 module obtains that address using DHCP so a DHCP server is required for installation.

This module is supplied with a LAN interconnect cable and a power supply unit. An appropriate locale specific power cord for the power supply unit, and cables for the WAN ports on the rear of the module must be ordered separately.

## U Installation Requirements

- $\bullet \;\;\square$  Installation space either on or under the existing IP Office control unit.
- □ Switched power outlet socket.
- ☐ System password.
- $\square$  Free LAN port on the front of the control unit.
- ☐ Grounding Requirements
  - **Functional Ground** Connection of a functional ground is recommend for all modules.



## **Tools Required**

- □ Manager PC.
- □ DHCP server (preferably the IP Office itself).
- □ Tools for rack mounting (optional).

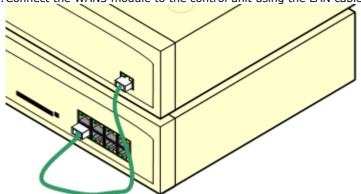


# Parts and Equipment Required

- □ WAN3 10/100 Module
  - Each module is supplied with a suitable external power supply unit and a RJ45-RJ45 LAN interconnect cable.
- □ For the IP412 control unit an RJ45-RJ45 LAN crossover cable is required.
- □ WAN Cables
  - A V.24, V.35 or X.21 WAN cable is required for connection to each WAN port. The cable used determines the signalling provided by that port.
- □ Power cord for the power supply unit.
- □ Rack mounting kit (optional).
- □ Cable labeling tags.

# 1.d 2.d 3. Procedure: Adding a WAN3 Module

- 1. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
- 2. Connect the WAN3 module to the control unit using the LAN cable.



- 3. Switch on power to the WAN3 10/100 module.
- 4. Switch on power to the IP Office Control Unit.
- 5. Using Manager receive the configuration from the IP Office system.
- 6. Select Control Unit. If the WAN3 10/100 module is not listed, right-click and select New. A Select WAN unit window appears which will allows the network to be scanned for the WAN3 unit.
- 7. When the unit is located, select it and then OK.
- 8. Send the configuration back to the IP Office system.

## 6.13 Grounding

Use of ground connections reduces the likelihood of problems in most telephony and data systems. This is especially important in buildings where multiple items of equipment are interconnected using long cable runs, for example phone and data networks.

All IP Office control units and external expansion modules must be connected to a functional ground. In some cases, such as ground start trunks, in addition to being a protective measure this is a functional requirement for the equipment to operate. In other cases it may be a locale regulatory requirement and or a necessary protective step, for example areas of high lightning risk.

## MARNING

During installation do not assume that ground points are correctly connected to ground. Test ground points before relying on them to ground connected equipment.

The ground point on IP Office control units and external expansion modules are marked with a  $\overset{\longleftarrow}{H}$  or  $\overset{\longleftarrow}{\Box}$  symbol. Ground connections to these points should use a 14 AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve for a functional ground or green and yellow sleeve for a protective ground.

#### · Additional protective equipment

In addition to grounding, additional protective equipment will be required in the following situations. Refer to "Out of Building Telephone Installations".

- On any Digital Station or Phones external expansion module connected to an extension located in another building.
- In the Republic of South Africa, on all Analog Trunk external expansion modules (ATM16) and on any control units containing an analog trunk cards (ATM4/ATM4U).



- □ M4 Cross-Head Screwdriver.
- □ Tools suitable for crimping a cable spade.

# Parts and Equipment Required

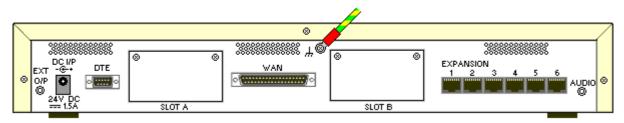
- □ 14AWG Solid copper wire for ground connection.
- Cable sleeve matching local regulator requirements. Typically green for a functional ground and green/yellow for
   a protective ground.

#### 1.**0** 2.**0**

#### **Procedure**

#### **IP400 Control Units**

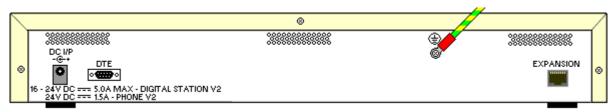
On IP406 V2 and IP412 control units, the ground point is a 4mm screw located adjacent to trunk card Slot B.



• On some older units, the dedicated ground point screw is not present. In those cases, the left-hand 3mm fixing screw on the Slot B blanking plate can be used as an alternate ground connection point. A toothed washer should be added to ensure good contact.

## **Expansion Modules**

On expansion modules, the ground point is a 4mm screw located towards the right on the rear of the module.



On some older modules, the dedicated ground point screw is not present. In those cases, the top-center cover
fixing screw (3mm) can be used as an alternative ground connection point. A toothed washer should be added to
ensure good contact.

## 6.14 Upgrading the Core Software

The installed IP Office Manager includes .bin core software files appropriate to the software level. It can be used to load those .bin file into the control unit and module within the IP Office system.



#### WARNINGS

#### • Check IP Office Technical Bulletins

Check the latest IP Office Technical Bulletin for the IP Office software release before proceeding any further. It may contain information relating to changes that occurred after this document was completed. Bulletins are available from http://support.avaya.com.

## WAN3 10/100 Modules

Upgrade each WAN3 10/100 module separately and only after having upgraded the control unit and any other expansion modules.

### · Upgrading pre-Level 2.1 Systems

For IP Office Systems with software Level 2.0 or earlier, the upgrade procedure must be done from a PC with a fixed IP address on the same subnet and LAN segment as the IP Office.

## • Multi-Stage Upgrades

Due to the need to adjust internal memory allocation and configuration storage, for certain upgrades some control units need to perform a multi-stage upgrade process. The table below indicates the required upgrade paths.

Control Unit	.bin File	Unvalidated Only	Validated
IP406 V2	ip406u.bin	-	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.0(999) > 3.1 > 3.1(999) > 3.2 > 5.0.
IP412	ip412.bin	1.3 > 2.1	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.1 > 3.2 > 5.0.

#### Multiple Managers

If more than one copy of Manager is running it is possible for the IP Office to request BIN files from a different Manager from the one that started the upgrade process. Ensure that only one copy of Manager is running when upgrading an IP Office system.

## Information Required

•  $\square$  **System Password** - For a new or defaulted system this is password.



## **Tools Required**

• 🗆 Manager PC - The Upgrade Wizard tool is part of the Manager application.

## **Procedure: Upgrade Procedure**

- 1. Using Manager, click and receive the configuration from the IP Office. If not already done this action creates a BOOTP entry in Manager for the IP Office system. This action also confirms communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
- 2. Select **File | Save Configuration As...** and save a copy of the configuration file onto the PC. This action should be completed before upgrading any IP Office system.
- 3. Select File | Advanced | Upgrade.
- 4. The UpgradeWiz is started and scans for IP Office modules using the Unit/Broadcast address. Adjust this address and click Refresh if the expected modules are not shown.
- 5. For each the control unit and module found, the UpgradeWiz displays the module type, its current version of software installed in the unit and the software version of the .bin file that Manager has available.
- 6. For those units and modules where manager detects that it has a higher version available, the tick box next to the unit or module is automatically selected.
- 7. If any of the modules have pre-version 2.1 software installed, untick the Validate option.
  - If this is the case, only continue with the upgrade process using a PC with a fixed IP address on the same LAN domain and physical LAN segment as the IP Office control unit.
- 8. If a multi-stage upgrade is necessary, use the following additional steps to select the appropriate interim software:
  - Right-click on the upgrade wizard and click Select Directory.
    - Upgrading an IP406 V2 to level 3.1 or higher:
       Select the V3\_0\_99 folder within the Manager program directory.
    - Upgrading an IP406 V2 to level 3.2 or higher:
       Select the V3\_1\_999 folder within the Manager program directory.
  - The upgrade wizard should now list just the control unit as having upgrade software available. For the remainder of the upgrade as detailed below, the upgrade can be rerun again select the final software for the control unit.
- 9. For those modules which you want to upgrade, tick the check box. For modules where a later version of software is available the check box may have already been automatically ticked. If doing a multistage upgrade, only the control unit is selectable for the first stage.
  - For systems including WAN3 modules, untick the WAN3 modules. Each WAN3 module should be upgraded separately once the control unit and modules in the same system have been upgraded.

## 10. Select Upgrade.

11. The system password will be requested. Enter it and click OK.

## 12. Validated Upgrade

If using the Validated option, a number of actions take place as follows;

- Firstly the upgrade wizard performs initial checks on the amount of free RAM memory available in the IP Office system to temporarily store the new BIN files during the upgrade process. If insufficient memory is available, you will be prompted whether to continue with an off-line upgrade or cancel upgrading.
  - · If offline is selected, the IP Office is rebooted into offline mode. It may be necessary to use the Refresh option within the Upgrade Wizard to reconnect following the reboot. Validate upgrade can then be attempted to again check the amount of available RAM memory for transfer of BIN files. If the memory is still insufficient, the option is offered to either do an unvalidated upgrade or cancel.
- $\cdot\,$  The bin files required are transferred to the system and stored in temporary memory.
- Once all the files have been transferred, the upgrade wizard will prompt whether it okay to proceed with the upgrade process. Select Yes to continue.
- Each module being upgraded will delete its existing core software, restart and load the new software file that was transferred. This process may take several minutes for each unit. Do not cancel or close the upgrade wizard while this process is running.

## 13. Unvalidated Upgrade

This method of upgrading should be avoided unless absolutely necessary. It is only required for IP Office systems with pre-2.1 software and should only be done from a Manager PC with a fixed IP address running on the same LAN segment and subnet as the IP Office system. During the upgrade the units and modules erases their current software and then request the new software file from Manager.

- 14. Following the upgrade check that the upgrade wizard now shows that the selected units and modules have upgraded. It may be necessary to select Refresh to update the information in the upgrade wizard display.
- 15.Repeat the process as required. For example if doing a multi-stage control unit upgrade or if there are WAN3 modules in the system that are being upgraded separately.
- 16. Proceed to Configuring Security Settings.

IP400 Basic Installation: Upgrading the Core Software

## 6.15 Configuring Security Settings

Currently the system is defaulted, including the security passwords controlling access to the system's security and configuration settings.

U You should read and understand the Security Settings section of the IP Office Manager documentation. That section details the settings and operation of the IP Office security settings and is part of the Manager applications help file.

Objective - Make the control unit configuration settings secure from unauthorized changes by changing the default passwords.



# 1.₫ 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure

- 1. Select Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager.
- 2. Select File | Advanced | Security Settings.
- 3. The Select IP Office window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control unit's MAC address.
  - · If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the Unit/Broadcast Address field and then click Refresh to perform a new search.
- 4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click OK.
- 5. The name and password request is displayed. As the system has been upgrade to IP Office 3.2 software, the name and password now requested are a Service User name and password stored within the IP Office. The default name and password for security settings access are security and securitypwd.
- 6. The Manager should load and display the IP Office control unit's security settings.
- 7. Select **General**. On the tab displayed, the Security Administrator section contains the default name and password used to access the IP Office's security settings. Click Change and set a new password. The default password is securitypwd. Click OK.
- 8. Click **OK** to save the changes to that tab.
- 9. Select Rights Groups and then the Administrator Group.
- 10. Select the System Status tab and check that System Status Access is selected. This is required for the System Status Application.
- 11. Click **OK** to save the changes to that tab.
- 12. Select Service Users. This tab shows the settings for one of the Service Users who have names and passwords used for access to the configuration settings on the IP Office control unit. Click Change and set a new password. The default password matches the name. Click OK.
- 13. Click **OK** to save the changes made on that tab.
- 14. Click > button to display the settings for the next Service User and repeat the process in the previous two steps to change their password.
- 15.Click OK.
- 16.The new security settings can now be sent to the IP Office control unit. Click 🗾.
- 17. The original name and password used to load the settings will be requested. Enter the details and click OK.

## 6.16 Receiving a Configuration (3.2+)

The process here applies to systems running IP Office 3.2 and higher.

Objective - Receive a configuration from an IP Office running IP Office 3.2 or higher software.

## Information Required

#### • Service User Name and Password

The defaults for full configuration access are Administrator and Administrator. However these should have been changed as part of the installation process, see 16. Configuring Security Settings.



## **Procedure: Receiving the Configuration**

- 1. Select Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager.
- 2. Click  $\stackrel{4}{=}$  in the main toolbar or select **File | Open Configuration** from the menu bar.
- 3. The Select IP Office window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control units MAC address.
  - · If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the Unit/Broadcast Address field and then click Refresh to perform a new search.
- 4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click OK.
- 5. The name and password request is displayed. The name and password must match one of those setup through the security settings. The default name and password for full configuration settings access is Administrator and Administrator.
- 6. Successful receiving of the configuration is shown by the full configuration tree being shown in the left-hand panel. With no configuration loaded the navigation pane shows just BOOTP and Operator entries.

### **IP Office Default Settings**

The following are the basic default configuration settings for an IP Office system.

System	Name	MAC address of the control unit.			
	System Password	password	password		
	License Server IP Address	<b>s</b> 255.255.255			
LAN1		LAN1	LAN2/WAN		
	IP address	192.168.42.1.	192.168.43.1		
	IP Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0		
	DHCP Mode	Server	Server		
	No of DHCP IP Addresses	200.	200.		

## Extensions and Users

A user is automatically created for each physical extension port detected in the system. Users are assigned extension numbers starting from 201. User names take the form Extn201, Extn202, ....

## **Hunt Group**

A single hunt group 200 called Main is created and the first 10 users are placed into that hunt group as members.

## Incoming Call Routes

Two default incoming call routes are created. Voice calls are routed to the hunt group Main. Data calls are routed to the RAS user DialIn.

## 6.17 Running System Status Application

In the previous process (Configuring Security Settings) the Administrator service user was configured to be able to use the IP Office System Status Application (SSA) with the control unit. This application is useful during the following installation processes as it can be used to validate the correct installation of equipment.

By default the System Status Application is enabled for the Administrator service user. For other service users, use of System Status Application must be enabled through the IP Office's security settings.

**Objective** - Allow SSA to be used to check the correct installation of additional equipment.



# 2.₫ 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure

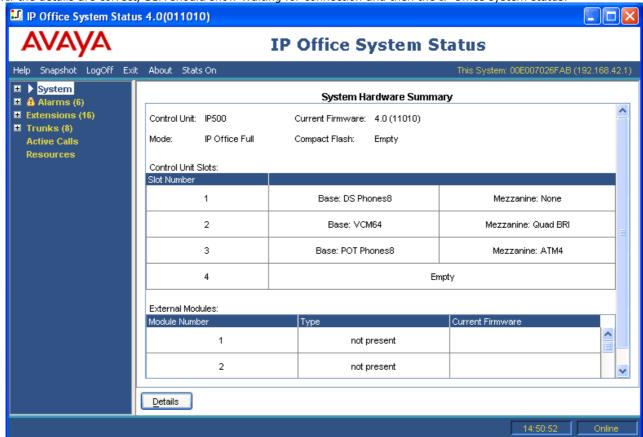
- 1. Select Start | Programs | IP Office | System Status.
- 2. On the Logon menu enter the required details. For a default systems these will be:

• Control Unit IP Address: 192.168.42.1

• Services Base TCP Port: 50804 • User Name: Administrator • Password: Administrator

3. Click Logon.

4. If the details are correct, SSA should show Waiting for connection and then the IP Office system status.



# **Chapter 7. Phone Installation**

## 7. Phone Installation

This section does not cover the installation of IP and wireless phones. They are covered by the following separate documentation:

- IP Office 3600 Series Installation Manual.
- IP Office H323 IP Phone Installation Manual.
- IP Office Compact DECT Installation Manual.
- IP DECT Installation Manual.
- IP Office SIP Phone Installation Manual.

This section assumes that phones are being connected to IP Office within an existing RJ45 structured cabling system. If phone connections are being made through older punchdown wiring systems then the installer is expected to be qualified and approved for that type of installation.

## **Out of Building Connections**

Connection to analog and digital phones not located in the same building as the IP Office is only supported with the addition of additional protective equipment and additional installation requirements. See <a href="Out of Building Telephone">Out of Building Telephone</a> <a href="Installations">Installations</a>.

IP Office Installation Page 142
IP Office 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

## 7.1 Installing 2400/5400 Series Phones

Normally, when the IP Office system is restarted and Manager is running, the system will compare the firmware loaded on 2400/5400 Series phones against those available in the Manager directory and automatically upgrade if necessary. There may be some rare cases where new firmware files are provided and it is necessary to force the phones to upgrade.

## Information Required

## • □ Planning Chart

This should indicate which extension should connect to which ports on the IP Office system. It should also include intended extension numbers and user details.

## Parts and Equipment Required

## • □ 2400/5400 Series Phone

Each phone includes a handset and handset cord. No line cord is included. A plastic-wedge is provided to change the phone's angle for wall or desk mounting. In addition for XX10 and XX20 models an adjustable desk stand is included.

#### □ Phone connection cable

These phones are not supplied with a line cord. The cable required will depend on the ports provided at each user position.

#### • ☐ RJ45-to-RJ11 Cable

This type of cable will be required if an structured cabling system has been used.

#### • ☐ RJ11-to-RJ11 Cable

This type of cable is required if a traditional RJ11 phone socket has been provided at the user position.

#### □ IP Office connection cable

Typically an RJ45-to-RJ45 cable is required for connection from the structured cabling system patch panel to the IP Office control unit or expansion unit DS port.

## • □ Wall Fixings

The phone base is designed to fit directly onto a standard US telephone jack wall plate. Outside the US, two M3 pan-head screws are required, positioned 79mm apart vertically around the phones centerline.



# Tools Required

#### □ Manager PC

During installation each 2400/5400 series phone requests software from Manager and then loads that software before becoming operational.

## □ Desk Mounting

No additional tools required.

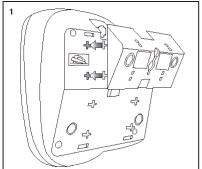
## □ Wall Mounting

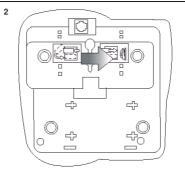
If not using a US telephone jack wall plate; drills, screw-drivers and measures for the installation of M3 pan-head screws and wall fixings.

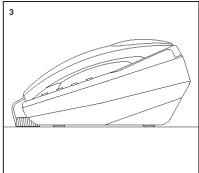
#### 1.0 2.0 2.0

#### **Procedure: Desk Mounting**

- 1.At the IP Office end, check that each DS port is connected to the appropriate port in the structured cabling system patch panel.
- 2. Start Manager. During installation each 2400/5400 series phone requests software from Manager and then loads that software before becoming operational.
- 3. Unpack the phone.
- 4. The phones are supplied with the plastic mounting wedge in the wall mounting position as this allows a smaller box size.
- 5. Slide off the plastic wedge and reattach it in the opposite position so that the phone is now angled for use on a desk.
- 6. Connect the handset cord to the handset.
- 7. Connect the handset cord to the port labeled **HAC**. This is normally located on the left-hand side of the phone.
- 8. Connect the line cord to the port marked with a symbol.
- 9. Connect the line cord to the desk socket.
- 10. The phone should display Upgrading firmware, please wait and then FIRMWARE UPDATE IN PROGRESS. Once this has completed the should briefly display New Calls: 0 and then the current users name and extension number.
- 11. For XX10 and XX20 models, assemble the adjustable desk stand. Attach the stand to the base of the phone.

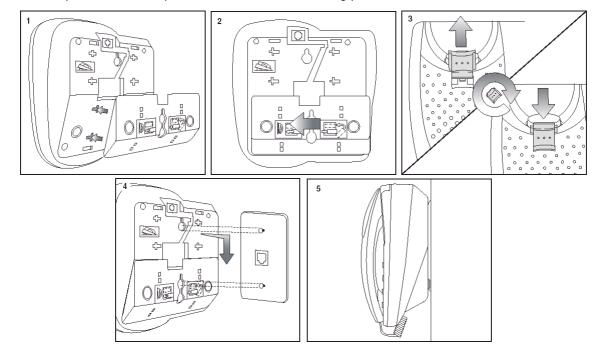






### **Procedure: Wall Mounting**

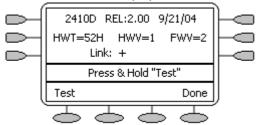
- 1. If a standard US telephone jack wall plate is not being used, prepare the wall fixings for the M3 pan head screws being used to mount the phone.
- 2. At the IP Office end, check that each DS port is connected to the appropriate port in the structured cabling system patch panel.
- 3. Start Manager. During installation each 2400/5400 series phone requests software from Manager and then loads that software before becoming operational.
- 4. Unpack the phone.
- 5. The phones are supplied with the plastic mounting wedge in the wall mounting position as this allows a smaller box size.
- 6. Slide off the plastic wedge and remove the self-taping screw that is taped inside the wedge.
- 7. Reattach the plastic wedge in its original position. The self-taping screw can be used to lock the plastic wedge in position.
- 8. Just below the phones hook-switch is a small plastic square. Remove this and then reinsert it so that a plastic lug projects out towards the hook-switch. This helps ensure that the handset stays in position when the phone is wall mounted.
- 9. Connect the handset cord to the handset.
- 10.Connect the handset cord to the port labelled HAC. This is normally located on the left-hand side of the phone.
- 11.Connect the line cord to the port marked with a 
  symbol.
- 12. Connect the line cord to the wall socket.
- 13. The phone should display Upgrading firmware, please wait and then FIRMWARE UPDATE IN PROGRESS. Once this has completed the should briefly display New Calls: 0 and then the current users name and extension number.
- 14. The line cord can be run through the channel in the base of the phone to space at the center. This space can be used to conceal excess cable.
- 15. Slide the phone onto the exposed heads of the wall mounting position.



### **Additional Procedures**

# 2.0 2.0 3.0 Procedure: Checking the Firmware on a 2410 or 5410 Phone

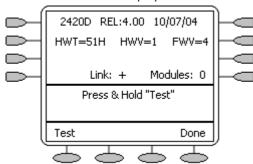
- 1. Press  $\rightarrow \Box$  Exit to ensure that the phone has exited any other usage mode.
- 2. Press either of the display keys next to **MENU**.
- 3. Select OPTION.
- 4. Select Self Test. The display should now show details of the phone's currently installed firmware.



- 5. The firmware loaded into the phones has a major and minor version. The Major version in the example above is shown as "FWV=2" and the minor version is shown as "REL:2.00".
- 6. Press → **Exit** to exit self test mode.

# 2.0 Procedure: Checking the Firmware on a 2420 or 5420 Phone

- 1. Select **OPTION**.
- 2. Select **Self Test**. The display should now show details of the phone's currently installed firmware.



- 3. The firmware loaded into the phones has a major and minor version. The Major version in the example above is shown as "FWV=4" and the minor version is shown as "REL:4.00".
- 4. Press → **Exit** to exit self test mode.



### **Procedure: Forcing a Software Upgrade**

- The following procedure should only be used if it has been determined that the 2400/5400 Series phones need to be manually forced to change their firmware. During this process the phone cannot be used.
- For the IP Office 4.1 Q1 2008 maintenance release and higher, using the batch file to enable the phones to upgrade their firmware is ignored unless the **No User** user **Source Number** of **ALLOW\_5410\_UPGRADES** is added to the IP Office configuration.
- 1. Locate the Manager program directory and within it the files turn\_on.bat and turn\_off.bat.
- 2. Right-click on turn\_on.bat and select Edit.
- 3. Locate the entry <IP Address> and replace this with the IP address of the IP Office system.
- 4. Close the file and save the changes.
- 5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 for the file turn\_off.bat.
- 6. Ensure that Manager is running. Manager acts as the TFTP server from which the phones will request firmware files.
- 7. Double-click on the file turn\_on.bat.
- 8.A prompt window should appear asking you to wait and eventually if successful Press any key to continue.
- 9. Within Manager, select File | Advanced | Reboot and reboot the IP Office system.
- 10. Following the system restart, the 2400 and 5400 Series phones will display Upgrading firmware, please wait and then FIRMWARE UPDATE IN PROGRESS.
- $11. Once all the phones have completed their upgrade, double-click on turn\_off.bat.\\$

# 7.2 Installing an EU24 Add-On

The EU24 add-on is supported on IP Office 3.0 and higher. It provides an additional 24 programmable feature keys for the associated phone. The action provided by each of these keys is set through the IP Office configuration. The EU24BL is supported on IP Office 3.1 or higher and provides a backlight function that matches the same facility on the 4621 phone.

A single EU24 or Eu24BL is supported on the following phones. A maximum of eight EU24 and or EU24BL per IP Office system.

Phone	EU24	EU24BL
2420/5420	<b>~</b>	×
4620/5620	7	<i>J</i>
4621/5621	7	<b>J</b>
4625	7	<b>J</b>

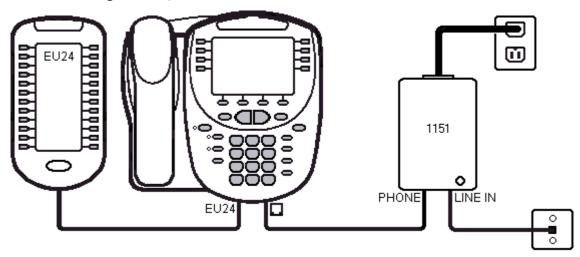
# • 🚹 Use Only the Cables Supplied

Only the cable supplied with the EU24/EU24BL should for connection to the EU24/EU24BL. This cable should only be connected to the port marked EU24 on suitable phones. Doing otherwise will cause damage to the EU24/EU24BL and the equipment to which it is attached.

### • An 1151 Power Supply Must Be Used

The EU24 and EU24BL require the phone to use an additional 1151 type power supply unit.

# Procedure: Installing an EU24/EU24BL



- Disconnect the existing phone cable from the phone socket to the phone. In the case of IP phones, this will be an
  existing CAT5 cable. For other phones this will be either an RJ45-to-RJ11 cable or an RJ11-to-RJ11 cable
  depending on the fixed socket type.
- 2. Reconnect the same cable from the phone socket to the power supply unit's LINE IN socket.
- 3. Connect the cable supplied with the PSU, from the power supply unit's PHONE socket to the socket marked  $\square$  on the phone.
- 4. Connect the cable supplied with the EU24/EU24BL from the EU24 to the port marked EU24 on the phone.
- 5. Connect the power supply module to the power outlet socket.

# 7.3 BM32 Firmware Upgrade

When the BM32 needs a firmware upgrade, please follow the upgrade procedures described below.

### **Preparation**

Place the new firmware for the BM32 modules onto the file server. The file name will be something like GBM32  $\times$  x\_x\_x.hex.

Amend the 1600 phone upgrade batch file to include the new file name. The example below shows the key lines that need to be added or amended to match the new firmware file.

```
## AVAYA 16XX IP TELEPHONE SOFTWARE UPGRADE CONFIGURATION
                                        ##
                                        ##
             *** July 10, 2008 ***
##
                                        ##
## This file upgrades the following telephones to the indicated releases:
   GBM32 - Release 1.0.8
IF $MODEL4 SEQ 1616 goto PHONEAPP1616
goto END
Check phone application version
# PHONEAPP1616
SET BMAPPNAME GBM32_B_1_0_8.hex
goto GETSET
Get additional configuration files
# GETSET
GET 46xxsettings.txt
# END
```

### **Upgrade Procedure**

Please follow the following steps to do the upgrade step by step:

- 1. Remove all BM32 button modules from the 1616 phones.
- 2. Place the firmware files and amended upgrade batch file onto the file server as detailed above.
- 3. Connect one BM32 button module to the the 1616 phone using the BM32 cable.
- 4. When the BM32 button module is booted, it will register to the 1616 phone and then start the download of new BM32 firmware The download will will take about one minute. After download the BM32 will reboot again. When it is rebooted successfully it will get into ready mode.
- 5. Repeat for other BM32 modules.

# 7.4 Basic Button Programming

Most Avaya phones have programmable button against which IP Office actions can be programmed. Full details of this are covered by the IP Office Manager help. This section covers only the basic elements of button programming.

# Appearance Button Requirements

### Appearance Functions

The functions Call Appearance, Bridged Appearance, Coverage and Line Appearance are collectively known as "appearance functions". The following restrictions must be observed for the correct operation of phones.

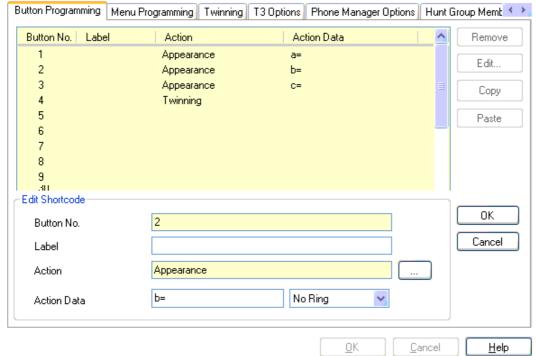
- On systems running <u>IP Office 2.1 or 3.0DT</u> software, the <u>first programmable button must be set as a call</u> appearance button. This requirement is necessary for the correct operation of phone functions such as call
- For systems running IP Office 3.0 or higher (excluding 3.0DT), the first 3 programmable buttons must be set as call appearance buttons. This requirement is necessary for the correct operation of functions such as transfer, conference and call log.
  - On phones with only two physical programmable buttons both buttons must be used as call appearance buttons.
  - On 1600 Series phones, all the appearance buttons must be programmed as a continuous block with no gaps between the appearance buttons.
  - For IP Office 4.2+, T3 phones support Line Appearance button only and are exempt from the above

**IP Office Installation Page 150 IP Office** 

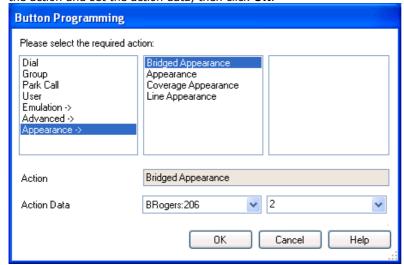
### 1.0 2.0 3.0 Procedure

Using IP Office Manager, if only button programming changes are required, the configuration changes can be merged back to the IP Office system without requiring a reboot.

- 1. Using Manager load the current configuration from the IP Office.
- 2. Select the **User** required to display their configuration details.
- 3. Select Button Programming.



- The number of button displayed is based on the phone associated with the user when the configuration was loaded. This can be overridden by selecting **Display All Buttons**. This may be necessary for users who switch between different phones using hot desking or have an expansion unit attached to their phone.
- 4. For the required button, either select the button and then click Edit or double-click the button.
- 5. Edit the settings as required. Use the ... button to display the menu for selecting the required button action. Select the action and set the action data, then click **OK**.



- 6. Click  $\mathbf{OK}$ . Repeat for any other buttons.
- 7. Click OK.

An alternate method for the above programming is to right-click on the various fields. To do this start with the Action field, then Action Data and then Label if required.

# 7.5 Changing Extension Numbers

A new or defaulted IP Office system numbers each extension in sequence, going by module and port order, starting from 201. An extension entry is created in the configuration and also an associated user entry. A similar process occurs when a new extension expansion module is detected.

### Extension versus User

It is important with IP Office to understand that "extension number" is a user property that belongs to and moves with the user. For example users can use hot desking to login on another phone and calls to that user's extension number will then go to that phone (the phone temporarily assumes their extension number and settings) until the user log off. The Base Extension value set against extensions in the IP Office configuration indicate the default associated user of the extension, it is not the extension number of that port.

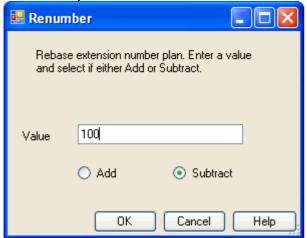
Objective - To change a user's or users' extension number.

# Procedure 1: Renumbering all extensions and users

The following process allows all user extension numbers to be shift up or down by a set amount. Any settings linked to those numbers are adjusted including extension Base Extension settings. It does not affect hunt group extension numbers.

1. 1. This action alters extension settings and so requires a system reboot when the configuration is sent to the IP Office.

2. Select Tools | Renumber Extension.

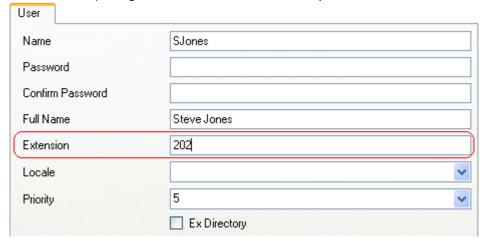


- 3. Enter the amount by which you want to shift the current extension numbering of extensions and users.
- 4. Click OK.
- 5. If the configuration changes are complete, send the configuration back to the IP Office and select appropriate settings for the reboot.



# 1.៨ ខ.៨ ១.០ Procedure 2: Changing an Individual User's Extension Number

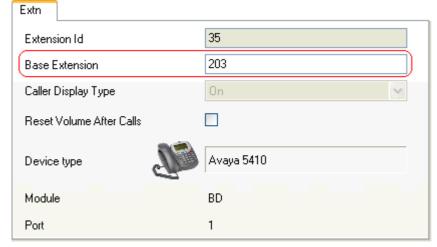
- 1. Select **User**.
- 2. Locate and select the relevant user.
- 3. On the **User** tab, change the Extension number to the required new number.



- 4. Click on another field. If an error warning appears it will most likely be due to a conflict with an existing use of that extension number.
  - If this an error, click Cancel to return the user to their original extension number.
  - If this is intended as the other entry will be corrected click OK and then edit the other entry.
  - When OK is clicked, Manager will automatically propagate the number change to any hunt groups, incoming call routes, user buttons, bridged appearance buttons and call coverage appearance buttons associated with the user's original extension number.
- 5. If the user has an extension with which they are associated by being the extension's Base Extension setting, that setting is not automatically updated. If the user should still be associated with that extension by default, the extension must be updated manually to match the user's new extension number.
  - 🚹 This part of the process requires an IP Office system reboot as it changes extension port settings.



7. Change the Base Extension number to match the user extension who should now be associated with that physical port by default.



- 8. Click **OK**. Manager will probably give a validation error message due to a user being associated with two extensions. This can be ignored until all the user moves have been completed.
- 9. If changing several users repeat the process as required.
- 10.Click 🗸 to revalidate the configuration and check that no conflicts between users and associated extensions.
- 11.If the configuration changes are complete, send the configuration back to the IP Office and select appropriate settings for the reboot.

# 7.6 Swapping Extension Users

IP Office 4.2+ allows a user to log out when their extension number does not match the **Base Extension** setting of the phone extension they are currently using. Once logged out the user will be automatically re-associated with the extension whose **Base Extension** does match their extension number. This feature allows users to be moved between extensions without needing to change the physical connections or rebooting the IP Office system.

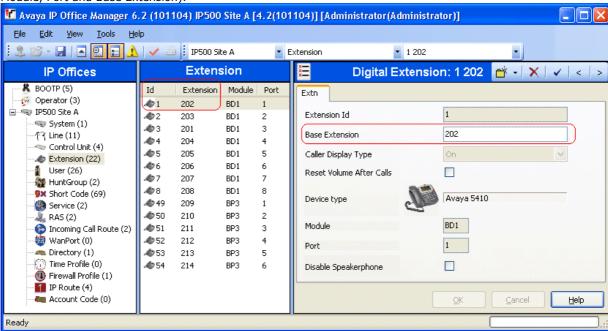
Whilst the example below shows 2 users swapping extensions the method can be used to swap multiple users within the configuration and effecting the swaps after a single merge of the configuration changes.

The process can be used on pre-4.2 IP Office systems but in that case will require the configuration changes to be sent to the IP Office system for a reboot.

### Example

User A (202) and User B (203) need to swap extensions.

- 1. Load the IP Office configuration and select **Extension**.
- 2. Locate the extension with the Base Extension set to 202, ie. matching User A's extension number.
  - If the group pane is visible (View | Group Pane) in IP Office Manager, it shows the extension details (ID, Module, Port and Base Extension).



- 3. Select that extension and change its **Base Extension** setting to **203**, ie. to now match User B's extension number.
  - If IP Office Manager is set to validate edits, it will warn that this change conflicts with the existing Base Extension setting of another extension. Ignore the warning at this stage.
- 4. Click **OK**. Locate the other extension with the **Base Extension** set to **203**, ie. matching User B's extension number.
- 5. Select that extension and change its **Base Extension** setting to **202**, ie. to now match User A's extension number.
  - If the error pane is visible (View | Error Pane), all the warnings about extension conflicts should have disappeared.
- $\mbox{6.\,Click }\mbox{\bf OK}.$  Send the configuration back to the IP Office system.
  - On pre-4.2 systems the configuration changes must be sent to the IP Office using one of the reboot options. Following the system reboot the user will be automatically associated with the appropriate extensions. The remaining steps of this process are not applicable to pre-4.2 IP Office systems.
  - IP Office 4.2+ systems can do this using the merge option. They should then use the following steps to complete the process without having to reboot the system.
- 7. Ask each of the users to dial the log out short code set on the IP Office system. By default this is \*36.
  - Having logged out, users on display phones should see the extension number has changed on the phone. They
    may also see NoUser until the user new associated user logs out from the phone they are currently using and
    is automatically logged in.

- User who do have a login code and are set to **Forced Login** will have to complete the process at their new extension using the login process.
- 8. The user IP Office configuration settings including their extension numbers will move between the extensions.

IP Office Installation Page 156
IP Office 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# **Chapter 8. External Trunk Configuration**

# 8. External Trunk Configuration

This section cover the basic requirements for external trunk configuration. The exactly method of physical connection and configuration will vary with each trunk provider and so requires local telecoms experience. The topics covered here are general guidelines.

### Clock Quality

Altering which digital trunk is used to provide the IP Office with its clock signal for call synchronization.

### Unused Trunks

Disabling the use of trunks and trunk channels that are not available.

### Prefix Dialing

On systems where a prefix is being used for external dialing, ensuring that the same prefix is added to incoming numbers in order to allow return calls.

# 8.1 Clock Quality

Any system where digital trunks are being used requires a clock signal for call synchronization between the switches at each end of the trunk. Typically the clock signal provided by a digital trunk from the central office exchange is the best quality and most reliable source.

The IP Office can obtain and use the clock signal from any of its digital trunks. However it will only use one trunk for its clock signal at any time and will ignore any other possible clock sources. If no clock source is available the IP Office can use its own internal clock if necessary.

The Clock Quality setting on each line is set to one of the following:

### Network

If available, the clock signal from this trunk can be used as the IP Office's clock source.

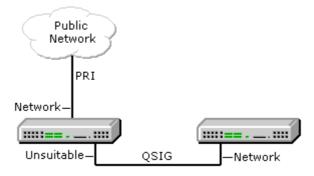
### Fallback

If available, the clock signal from this trunk can be used as the clock source only if none of the trunks set to Network are providing a clock source.

### Unsuitable

The clock source from this trunk is never used as the IP Office's clock source.

In the example below the first IP Office is set to use the public network trunk as its clock source and ignoring the possible clock source from the QSIG trunk. However the other system is using the QSIG trunk as it clock source.



### **Source Priority**

When multiple trunks with the same setting are providing a clock signal, the trunk used is determined in the following order of priority.

- Small Office Edition Trunks are used in the order of ports 1 to 4.
- $\bullet\,$  IP400 Control Units Trunks are used in the order Slot B ports 1 to 4, then Slot A ports 1 to 4.
- IP500 Control Unit Trunks are used in the order of slots 1 to 4 and then by port on each slot.

# **Viewing the Current Clock Source**

The current clock source being used by an IP Office system is shown on the Resources page within the IP Office System Status Application.

Objective - Set a chosen digital trunk as the network clock source and set all other digital trunks as fallback or unsuitable.

### 1.₩ 8.□ Procedure

- 1. Within the IP Office configuration, select  $\bigcap$  Line.
- 2. For each digital line, select the line and on the Line tab select whether that trunk should provide the clock source for the network or whether the trunk is unsuitable. For E1R2 trunks the Clock Quality setting is on the **Advanced** tab.



- 3. Ensure that only one trunk is set to Network. This should preferably be a direct digital trunk to the central office exchange.
- 4. One other trunk can be set a Fallback should the selected Network trunk connection be lost. If possible this should be a trunk from a different provider since that reduces the chances of both sources failing at the same time.
- 5. Ensure that all other digital trunks are set as Unsuitable.

# 8.2 Unused Trunks

Each IP Office trunk card provides a fixed number of trunk ports. For digital trunks each trunk provides a set number of digital channels. In cases where the number of trunks connected to the IP Office is lower or the number of channels provided is lower, those unused trunks and channel must be disabled.

• A Failure to do this will cause problems with outgoing calls. For example, on a system with an ATM4 trunk card fitted but only two analog trunks actually connected, failure to disable the other two trunks within the IP Office configuration will cause 50% of outgoing call attempts to fail.

# Objective

Remove unused trunks and channels from the IP Office configuration.

### 1.₫ 2.₫ 3.□ Procedure

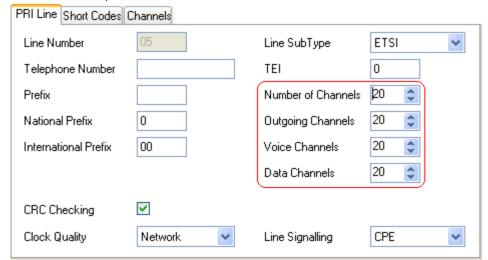
- 1. Within the IP Office configuration, select T Line.
- 2. For each line, set those lines or channels that are not connected or being used as out of service. The location of the relevant setting varies for each trunk type.
  - Analog Trunks

Set the Trunk Type to Out of Service.



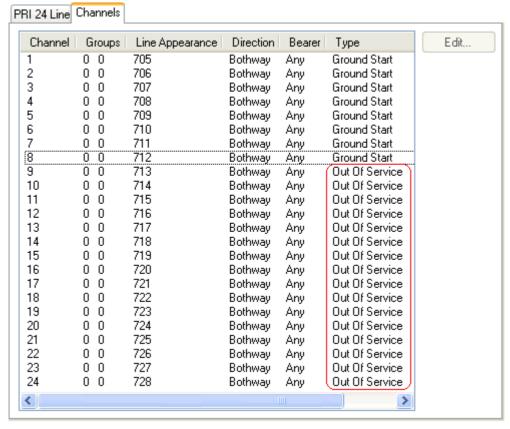
• BRI, E1 PRI, S0 and QSIG Trunks

Set the channels quantities to match the actual subscribed channels.



# • T1, T1 PRI and E1R2 Trunks

Select the Channels tab. Select those channels that are not used and click Edit.



- For T1 set the Type to Out of Service.
- For T1 PRI set the Admin field to Out of Service.
- For E1R2 trunks set the Line Signalling Type to Out of Service.

### • H323, SIP and SES Lines

Set the outgoing line group to a value that is not used by any short codes.

# 8.3 Prefix Dialing

Where a prefix has been implemented for outgoing calls, that same prefix needs to be added to trunk settings. The prefix is then used as follows;

- On incoming calls the prefix is added to any incoming ICLID received with the call. That allows the ICLID to be used by IP Office phones and applications to make return calls.
- Previously, on outgoing calls, any prefix on the digits received by the trunk to dial was removed since that prefix will not be valid at the central office exchange. Unlike previous IP Office releases, IP Office 4.0 does not do this and so whichever short codes are used to route a call to a trunk, they must be setup so as to remove the dialing prefix.

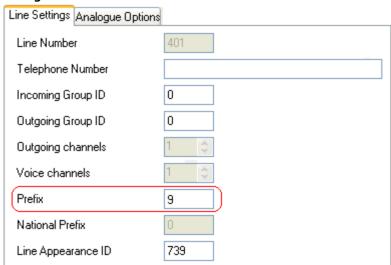
# Objective

Ensure the correct prefix is added to incoming calls.

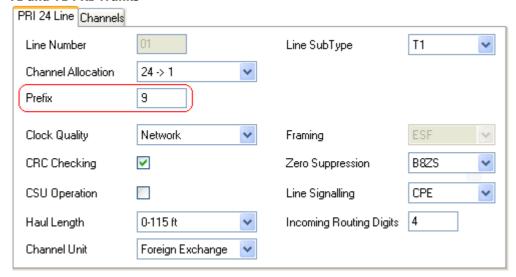


### Procedure

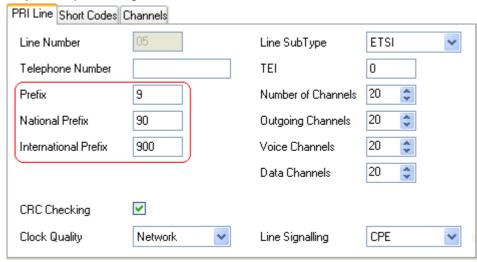
- 1. Within the IP Office configuration, select Line.
- 2. For each line enter the prefix. The location of the relevant setting varies for each trunk type.
  - Analog Trunks



• T1 and T1 PRI Trunks



• BRI, E1 PRI, S0 and QSIG Trunks



IP Office Installation Page 164
IP Office 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# **Chapter 9. Additional Processes**

# 9. Additional Processes

# 9.1 Upgrading the Core Software

The installed IP Office Manager includes .bin core software files appropriate to the software level. It can be used to load those .bin file into the control unit and modules within the IP Office system.



### WARNINGS

### • Check IP Office Technical Bulletins

Check the latest IP Office Technical Bulletin for the IP Office software release before proceeding any further. It may contain information relating to changes that occurred after this document was completed. Bulletins are available from http://support.avaya.com.

### WAN3 10/100 Modules

Upgrade each WAN3 10/100 module separately and only after having upgraded the control unit and any other expansion modules.

### Upgrading pre-Level 2.1 Systems

For IP Office Systems with software Level 2.0 or earlier, the upgrade procedure must be done from a PC with a fixed IP address on the same subnet and LAN segment as the IP Office.

### Multi-Stage Upgrades

Due to the need to adjust internal memory allocation and configuration storage, for some upgrades the control unit may need to perform multi-stage upgrade process. The table below indicates the require upgrade paths.

Control Unit		Unvalidated Only	Validated
IP406 V2	ip406u.bin	-	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.0(999) > 3.1 > 3.1(999) > 3.2 > 5.0.
IP412	ip412.bin	1.3 > 2.1	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.1 > 3.2 > 5.0.
IP500	ip500.bin	-	4.0.0 > 5.0.

### Multiple Managers

If more than one copy of Manager is running it is possible for the IP Office to request BIN files from a different Manager from the one that started the upgrade process. Ensure that only one copy of Manager is running when upgrading an IP Office system.

### Other IP Office Applications

Upgrading the core software of the IP Office control unit may require upgrades to associated software. Typically IP Office is compatible with the previous release of most IP Office applications, however for each IP Office core software release there may be exceptions. These exceptions will be detailed in the Technical Bulletin for the IP Office core software release.

# U Information Required

• 🗆 System Password - For a new or defaulted system this is password.



• 🗆 **Manager PC** - The Upgrade Wizard tool is part of the Manager application.

### **Procedure: Upgrade Procedure**

- 1. Using Manager, click and receive the configuration from the IP Office. If not already done this action creates a BOOTP entry in Manager for the IP Office system. This action also confirms communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
- 2. Select **File | Save Configuration As...** and save a copy of the configuration file onto the PC. This action should be completed before upgrading any IP Office system.
- 3. Select File | Advanced | Upgrade.
- 4. The UpgradeWiz is started and scans for IP Office modules using the Unit/Broadcast address. Adjust this address and click Refresh if the expected modules are not shown.
- 5. For each the control unit and module found, the UpgradeWiz displays the module type, its current version of software installed in the unit and the software version of the .bin file that Manager has available.
- 6. For those units and modules where manager detects that it has a higher version available, the tick box next to the unit or module is automatically selected.
- 7. If any of the modules have pre-version 2.1 software installed, untick the Validate option.
  - · If this is the case, only continue with the upgrade process using a PC with a fixed IP address on the same LAN domain and physical LAN segment as the IP Office control unit.
- 8. If a multi-stage upgrade is necessary, use the following additional steps to select the appropriate interim software:
  - Right-click on the upgrade wizard and click Select Directory. Locate and select the directory containing the bin file for the intermediate software level.
  - The upgrade wizard should now list just the control unit as having upgrade software available. For the remainder of the upgrade as detailed below, the upgrade can be rerun again select the final software for the control unit.
- 9. For those modules which you want to upgrade, tick the check box. For modules where a later version of software is available the check box may have already been automatically ticked. If doing a multistage upgrade, only the control unit is selectable for the first stage.
  - · For systems including WAN3 modules, untick the WAN3 modules. Each WAN3 module should be upgraded separately once the control unit and modules in the same system have been upgraded.

### 10. Select Upgrade.

11. The system password will be requested. Enter it and click OK.

### 12. Validated Upgrade

If using the Validated option, a number of actions take place as follows;

- Firstly the upgrade wizard performs initial checks on the amount of free RAM memory available in the IP Office system to temporarily store the new BIN files during the upgrade process. If insufficient memory is available, you will be prompted whether to continue with an off-line upgrade or cancel upgrading.
  - · If offline is selected, the IP Office is rebooted into offline mode. It may be necessary to use the Refresh option within the Upgrade Wizard to reconnect following the reboot. Validate upgrade can then be attempted to again check the amount of available RAM memory for transfer of BIN files. If the memory is still insufficient, the option is offered to either do an unvalidated upgrade or cancel.
- · The bin files required are transferred to the system and stored in temporary memory.
- · Once all the files have been transferred, the upgrade wizard will prompt whether it okay to proceed with the upgrade process. Select Yes to continue.
- Each module being upgraded will delete its existing core software, restart and load the new software file that was transferred. This process may take several minutes for each unit. Do not cancel or close the upgrade wizard while this process is running.

## 13. Unvalidated Upgrade

This method of upgrading should be avoided unless absolutely necessary. It is only required for IP Office systems with pre-2.1 software and should only be done from a Manager PC with a fixed IP address running on the same LAN segment and subnet as the IP Office system. During the upgrade the units and modules erases their current software and then request the new software file from Manager.

- 14. Following the upgrade check that the upgrade wizard now shows that the selected units and modules have upgraded. It may be necessary to select Refresh to update the information in the upgrade wizard display.
- 15. Repeat the process as required. For example if doing a multi-stage control unit upgrade or if there are WAN3 modules in the system that are being upgraded separately.

# 9.2 Creating a WAN Link

The following is a simplified process for creating a data link from Site A to Site B via the WAN ports.

### At Site A on IP address 192.168.43.1.

### 1. Create a Normal Service

The Service name can be any text and is used to identify this particular service. The account Name and password entered for the service are presented to the remote end, therefore must match the user name and password configured at Site B. The Encrypted Password option can only be used if the remote end also supports CHAP.

### 2. Create a User

Under the Dial In tab, tick Dial In On. This User account is used to authenticate the connection from the Site B. Note that if the Service and User have the same name these two configuration forms are automatically linked and become an Intranet Service. The User password is displayed at the bottom of the Service tab as the Incoming Password.

### 3. Setup RAS

If CHAP is to be used on this link then the Encrypted Password option must be checked in the Service and in the RAS service. The name of the RAS service must match the name of the Service at Site B. Note that if the RAS settings are given the same name as the Service and User they are automatically linked and become a WAN Service. Ensure that the Encrypted Password option is not checked when using a WAN Service.

### 4. Edit the WANPort

Note: Do not create a new WANPort, this is automatically detected. If a WANPort is not displayed, connect the WAN cable, reboot the Control Unit and receive the configuration. The WANPort configuration form should now be added.

### 5. Create an IP Route

In the IP Address field enter the network address of the remote end, not the IP address of the Control Unit. Under Destination select the Service created above.

### At Site B on IP address 192.168.45.1

1. Repeat the above process but altering the details to create a route from Site B to Site A

# 9.3 IP500 Reset Button

The IP500 control unit includes a Reset button not found on other IP Office control unit.

Pressing the button while the control unit is starting up will pause the start up until the button is released.

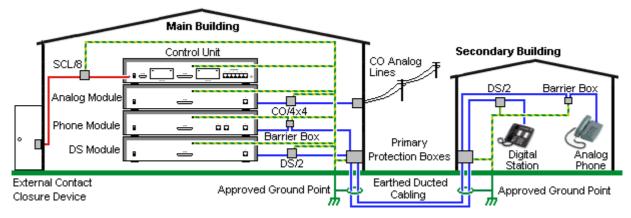
The effect of pressing the button during normal operation will depend on how long the button is pressed and is indicated by the CPU LED.

Press Duration (seconds)	CPU LED	Action	Summary
0 to 5.	Off	None	None.
5 to 10.	Orange	Reboot When Free	Reboot when free with new incoming/outgoing call barring. A reboot using the reset button is recorded in the Audit Trail.
10 to 30.	Flashing orange	Erase Configuration/ Immediate Reboot	Erase the configuration, alarm log and audit trail. Immediate reboot without waiting for active calls to end. See <a href="Erasing the configuration">Erasing the configuration</a> for full details.
30 to 40.	Red	Erase All.	Erase configuration, alarm log and core software. See Erasing the Operational Software for full details.
Over 40.	Flashing green	None	None.

# 9.4 Out of Building Telephone Installations

The following are the only supported scenarios in which wired extensions and devices outside the main building can be connected to the IP Office system. In these scenarios, additional protection, in the form of protective grounding and surge protectors, must be fitted.

• 🚹 The fitting of additional protection does not remove the risk of damage. It merely reduces the chances of damage.



### **Cabling Requirements**

- Cables of different types, for example trunk lines, extensions, ground and power connections, should be kept separate.
- All cabling between building should be enclosed in grounded ducting. Ideally this ducting should be buried.
- A Primary Protection Box must be provided at the point where the cables enter the building. This should be three point protection (tip, ring and ground). Typically this would be gas tube protection provided by the local telephone company. The ground wire must be thick enough to handle all the lines being affected by indirect strike at the same time.

Connection Type	Protection Device Type	Requirement	
DS Phone Extensions  ⚠ Digital Station Expansion module DS ports only.	ITWLinx towerMAX DS/2 Supports up to 4 connections. (This device was previously referred to as the Avaya 146E).	Connection from the expansion module to the phone must be via a surge protector at each end and via the primary protection point in each building.	
Phones Expansion module (	IP Office Barrier Box Supports a single connection. Maximum of 16 on any expansion module.	<ul> <li>The IP Office expansion module and control unit and IROB devices must be connected to the protective ground point in their building.</li> <li>The between building connection must be via earthed ducting, preferable underground. The cable must not be exposed externally at any point.</li> </ul>	
Analog Trunks	ITWLinx towerMAX CO/4x4 Supports up to 4 two-wire lines. (This device was previously referred to as the Avaya 146C).	For installations in the Republic of South Africa, the fitting of surge protection on analog trunks is a requirement.  For other locations where the risk of lightning strip is felt to be high, additional protection of incoming analog trunks is recommended.	
External Output Switch	ITWLinx towerMAX SCL/8 (This device was previously referred to as the Avaya 146G)	Connections from an IP Office Ext O/P port to an external relay device must be via a surge protector.	

The towerMAX range of devices are supplied by ITWLinx (<a href="http://www.itwlinx.com">http://www.itwlinx.com</a>).

# 9.4.1 DS Phones

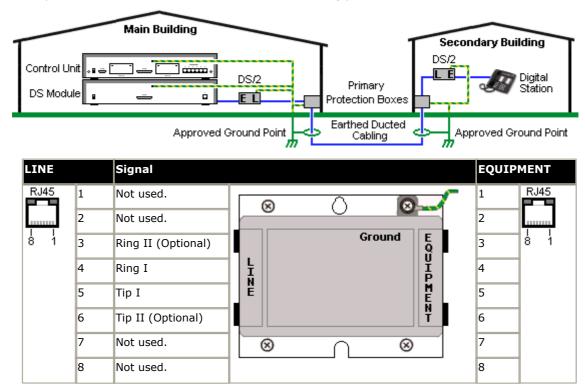
When digital phone extensions are required in another building, additional In-Range Out-Of-Building (IROB) protective equipment must be used. For phones connected to IP Office <u>DS</u> ports, the supported device supplied by ITWLinx is a towerMAX DS/2 module. This IROB device was previous badged by Avaya as the 146E IROB.

### CAUTION

Ports on the front of the Small Office Edition, IP403 and IP406 V2 control units must not be used for extensions that are external to the main building.

The protection device should be installed as per the instructions supplied with the device. The ground points on the IP Office control unit and the DS modules must be connected to a protective ground using 18AWG wire with a green and yellow sleeve.

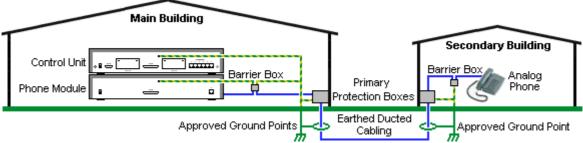
Typically the IROB's 2 RJ45 EQUIPMENT ports are straight through connected to the 2 RJ45 LINE ports. This allows existing RJ45 structured cabling, using pins 4 and 5, to be used without rewiring for up to two DS connection. However each of these ports can be used to connect a second extension using pins 3 and 6.



# 9.4.2 Analog Phone Barrier Box

Where analog phone extensions are required in another building, additional protective equipment must be used, in the form of IP Office Phone Barrier Boxes and protective earth connections.

- The correct IP Office specific barrier boxes must be used. These modules have been designed specifically for the signalling voltages used by the IP Office system:
- Only the IP Office Phone Barrier Box should be used with Phone V1 modules.
- Only the IP Office Phone Barrier Box V2 should be used with Phone V2 modules.
- No other type of analog phone barrier box should be used.
- Where more than 3 barrier boxes are required in a building, they must be rack mounted using a <u>Barrier Box rack</u> mounting kit.
- A maximum of 16 barrier boxes can be used with any Phone module.
- CAUTION: PHONE (POT) ports on the front of control units must not be used for extensions that are external to the main building.
- The Phone Barrier Box does not connect the ringing capacitor in Phone V1 modules.



### Main Building **Barrier Box** Secondary Building RJ11: Connect to PHONE (POT) port on the RJ11: Connect to analog phone. ⊚ Phone module using cable supplied with the RJ45 RJ11 Cable not supplied. barrier box. RJ45: From main building via RJ45: Connect to the secondary building primary protection in both buildings. barrier box via primary protection in both 0 buildings. · Center Screw: Connect to main building Center Screw: Connect to main protective ground (or ground terminal of building protective ground. Use Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit). Use 18AWG 18AWG (minimum) wire with a green (minimum) wire with a green and yellow and yellow sleeve. sleeve. Right-Hand Screw: Not used. Right-Hand Screw: Connect to ground point on Phone module using ground cable supplied with barrier box.

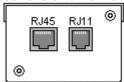
- 1. The following wires must be kept apart, that is not routed in the same bundle:
  - $\cdot\,$  Earth leads from the barrier box to the IP400 Phone modules.
  - · Internal wires, for example extension leads going directly to the IP400 Phone modules.
  - $\cdot\,$  Wires from external telephone going directly to the barrier boxes.

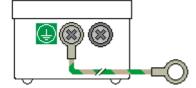
IP Office Barrier Boxes		SAP Code
	IP400 Phone Barrier Box (81V) Use with Phone V1 module. Includes an RJ45 to RJ11 cable and a functional earth lead.	700293897
	IP400 Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V) Use with Phone V2 module. Includes an RJ45 to RJ11 cable and a functional earth lead.	700385495
	Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit	700293905

# 9.4.3 Rack Mounting Barrier Boxes

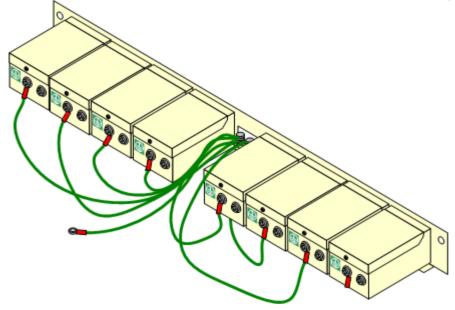
Where more than 3 Phone Barrier Boxes are used they must be rack mounted. The Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit (SAP Code 700293905) supports up to 8 Phone Barrier Boxes.

- 1. Unscrew the two screws arranged diagonally at the front of each barrier box and use these same screws to reattach the barrier box to the rack mounting strip.
- 2. Each barrier box is supplied with a solid green ground wire connected to its functional ground screw. Remove and discard this wire. Connect a green/yellow ground wire to the protective earth screw in the center of the Point on the back of the Barrier Box.





3. The rack mounting strip has threaded M4 earthing pillars. Connect the other end of the barrier box ground wire, using M4 washers and nuts, to the earthing pillar on that side of the rack mounting strip.



- 4. Using 14AWG wire with green and yellow sleeve, connect one of the earthing pillars to the buildings protective earth.
- 5. Using 14AWG wire with green and yellow sleeve, connect the other earthing pillar to the Phone module.
- 6. Ensure that the following wires are not routed together in the same bundle:
  - Earth lead from the barrier box to the IP400 Phone 8/16/32.
  - Internal wires, e.g. wires going directly to the IP400 Phone 8/16/32.
  - Wires from external telephone going directly to the barrier boxes.

# 9.5 Using the External Output Port

All the IP Office control units are equipped with a EXT O/P port. The port is marked as EXT O/P and is located on the back of the control unit adjacent to the power supply input socket.

The port can be used to control up to two external devices such as door entry relay switches. The usual application for these switches is to activate relays on door entry systems. However, as long as the criteria for maximum current, voltage and if necessary protection are met, the switches can be used for other applications.

The switches can be switched closed, open or pulsed (closed for 5 seconds and then open). This can be done in a number of ways:

- · Using IP Office short codes.
- Through the Door tab in Phone Manager Pro.
- Through the Door Release option in IP Office SoftConsole.
- Via the Open Door action in Voicemail Pro.

### **Default Short Codes**

The following are the default short codes in the IP Office configuration for external output switch operation. They use the short code features Relay On (closed), Relay Off (open) and Relay Pulse.

State	Switch 1	Switch 2			
Closed	*39	*42			
Open	*40	*43			
Pulse	*41	*44			

# 9.5.1 Port Connection

These ports are found on the rear of all IP Office control units. They are used for connection to external switching relays. The port uses a standard 3.5mm stereo jack plug for connection.

The IP Office is able to open (high resistance), close (low resistance) or pulse (close for 5 seconds and then open) two switches within the port. Either switch can be operated separately. These switches are intended for activation of external relays in systems such as door opening systems.

• **CAUTION:** In installations where this port is connected to a device external to the building, connection must be via a towerMAX SCL/8 Surge Protector and a protective ground connection must be provided on the IP Office control unit.

EXT O/P	Pin	Description
Switch 2 EXT O/P	1	Switch 1.
2. 3.5mm Stereo	2	Switch 2.
L_ Switch 1	3	0 Volts (Ground/Chassis)

• Switching Capacity: 0.7A.

Maximum Voltage: 55V d.c.

• On state resistance: 0.7 ohms.

• Short circuit current: 1A.

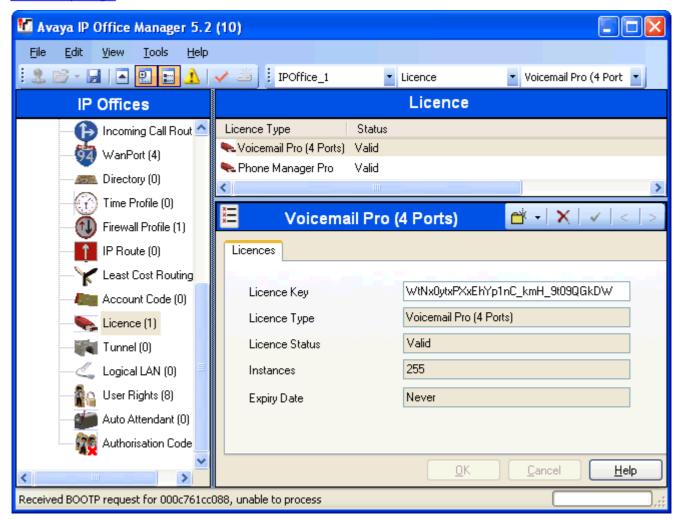
Reverse circuit current capacity: 1.4A.

• Ensure that pins 1 and 2 are always at a positive voltage with respect to pin 3.

3.5mm stereo audio jack plugs are frequently sold as pre-wired sealed modules. It may be necessary to use a multi-meter to determine the wiring connections from an available plug. Typically 3 (common to both relays) is the cable screen.

# 9.6 License Keys

Various IP Office features and applications require entry of <u>license keys</u> into the system's configuration. The license keys are unique 32-character codes based on the feature being activated and the serial number of the IP Office system's Feature Key dongle.



### • Example 1: Enabling Software Features

In the example above, the IP Office system has a valid Phone Manager Pro license. In this case the license is for 20 instances. That means that up to 20 IP Office users can be configured to use Phone Manager Pro simultaneously. Their previously license free Phone Manager Lite software will automatically change to display Phone Manager Pro features.

## • Example 2: Enabling Software and Features

The example above the IP Office also a license for Voicemail Pro. This initial Voicemail Pro license provide for 4 ports between the IP Office system and the Voicemail Pro PC. Additional Voicemail Pro (ports) licenses can be added to cumulative increase the number of port up to the limit supported by the particular type of IP Office control unit.

When a license key is entered into the IP Office configuration, the following information is shown.

### • Status

The status, which is Unknown until the configuration file is sent back to the IP Office system.

### License

The name of the licensed feature. This may differ from the ordered RFA name.

### Instances

Depending on the license, this may be the number of ports enabled or number of simultaneous users of the licensed feature. Sometime the number of instances is specified in the license name.

### Expires

Most purchased licenses have no expiry setting. For some features, trial licenses may be available which will have an expiry date.

# 9.6.1 Feature Key Dongles

Various IP Office features and applications require entry of a <u>licence key</u> or keys into the system's configuration. Each licence key is a unique 32-character number based on the feature being activated and the serial number of a Feature Key dongle installed somewhere with the IP Office system.



Uses a feature key dongle inserted or attached to the rear of the control unit. This method can be used with any of the IP Office control units supported by IP Office 4.0 and is mandatory with the IP500 control unit.



PC-Base Licensing

This method uses a dongle attached to a PC running the IP Office Feature Key server application. This PC must be on the same LAN segment as the IP Office control unit. Typically the dongle and IP Office Feature Key server application are installed on the same PC as the IP Office Voicemail Pro application if present.

There are three type of Feature Key dongle available. The serial number is printed either directly onto the dongle or onto a label on the dongle.

Feature K	Сеу Туре	Description	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP50 0	SAP Code
Smart Card		Inserts into a dedicated slot on the rear of the IP500 control unit. This card is required on IP500 systems even if not using any IP Office licenses.	×	×	×	7	MU-Law 700417470 A-Law 700417488
Serial		Plugs directly into the DTE serial port on the rear of the control unit allowing PC-less operation.	7	7	1	×	700293095
Parallel		Plugs into the appropriate port on a PC running the IP Office Feature Key server application. This PC must on the same LAN segment as the IP Office control unit.		7	~	×	700185234
USB			7	7		×	700261506

# **Software Upgrades**

When upgrading the IP Office administrator applications suite on a PC hosting the Feature Key Server software, the USB feature key dongle should be removed prior to the upgrade. Following the upgrade, reinsert the USB Feature Key and either restart the PC or manually restart the Sentinel System Driver service.

If the Feature Key Server software is upgraded with the USB Feature Key installed and all licenses are now reported as invalid, remove the USB Feature Key and the Feature Key server software. Ensure that the USB Feature Key is uninstalled from the list of USB Hardware on the USB port. Then reinstall the Feature Key Server software.

# 9.6.2 Installation Requirements

### Software

 The IP Office Administration CD contains the Feature Key Server software. This is required for use with USB and parallel port licence keys.

### **Feature Key**

• Ensure that the serial number on the Feature Key dongle is noted and recorded in a safe location. The number is printed on the Feature Key dongle and prefixed with SN.

### **Feature Key Server PC**

Only required if using a Parallel Port or USB Feature Key. Not applicable if using a Serial Port Feature Key dongle.

- Windows 2003 or XP are strongly recommended as the Feature Key Server is then able to install as a service, giving greater reliability.
- The server PC should be located in a secure area. The Feature Key device is fundamental to the correct operation of many features, so a record of its location and serial number must be kept.
- Parallel Port Feature Key:
  - A 25-pin Parallel port 1, set to bidirectional operation in the PC's BIOS.
  - Bidirectional parallel port operation is the normal default on most PCs.
  - · WARNING: Do not connect a printer to the parallel port Feature Key dongle. Poorly wired printer cables or printers that have not been earthed correctly can cause the parallel port Feature Key to stop working.
- USB Feature Key:
  - USB 1.1 or 2.0. Type A connector.
  - IP Office 1.4 Admin suite or later.

### Network

- The PC should be configured and tested for TCP/IP networking.
- It should be on the same network segment as the IP Office. That is data traffic between the IP Office and the Feature Key Server PC should not require routing.
- The PC should have a fixed IP address. Whilst PC's in a DHCP network usually retain the same IP address between reboots this is not guaranteed.
- If the IP Office is acting as a DHCP server, then in default it uses addresses 192.168.42.2 to 192.168.42.201 for DHCP clients. This leaves addresses between 192.168.42.202 and 192.168.42.254 free for devices that require fixed IP addresses.

IP Office Installation **Page 178 IP Office** 

# 9.6.3 Serial Port Feature Key Installation

- 1. Plug the serial port Feature Key dongle into the serial port on the IP Office control unit (IP Office Small Office Edition, IP406 V2 and IP412 control units).
- 2. Start Manager and receive the IP Office system's configuration.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. On the **System** tab, the **License Server IP Address** field is used to set the location of the feature key. For a serial port license key, set the **License Server IP Address** to be blank.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Select License.
- 7. To add a license, click and select **License**. Enter the new license click **OK**.
- 8. The **Status** of the new license should show Unknown and name the license as expected. If its **Status** is **Unknown** and name **Invalid**, the most likely cause is incorrect entry of the license key characters.
- 9. Click on 🗾 to send the configuration back to the IP Office. The menu that appears will indicate whether a reboot is required.
- 10.Use Manager to receive the configuration again and check that the status of the license. It should now be Valid.

# 9.6.4 Parallel / USB Port Feature Key Installation

- 1. Plug the Feature Key dongle into the PC's parallel or USB port.
- 2. Insert the IP Office Administrator Applications CD and let the installation wizard auto-start.
- 3. In the Select Features menu, ensure that Feature Key Server is selected. Do not change any other options as this will trigger their removal if already installed.
- 4. Having installed the software, the system will reboot.
- 5. The Feature Key Server installs itself as a service. It appears as **Key Server** in the **Services Panel**.
- 6. In the **Add/Remove Programs** panel, an entry **Sentinel System Driver** appears. This is part of the Feature Key Server.
- 7. Following installation and reboot, the Feature Key Server appears as an icon = in the Windows System Tray.
- 8. Right-click on the icon and select **About** to display the server software version and the **Feature Key** device number. If the icon appears as a white block with a red cross through it, then there is some error. The most likely error is that the Feature Key is missing from the USB port.
- 9. Start Manager and receive the IP Office system's configuration.
- 10.Select System.
- 11.On the **System** tab, the **License Server IP Address** field is used to set the location of the feature key. The default is a **255.255.255.255** broadcast address. This is okay for many sites, but it is recommend that the IP address of the PC running the Feature Key Server software is entered.
- 12.Click OK.
- 13.Select License.
- 14.To add a license, click and select **License**. Enter the new license click **OK**.
- 15. The **Status** of the new license should show **Unknown** and name the license as expected. If its Status is **Unknown** and name **Invalid**, the most likely cause is incorrect entry of the license key characters.
- 16.Click on do to send the configuration back to the IP Office. The menu that appears will indicate whether a reboot is required.
- 17.Use Manager to receive the configuration again and check that the status of the license. It should now be Valid.

### **Software Upgrades**

When upgrading the IP Office administrator applications suite on a PC hosting the Feature Key Server software, the USB feature key dongle should be removed prior to the upgrade. Following the upgrade, reinsert the USB Feature Key and either restart the PC or manually restart the Sentinel System Driver service.

If the Feature Key Server software is upgraded with the USB Feature Key installed and all licenses are now reported as invalid, remove the USB Feature Key and the Feature Key server software. Ensure that the USB Feature Key is uninstalled from the list of USB Hardware on the USB port. Then reinstall the Feature Key Server software.

IP Office Installation
IP Office

#### 9.7 So8 BRI Module

#### 9.7.1 Example 1: ISDN Terminal

In this example, calls on DID 123456 are routed to the first port of the So8 expansion module. That port has been configured as Line Group ID 701.

#### 1. Configure an Incoming Call Routing

The destination is a short code that directs the call to the line group ID that contains the So lines. The **Bearer Capability** has been set to **Any**, to allow data and voice via this route.

• Line Group ID: 0

• Incoming Number: 123456

Destination: 123456Bearer Capability: Any

#### 2.Create a System Short Code:

This is the destination used in the Incoming Call Route.

• Short Code: 123456

• Telephone Number: 123456

• Line Group ID: 701

• Feature: Dial

3. Send the configuration to the Control Unit.

Any call coming into the main system on DID 123456 will now be passed directly to the first port.

If you wish to assign DID's from your main pool to individual ports and avoid network charges when dialing between them, try variations on the following:

- 1. You have DID ranges, for example: 7325551000 to 7325551099. You wish to assign 7325551000-19 to port 1 and 7325551020-20 to port 2 etc.
- 2. Configure Incoming Call Route:

The # is used here instead of "n" to avoid problems with "Main". The minus sign means the number is processed from the left and so will wait for the whole number.

- Line Group ID: 701
- Incoming Number: -100x
- Destination: #
- 3. Repeat for Line Group ID 702 etc.
- 4. Create Short codes, for example:
  - Short Code: 100x
  - Telephone Number: .
  - Line Group ID: 701
  - Feature: Dial

S0 calls dialed without the area code are handled locally without network charges. Calls with area calls will go via the network.

#### 9.7.2 Example 2: Video Conference

In this example, calls are routed to a Polycom Viewstation module connected to a S0 port of the IP Office system.

The following settings were used on 4 incoming data channels of a PRI line:

• Line Number: 5

• Channel Allocation: 23 -> 1

• Switch Type: 5ESS

• Line Sub Type: PRI

• Provider: AT&T

• Channels: 1-4

• Incoming Line Group: 95

• Outgoing Line Group: 95

• Direction: Bothway

• Bearer: Data

• Service: Accunet (this is a important)

• Admin: In Service

To route an incoming video call on the PRI lines configured above to an SO8 module requires the following:

1. Create a dial short code that has the SO port as its destination Line Group. For this example the following was used:

· Short Code: 1500

Number: .Feature: Dial

· Line Group: 601 (the SO8 port number)

2. Create an Incoming Call Routing that routes the appropriate calls to that short code. For this example the following was used:

· Line Group: 95 (identifies calls using the PRI lines configured above)

· Destination: 1500 (the short code created above)

· Bearer: Any

To allow the video device on the S0 port to make outgoing calls to the PRI lines also requires a short code.

1. For this example the following was used:

Code: 91N;Number: N

Feature: DialLine Group: 95

#### **Polycom Video Module Settings**

The Polycom modules used in the previous example were the Viewstation 128, Viewstation 256 and Viewstation MP.

The Polycom module must have software that supports 'Standard ETSI ISDN' (European ISDN) and have its ISDN Switch Protocol setting set to 'Standard ETSI Euro-ISDN'

The following were the settings used during testing:

Characteristics	Admin/Software and Hardware/Software
Polycom View Station 512 MP.	Software: 7.0.1.
NTSC UIS Interface.	Network Interface: S/T Interface.
View Station PVS 1419.	ISDN Version: IEUS v18:a00320
Admin/General Setup	Admin/Video Network/ISDN Video Network
Country: USA	Country Code: 1
Language: English (USA)	Area Code: 732
Auto Answer: Yes	Number A: blank
AllowDial: Yes	Number B: blank
Allow User Setup: Yes	ISDN Switch Protocol: Standard ETSI Euro-ISDN.
Maximum Time on Call: 480.	
User Setup	Admin/Video Network/IMUX
oser setup	
Auto Answer: Yes	Numbers: blank
Auto Answer: Yes	Numbers: blank
Auto Answer: Yes     PIP: Auto	<ul><li>Numbers: blank</li><li>SPID: blank</li></ul>
<ul><li>Auto Answer: Yes</li><li>PIP: Auto</li><li>Far Control of Near Camera: Yes</li></ul>	<ul><li>Numbers: blank</li><li>SPID: blank</li><li>Audio Quality: 168KB/s</li></ul>
<ul><li>Auto Answer: Yes</li><li>PIP: Auto</li><li>Far Control of Near Camera: Yes</li><li>MP Mode: Auto</li></ul>	<ul> <li>Numbers: blank</li> <li>SPID: blank</li> <li>Audio Quality: 168KB/s</li> <li>Advanced Dialing: Dial Channels in Parallel</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Auto Answer: Yes</li> <li>PIP: Auto</li> <li>Far Control of Near Camera: Yes</li> <li>MP Mode: Auto</li> </ul> System Information	<ul> <li>Numbers: blank</li> <li>SPID: blank</li> <li>Audio Quality: 168KB/s</li> <li>Advanced Dialing: Dial Channels in Parallel</li> <li>Admin/Software and Hardware/Hardware</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Auto Answer: Yes</li> <li>PIP: Auto</li> <li>Far Control of Near Camera: Yes</li> <li>MP Mode: Auto</li> </ul> System Information <ul> <li>Release: 7.0.1</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Numbers: blank</li> <li>SPID: blank</li> <li>Audio Quality: 168KB/s</li> <li>Advanced Dialing: Dial Channels in Parallel</li> <li>Admin/Software and Hardware/Hardware</li> <li>Camera: NTSC</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Auto Answer: Yes</li> <li>PIP: Auto</li> <li>Far Control of Near Camera: Yes</li> <li>MP Mode: Auto</li> </ul> System Information <ul> <li>Release: 7.0.1</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Numbers: blank</li> <li>SPID: blank</li> <li>Audio Quality: 168KB/s</li> <li>Advanced Dialing: Dial Channels in Parallel</li> <li>Admin/Software and Hardware/Hardware</li> <li>Camera: NTSC</li> <li>Video Comm Interface: ISDN_Quad_BRI</li> </ul>

#### **9.8 SNMP**

#### 9.8.1 SNMP Introduction

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a standard network protocol that allows the monitoring and management of data devices across a network.

An SNMP agent can be built into network devices such as routers and hubs. An SNMP manager application (for example CastleRock or HP OpenView) can then communicate with those devices.

This communication can be:

- Polling: Supported by IP Office 2.0 and above
  - Some SNMP manager applications send out polling messages to the network. They then record the responds of any SNMP enabled devices (agents). This allows the manager to create a network map and to raise an alarm when devices previously present do not respond.
  - Most SNMP manager applications can also do simple IP address polling to locate non-SNMP enabled devices. However this method of polling does not identify the device type or other information.
  - SNMP polling including details about the responding device. For example an IP Office control unit's response includes the control unit type, level of software, routing table information, up time, etc.
- Traps: Supported by IP Office 2.0 and above
  - When certain events occur, a devices SNMP agent can send details of the event to the SNMP manager. This is called an SNMP 'trap'. These appear in the event log of the SNMP manager. Most SNMP manager's can be configured to give additional alerts in response to particular traps.
- Management: Not supported by IP Office 2.0 and above
  Some SNMP agents support device management and configuration changes through the SNMP manager interface.

IP Office 2.0 and above allows IP Office Control Units to act as read-only SNMP v1 agents. It can include the sending of events traps to up to two different SNMP manager addresses.

• IP Office 3.2 supports the use of SMTP to email SNMP alarms. This allows the IP Office's SNMP alarms to be used without having to setup an SNMP manager application.

IP Office SNMP operation has been tested against Castle Rock SNMPc-EE 5.1.6c and HP OpenView Network Node Manager 6.41.

- A MIB file exists for the SNMP monitoring of Avaya 4600 and 5600 Series IP phones. The MIB file can be obtained from the Avaya support website (http://support.avaya.com).
- The Avaya IP DECT system can also be monitored using SNMP. Refer to the IP DECT Installation manual.

#### 9.8.2 Installing the IP Office MIB Files

To allow full communication between an SNMP agent and an SNMP manager, the SNMP manager must load MIB files (Management Information Base) specific to the SNMP agent device and the features it supports. These MIB files contain details of the information the agent can provide and the traps that it can send. Full details of the structure of the IP Office MIB files, MIB groups within those files and event traps can be found in the "IP Office Installation Manual".

The MIB files for IP Office operation are included on the IP Office Admin CD in the folder C:\smnp\_mibs. The actual files required and the method of loading depend on the SNMP manager application being used. The details below cover the two SNMP manager applications tested.

HP Open View Network Node Manager

1. Copy the following MIB files to the applications MIBs folder.

	MIB File	Source
a.	rfc2737-entity-mib.mib	snmp_mibs\standard folder on OpenView Install CD.
b.	avayagen-mib.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice folder on IP Office Admin CD.
c.	ipo-prod-mib.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice folder on IP Office Admin CD.
d.	ipo-mib.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice folder on IP Office Admin CD.
e.	inet-address-mib.mib	snmp_mibs\Standard folder on IP Office Admin CD.
f.	rfc2213-integrated-services-mib.mib	snmp_mibs\standard folder on OpenView Install CD.
g.	diffserv-dscp-tc.mib	snmp_mibs\Standard folder on IP Office Admin CD.
h.	diffserv-mib-hpov.mib	snmp_mibs\Standard folder on IP Office Admin CD.
i.	ipo-phones-mib.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice folder on IP Office Admin CD.

- 2. Start the OpenView Network Node Manager console.
- 3. Select Options and then Load/Unload MIBs: SNMP.
- 4. Select Load and select all the MIB files listed above.
- 5. Select Compile.

CastleRock SNMPc 5.1.6c and earlier

1. Copy the following MIB files to the applications MIBs folder, normally C:\Program Files\SNMPc Network Manager\mibfiles.

	MIB file	Source
a.	ENTITY-MIB	snmp_mibs\Standard on IP Office Admin CD.
b.	AVAYAGEN-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice on IP Office Admin CD.
C.	IPO-PROD-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice on IP Office Admin CD.
d.	IPO-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice on IP Office Admin CD.
e.	INET-ADDRESS-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\Standard on IP Office Admin CD.
f.	INTEGRATED-SERVICES-MIB	snmp_mibs\Standard on IP Office Admin CD.
g.	DIFFSERV-DSCP-TC.mib	snmp_mibs\Standard on IP Office Admin CD.
h.	DIFFSERV-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\Standard on IP Office Admin CD.
i.	IPO-PHONES-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice on IP Office Admin CD.

- 2. In SMNPc select Config | MIB Database.
- 3. Select Add and select the MIB files listed above in the order listed.

#### CastleRock SNMPc V5.0.1

The MIB installation instructions provided above are correct for CastleRock SNMPc V5.0.8 and later. For V5.0.1 of CastleRock SNMPc the following must be carried out:

- 1. Copy all of the IP Office MIBs and standard MIBs from the IP Office Administrator Applications CD to the SNMPc mibfiles directory.
- 2. In the SNMPc mibfiles directory open the files STANDARD.mib and SNMPv2-SMI.mib in Notepad.
- 3. In the SNMPv2-SMI.mib file find the definition of zeroDotZero and copy this to the clipboard.
- 4. In the STANDARD.MIB file find the SNMPv2-SMI section and paste in the definition of zeroDotZero from the clipboard before the end of this section (just before the END statement).
- 5. Save the modified STANDARD.MIB file.
- 6. Add the MIB file SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB.mib to the MIB database using the instructions provided in the IP Office installation guide.
- 7. Add all the MIB files listed in the instructions provided in the IP Office installation guide in the order given.
- 8. Compile the MIBs ready for use.

The reason for this is: The IPO-PHONES-MIB.mib relies upon the DIFFSERV-MIB.mib for the definition of the textual convention of IndexInteger. The DIFFSERV-MIB needs the definition of the textual convention zeroDotZero which is normally defined in SNMPv2-SMI.mib. However including SNMPv2-SMI.mib in the MIB file compilation list results in errors due to conflicts with what appear to be internal definitions within SNMPc and the SNMPv2-SMI section in its STANDARD. mib file. Therefore to resolve the issue the required definition of zeroDotZero must be placed in the SNMPv2-SMI section in SNMPc's STANDARD.mib file.

#### 9.8.3 Enabling SNMP and Polling Support

In order for the IP Office control unit to be discovered and polled by an SNMP manager, its SNMP agent must be enabled and placed in the same read community as the SNMP manager.

#### To enable the SNMP agent:

- 1. In Manager, receive the control unit's configuration.
- 2. Double-click **System** from the Configuration Tree panel and select the SNMP tab.
- 3. Tick SNMP Enabled.
- 4. In SNMP Port, enter the UDP port number used by the IP Office SNMP agent to listen for and respond to SNMP traffic. The normal default is 161.
- 5. In Community (Read-only), enter the community to which the device belongs for read access. This community name must match that used by the SNMP manager application when sending requests to the device. The community public is frequently used to establish communication and then changed (at both the SNMP agent and manager ends) for security.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Send the configuration back to the IP Office and select reboot.
- 8. Following the IP Office reboot, the SNMP manager should be able to discover the control unit.
- 9. The control unit's response will include details of the control unit type and the current level of core software.

#### 9.8.4 Enabling SNMP Trap Sending

In Manager, receive the control unit's configuration.

- 1. Double-click System from the Configuration Tree panel and select the SNMP tab.
- 2. Ensure that SNMP Enabled is ticked.
- 3. Using either Trap Destination 1 or Trap Destination 2, enter the following information:
- Enter the IP Address of the PC running the SNMP manager application.
- Enter the Port on which the traps messages should be sent. This is the UDP port on which the IP Office sends SNMP trap messages. The default is 162.
- Set the Community that will be used by the agent and the SNMP manager. The community public is frequently used to establish communication and then changed (at both the SNMP agent and manager ends) for security.
- Select the **Events** which should be sent:

#### • Generic:

Events such as soft reboot (warm start), hard reboot (cold start), links up/down (transition in the status of a PPP or frame relay interface) or SNMP community mismatch.

#### · Entity:

Failures, errors and changes of state in IP Office modules and trunk interfaces. Note: Does not include WAN3, Modem2 and ATM4.

#### • Licence:

Changes of state in the communication with the Feature Key Server.

#### · Phone Change:

Changes to the type of DS or IP phone connected to a port.

- 4. Click on OK.
- 5. Send the configuration back to the IP Office and select reboot.

## 9.8.5 Trap Generation

#### **RFC1215 Generic SNMP Traps**

Trap	Cause
warmStart	Soft reboot.
coldStart	Unexpected reboot such as a power outage.
linkDown	Transition of an interface (PPP or Frame-Relay) from the up operational state into the down operational state.
linkUp	Transition of an interface (PPP or Frame-Relay) from the down operational state into the up operational state.
authenticationFailure	SNMP request with mismatched community for the type of operation.

#### IPO-MIB

Trap	Cause
ipoGenEntityFailureEvent	A physical entity has fails in its operation
ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent	A physical entity becomes operational again after having failed
ipoGenEntityErrorEvent	A transitory error is detected for a physical entity.
ipoGenEntityChangeEvent	A non-error change event is detected for a physical entity.
ipoGenLKSCommsFailureEvent	Loss of communication with a configured License Key Server.
ipoGenLKSCommsOperationalEvent	Communication with the configured License Key Server established or reestablished.
ipoGenLKSCommsErrorEvent	Currently not used.
ipoGenLKSCommsChangeEvent	Currently not used.
ipoGenVMSCommsFailureEvent	Loss of communication to the voicemail system.
ipoGenVMSCommsOperationalEven t	Link to the voicemail system established or reestablished.
ipoGenVMSCommsErrorEvent	Currently not used.
ipoGenVMSCommsChangeEvent	Currently not used.
ipoGenDSCommsFailureEvent	Loss of communication to the delta server.
ipoGenDSCommsOperationalEvent	Communication to the delta server established or reestablished.
ipoGenDSCommsErrorEvent	Currently not used.
ipoGenDSCommsChangeEvent	Currently not used.

The traps above are generated for the physical entities as follows:

#### **Expansion Modules**

Trap	Phone	Digital Station	Analog Trunk	S08	WAN3
ipoGenEntityFailureEvent	7	7	7	7	×
ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent	/	7	7	7	×
ipoGenEntityErrorEvent	<b>/</b>	7	7	7	×
ipoGenEntityChangeEvent	7	7	7	7	×

#### Where:

• ipoGenEntityFailureEvent and ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent traps are issued in relation to connecting cable disconnection and reconnection or power changes.

- ipoGenEntityErrorEvent trap is issued for transitory communication errors across the cabling to an expansion module.
- ipoGenEntityChangeEvent trap is issued for mismatch(es) in expansion modules discovered at controller start up and those present in the system configuration.

#### **Trunk Interfaces**

Trap	Analog	BRI	E1	E1R2	T1 PRI
ipoGenEntityFailureEvent	×	7	7	·	7
ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent	×	<b>'</b>	<b>/</b>	<b>'</b>	<b>'</b>

• Where ipoGenEntityFailureEvent and ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent traps are issued in relation to link status changes.

#### **Integral Modules**

Trap		Voice Compressor
ipoGenEntityFailureEvent	×	<b>'</b>
ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent	×	<b>'</b>

• Where ipoGenEntityFailureEvent and ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent traps are issued for voice compressor modules in relation to data access problems that result in code reload

#### Other Plug-In Modules

• The ipoGenEntityChangeEvent trap is issued for changes to the PCMCIA card slot population on the IP Office Small Office Edition control unit.

#### **IPO-PHONES-MIB:**

Trap	Cause
	Upon change of a DS or IP extension phone type after normal start-up. No traps are issued for PHONE (POT) extensions as the presence or absence of such phones cannot be established hence the ipoPhonesType for such extensions is always potPhone.

#### 9.9 DTE Port Maintenance

#### 9.9.1 DTE Port Overview

The DTE port on the back of IP Office control units is not normally used when configuring an IP Office system. However, in extreme cases, the DTE port can be used to default the system's configuration or to erase it core software if necessary.

#### WARNING

Due to the drastic nature of these actions, they should only be performed if absolutely necessary to return a system back to working order. In both cases, you must make every effort to ensure that you have a backup copy of the system configuration.

The DTE ports on IP Office expansion modules are not used for any maintenance or diagnostics except under instruction from Avaya.

#### 9.9.2 DTE Port Settings

These ports are found on the rear of all IP Office control units and external expansion modules. The DTE ports on external expansion modules are not used.

The RS232 DTE ports on the control units can be used for system maintenance and connection of serial terminal adaptors. On IP400 control units the port can also be used for connection of the IP Office serial port licence key dongle.

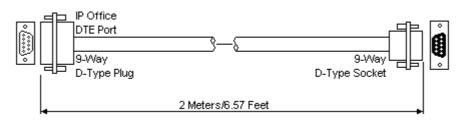
An asynchronous terminal program such as HyperTerminal is also required. Configure this for operation via a PC serial port, as follows:

Bits per second 38,4	00 <b>Parity</b> Nor	ne Flow Control None
Data bits 8	Stop Bits 1	Settings   Emulation

#### **DTE Cables**

These cables are used for system maintenance and diagnostics under Avaya quidance. They can also be used for connection of RS232 serial terminal adaptor equipment to the IP Office control unit.

The cable required depends on the IP Office control unit. This cable is a "Straight through DB9 female to DB9 male serial cable".



IP Office 9-Way RS232 DTE Port	Signal	PC/Terminal Adaptor
3	<b>←</b> Receive data	3
2	→Transmit Data	2
7	←RTS (Request To Send)	7
8	→CTS (Clear To Send)	8
6	→DSR (Data Set Ready)	6
5	■ Ground	5
1	→ DCD (Data Carrier Detect)	1
4	←DTR (Data Terminal Ready)	4
9	➡RI (Ring Indicator)	9

#### 9.9.3 Erasing the Configuration

The following processes erases the configuration held in the IP Office control unit's memory. That include both the current configuration in RAM memory and the backup configuration stored in non-volatile Flash memory. Following this the IP Office will restart with a default configuration.

This process should be performed from a PC with a fixed IP address, directly connected to the IP Office control unit and with the IP Office system disconnected from any network. Following this process, the control unit's IP address will default to 192.168.42.1.

• Do not perform any of these processes unless absolutely necessary. The IP Office's configuration settings can be default through Manager using the **File | Advanced | Erase Configuration** command.

#### 1.0 ខ.ជ 3.០ Procedure: Erasing the Configuration via Debug

This process erases the IP Office's configuration settings but does not alter its security settings. It is easier to use than the boot loader method.

- 1. **WARNING:** Ensure that you have a backup copy of the IP Office's configuration before performing this action.
- 2. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
- 3. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in <u>DTE Port Settings</u>. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
- 4. Enter AT (note upper case). The control unit should respond OK.
- Enter AT-DEBUG. The control unit should response with the time and date and then Hello> to show it is ready to accept commands.
- 6.To erase the current configuration in RAM memory enter eraseconfig. The *Hello>* command prompt reappears when the action is completed.
- 7.To erase the backup configuration stored in non-volatile Flash memory enter **erasenvconfig**. The *Hello* command prompt reappears when the action is completed.
- 8. To reboot the IP Office enter reboot. The IP Office will reboot and restart with a defaulted configuration.
- Close the terminal program session.
- 10. Manager can now be used to alter and then upload an old configuration file or receive and edit the control unit's now defaulted configuration.

#### Procedure: Erasing the Configuration and Security Settings via the Boot Loader

This process defaults the IP Office security settings and its configurations settings.

- 1. **WARNING:** Ensure that you have a backup copy of the IP Office's configuration before performing this action.
- 2. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
- 3. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in <u>DTE Port Settings</u>. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
- 4. Enter AT (note upper case). The control unit should respond OK.
- 5. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
- 6. Power on the control unit while repeatedly pressing the escape key until you get a Loader message. Below is an example. It may be necessary to repeat this several times until you successfully get the loader message.

```
P12 Loader 2.4
CPU Revision 0x0900
```

- 7. Enter AT (note upper case). The control unit should respond OK.
  - To erase the alarm log enter AT-X1.
  - To erase the current configuration in RAM memory enter AT-X3. A typical response is Sector Erases (Config) followed by a series of OK responses.
  - To erase the backup configuration stored in non-volatile Flash memory enter AT-X2. A typical response if Sector 2 Erase (NV Config) followed by OK.
    - IP Office 403 only: If running an IP Office 403 control unit, enter AT-X4.
- 8. Switch power to the control unit off and then back on. Within the terminal program you should see various messages as the control unit performs various start up tasks.
- 9. Close the terminal program session.

10. Manager can now be used to alter and then upload an old configuration file or receive and edit the control unit's now defaulted configuration.

#### **IP Office Default Settings**

The following are the basic default configuration settings for an IP Office system.

System	Name	MAC address of the control unit.				
	System Password	password				
	License Server IP Address	255.255.255.255				
LAN*		LAN1	LAN2/WAN			
	IP address	192.168.42.1.	192.168.43.1			
	IP Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0			
	DHCP Mode	Server	Server			
	No of DHCP IP Addresses	200.	200.			

<sup>\*</sup>See **Default DHCP/Data Settings** detail below.

#### Extensions and Users

A user is automatically created for each physical extension port detected in the system. Users are assigned extension numbers starting from 201. User names take the form Extn201, Extn202, ....

#### Hunt Group

A single hunt group 200 called Main is created and the first 10 users are placed into that hunt group as members.

#### Incoming Call Routes

Two default incoming call routes are created. Voice calls are routed to the hunt group Main. Data calls are routed to the RAS user DialIn.

#### Default Short Codes

IP400 control units are manufactured as either A-Law or U-Law variants. For IP500 control units, A-Law or U-Law variant operation is determined by the IP500 Smart Card installed. Depending on the variant, different sets of short codes are created for the default configuration. Refer to the IP Office Manager application help for full details.

#### Default DHCP/Data Settings

When a defaulted IP Office control unit is switched on, it requests IP address information from a DHCP Server on the network. This operation will occur whether the LAN cable is plugged in or not.

- If a DHCP server responds within approximately 10 seconds, the control unit defaults to being a DHCP client and uses the IP address information supplied by the DHCP server.
- If no DHCP Server responds, the control unit defaults to being the DHCP server for the LAN using the following settings:
  - For its LAN1 it allocates the IP address 192.168.42.1 and IP Mask 255.255.255.0. It supports 200 DHCP clients using the addresses range 192.168.42.2 and 192.168.42.201, the IP Mask 255.255.255.0 and default gateway address 192.168.42.1 (the Control Unit's LAN1 address).
  - For its LAN2 if supported, it allocates the IP address 192.168.43.1 and IP Mask 255.255.255.0.
  - Note that the IP Office does not check that these addresses are valid and or available on the network.
- This mode of operation will persist for subsequent power ups, until a config save occurs due to one of the following
  - The unit performs its automatic midnight backup.
  - A configuration is merged using IP Office Manager.
  - A soft reboot is performed using IP Office Manager.
  - A software upgrade is performed.

#### 9.9.4 Defaulting Security Settings

The following processes can be used to default the security settings of an IP Office system running IP Office 3.2 or higher.

#### 1.⊈ 2.⊈ 3.□

#### Procedure: Defaulting Security Settings

This process defaults the IP Office's security settings but does not alter its configuration settings.

- 1. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
- 2. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in <u>DTE Port Settings</u>. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
- 3. Enter AT (note upper case). The control unit should respond OK.
- 4. Enter AT-SECURITYRESETALL.
- 5. You will be prompted to confirm the control unit's MAC address before continuing. Enter the address.
- 6. The control unit will respond OK when the action has been completed.
- 7. Close the terminal program session.
- 8. Manager can now be used to receive and edit the control unit's now defaulted security settings.

#### 1.⊈ 2.⊈ 3.□

#### Procedure: Defaulting the Configuration and Security Settings via the Boot Loader

This process defaults the IP Office security settings and its configurations settings.

- 2. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
- 3. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in <u>DTE Port Settings</u>. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
- 4. Enter AT (note upper case). The control unit should respond OK.
- 5. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
- 6. Power on the control unit while repeatedly pressing the escape key until you get a Loader message. Below is an example.

P12 Loader 2.4 CPU Revision 0x0900

- 7. Enter AT (note upper case). The control unit should respond OK.
- 8. To erase the current configuration in RAM memory enter AT-X3. A typical response is Sector Erases (Config) followed by a series of OK responses.
- 9. To erase the backup configuration stored in non-volatile Flash memory enter AT-X2. A typical response if Sector 2 Erase (NV Config) followed by OK.
  - · IP Office 403 only: If running an IP Office 403 control unit, enter AT-X4.
- 10. Switch power to the control unit off and then back on. Within the terminal program you should see various messages as the control unit performs various start up tasks.
- 11. Close the terminal program session.
- 12. Manager can now be used to alter and then upload an old configuration file or receive and edit the control unit's now defaulted configuration.

#### 9.9.5 Erasing the Operational Software

This process should be performed from a PC with a fixed IP address, directly connected to the IP Office control unit and with the IP Office system disconnected from any network. During the process, the control unit's IP address may default to a value in the 192.168.42.1 to 192.168.42.10 range. If this occurs it may be necessary to amend the BOOTP entry in Manager to match the address the system is using.

- Do not perform any of the following processes unless absolutely necessary. The IP Office software can normally be upgraded through Manager using the File | Advanced | Upgrade command.
- This process erases the operational software. Before attempting this process you must know the MAC and IP addresses of the system, plus have a backup copy of its configuration and the correct bin file for the control unit type and level of software.
- The presence of any firewall blocking TFTP and or BOOTP will cause this process to fail.

# 1.☑ 8.☑ 9.☐ Procedure: Erasing the Core Software via Debug

- 1. Run Manager. In the BOOTP entries, check that there is an entry that matches the MAC Address, IP Address and .bin file used by the system (the first two details can be found in the Module settings in the system's configuration file).
- 2. If an entry is not present, create a new entry. Then close and restart Manager.
- 3. Under File | Preferences ensure that Manager is set to 255.255.255. Also check that Enable BootP Server is checked.
- 4. Select View | TFTPLog.
- 5. Check that the required .bin file is present in Manager's working directory.
- 6. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
- 7. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in DTE Port Settings. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
- 8. Arrange the program windows so that the Terminal program and Manager TFTP Log are visible at the same time.
- 9. Enter AT (note upper case). The control unit should respond OK.
- 10.Enter AT-DEBUG. The control unit should response with the time and date and then Hello> to show it is ready to accept commands.
- 11. To erase the current configuration in RAM memory enter upgrade.
- 12. The IP Office will erase its current software and then send out a BootP request on the network for new software. Manager will respond and start transferring the software using TFTP.

#### 1.**0** 2.**0**

#### Procedure: Erasing the Core Software via the Boot Loader

- 1. Run Manager. In the BOOTP entries, check that there is an entry that matches the MAC Address, IP Address and .bin file used by the system (the first two details can be found in the Module settings in the system's configuration file).
- 2. If an entry is not present, create a new entry. Then close and restart Manager.
- 3. Under File | Preferences ensure that Manager is set to 255.255.255.255. Also check that Enable BootP Server is checked.
- 4. Select View | TFTPLog.
- 5. Check that the required .bin file is present in Manager's working directory.
- 6. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
- 7. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in <u>DTE Port Settings</u>. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
- 8. Arrange the program windows so that the Terminal program and Manager TFTP Log are visible at the same time.
- 9. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
- 10. Power on the control unit and press the escape key every second until you get a Loader message. Below is an example.

P12 Loader 2.4 CPU Revision 0x0900

- 11.Enter AT (note upper case). The control unit should respond OK.
- 12.Enter AT-X. The control unit should respond Multi-Sector Erase.
- 13. The control unit will now request the .bin file it requires from Manager. This process appears in the TFTPLog.
- 14.If the file transfers does not appear to be taking place, check that the IP address shown in the TFTPLog matches the BOOTP entry. Adjust the BOOTP entry if necessary.
- 15. When completed the system will reboot.

IP Office Installation Page 196
IP Office 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# **Chapter 10. System Components**

## 10. System Components

#### 10.1 Control Units

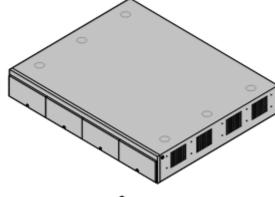
The base of any IP Office system is the system or control unit. It stores the system configuration and controls the system operation.

Each control unit can be customized by adding various <u>internal cards</u> such as trunk cards. Except for the Small Office Edition control unit, external expansion modules can be also be connected to add additional extension and trunk ports.

IP Office 5.0 supports the following IP Office control units.

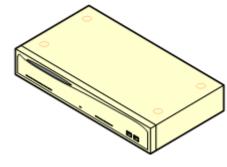
#### • IP500 System Unit

This control unit has four front slots for IP500 base cards. It has an internal power supply unit and uses a mandatory credit-card sized Smart Card Feature Key dongle. It includes a 2 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 3 managed) on the rear.



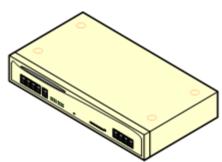
#### • IP412 Control Unit

This unit supports 2 IP400 trunk cards of any type. Up to 12 external expansion modules can be added plus 2 WAN3 10/100 modules. It includes a 2 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 3 managed).



#### • IP406 V2 Control Unit

This unit supports up to 6 external expansion modules plus 2 WAN3 10/100 modules. It supports 2 IP400 trunk cards of all types though only one may be a dual PRI trunk card. The unit has 8 Avaya digital <u>DS</u> phone ports and 2 <u>analog</u> phone ports plus an 8 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 2 unmanaged).



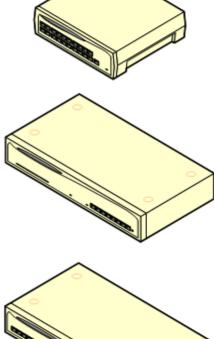
The following IP Office control units are not supported by IP Office 5.0. Where their details are included it is for maintenance of existing systems only.

#### **Small Office Edition Control Unit (SOE)**

This is a single unit IP Office system supported up to IP Office 4.2. It does not support any external expansion modules and only supports a single IP400 trunk interface card. The Small Office was available in a number of models, with differing numbers of integral analog trunk, analog extension and Avaya DS phone ports. The models all have a 4 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 2 unmanaged) and an Ethernet WAN port.

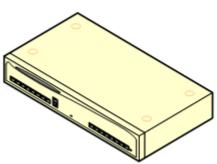
#### **IP406 V1 Control Unit**

Support for software up to IP Office 3.2. The IP406 Office control unit supports up to 180 extensions by using up to 6 Expansion modules. It includes an eight port 10/100Mbps Ethernet LAN hub. The IP406 V1 has been superseded by the IP406 V2 control



#### **IP403 Control Unit**

Support for software up to IP Office 3.2. The front panel of the IP403 control unit includes eight digital extension ports, two analog phone ports and an eight port 10/100Mbps Ethernet LAN hub. The IP403 has been superseded by the IP406 V2 control unit.

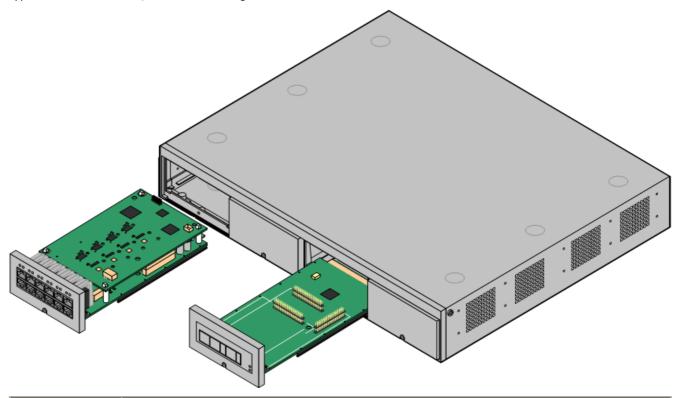


#### **IP401 Control Unit**

Supported for software up to IP Office 2.0. Available in 2 models. The IP401 Compact Office 2 supported 2 digital phones, 2 analog phones, a BRI ISDN port (2 trunks) and a 4 port LAN hub. The IP401 Compact 4 supported double the capacity.

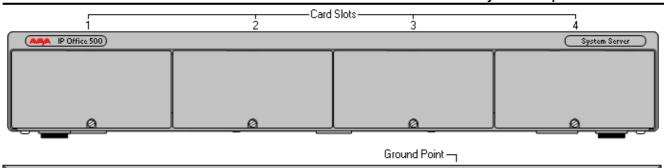
#### 10.1.1 IP500

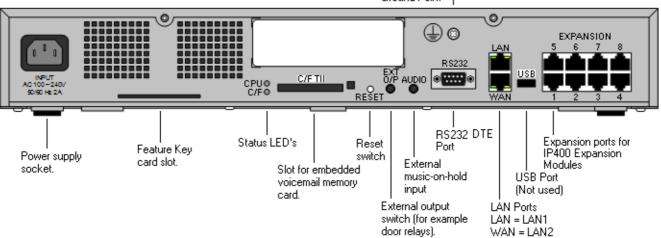
The slots are numbered 1 to 4 from left to right. They can be used in any order. However if the capacity for a particular type of card is exceeded, the card in the rightmost slot will be disabled. The unit must not be used with uncovered slots.



Feature	Capacity	
Maximum Extensions	Up to 384 extensions.	
Conference Parties	64 as standard. Silence suppression is applied to conferences with more than 10 parties. 128 when fitted with an IP500 4-Port Expansion base card.	
Trunks Cards	4. Any combination of IP500 trunk daughter cards and up to 2 IP400 trunk cards.	
VCM Card Slots	4. Up to a maximum of 128 channels using 2 IP500 VCM cards and or 2 IP400 VCM cards.	
Voicemail Channels	Maximum 40 usable for Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV connection sessions subject to available licenses (maximum 30 pre-IP Office 5.0).	
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.	
Software Level	<ul> <li>IP Office core software level 4.0 minimum.</li> <li>Bin file = ip500.bin.</li> </ul>	
Power Supply	Internal power supply unit.	
Mounting	Free-standing, rack mounted (requires IP500 Rack Mounting Kit) or wall mounted (requires IP500 Wall Mounting Kit).	
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 365mm/14.4". Height: 73mm/2.9"/2U. Clearance: 90mm minimum all sides, 220m at front. 500mm all side when wall mounted.	
Memory	Maximum configuration file size: 1024KB.	

IP Office Installation Page 200
IP Office 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)



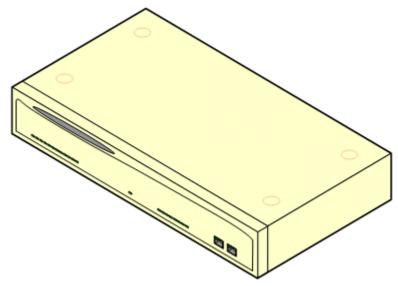


Ports	Description
<u>AUDIO</u>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for external music on hold source input.
INPUT	DC power input port.
<u>RS232</u>	9-Way D-Type socket. Used for system maintenance.
EXPANSION	RJ45 socket. Used for direct connection to external expansion modules using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the expansion module.
EXT O/P	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for switching external relay systems such as door entry controls. The port contains two independent switches controlled by the IP Office.
LAN WAN	RJ45 sockets. These ports form a managed layer 3 Ethernet switch. The ports are full-duplex 10/100Mbps auto-sensing, MDI crossover ports.
Ή	Used for connection of a <u>function or protective ground</u> . Use of a ground for all systems is recommended and for some locales may be a regulatory requirement.

Name	Description	Country	SAP Code
IPO 500 Base Unit	IP Office 500 Base Unit		700417207
Smart Card Feature Key	Smart Card Feature	Key (MU-Law)	700417470
	Smart Card feature Key (A-Law)		700417488
IEC60320 C13 Earthed Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
0.0	China	China	700261977
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit	IP500 Rack Mounting Kit		700429202
IP500 Wall Mounting Kit	2500 Wall Mounting Kit IP500 Wall Mountin		700430150
IP500 Blanking Plate Kit	IP500 Blanking Plate Kit		700429194

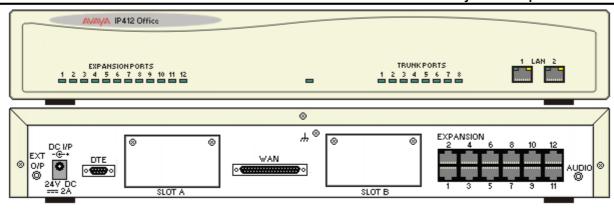
#### 10.1.2 IP412

The IP412 control unit supports up to 12 Expansion modules. Its LAN ports act as a managed layer 3 Ethernet switch with optional internal firewall for traffic between the two ports.



Feature	Capacity		
Maximum Extensions	360 of various types in combination. Analog only: 360. DS only: 360. IP only: 360.		
Conference Parties	128 (2 banks of 64. Conferences cannot combine resources from both banks. When a conference is started, the bank with the most free resource is used).		
Trunks Cards	2 Trunk card slots. All types supported.		
VCM Card Slots	2 up to maximum voice compression channels capacity of 60 channels.		
Voicemail Channels	30 usable for Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV connection sessions (subject to available licenses).		
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.		
Software Level	<ul> <li>IP Office core software level 1.3 minimum.</li> <li>Bin file = ip412.bin.</li> </ul>		
Power Supply	The unit is supplied with an earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C13">IEC60320 C13</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit.  • Older units were supplied with a 2-Pin, 40W external power supply unit which used a locale specific locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C7">IEC60320 C7</a> power cord not supplied with the unit.		
Mounting	The unit is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The unit can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.		
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.		
Weight	Unboxed: 3.0Kg/6.7lbs. Boxed: 4.3Kg/9.6lbs.		
Memory	Maximum configuration file size: 1024KB.		

IP Office Installation IP Office



Ports	Description	
<u>AUDIO</u>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for external music on hold source input.	
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the control unit.	
<u>DTE</u>	9-Way D-Type socket. Used for system maintenance. Suitable for direct connection of IP Office Serial Port Feature Key dongle.	
EXPANSION	RJ45 socket. Used for direct connection to external expansion modules using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the expansion module.	
EXT O/P	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for switching external relay systems such as door entry controls. The port contains two independent switches controlled by the IP Office.	
LAN	RJ45 socket. These ports form a managed layer 3 Ethernet switch. The ports are half-duplex 10/100Mbps auto-sensing, MDI crossover ports.	
SLOT A	Used for trunk cards of all types except WAN port trunk card. Normally Slot B should be used first.  Trunks cards are supplied with replacement external blanking plates suitable for the trunk card por connections.	
SLOT B		
<u>WAN</u>	37-Way D-Type socket. Used for the connection of V.24, V.35 or X.21 WAN service.	
Ψ.	Used for connection of a <u>function or protective ground</u> . Use of a ground for all systems is recommended and for some locales may be a regulatory requirement. On older modules where this screw is not present, the left-hand fixing screw of Slot B can be used.	

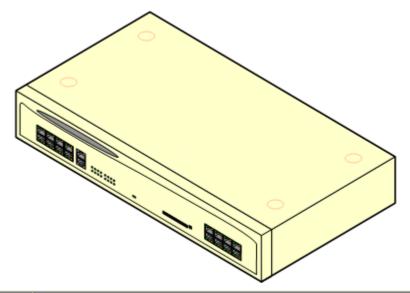
All control units are available in either North America or Rest of World variants. The choice controls various default settings of the unit. For E911 support a North American variant control unit must be used. The companding can be changed once a unit is installed. Control units are supplied with an external power supply unit but not a locale specific power cord.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP412 Office	A-Law	Rest of World	700234479
	U-Law	North America	700350408
IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
0	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

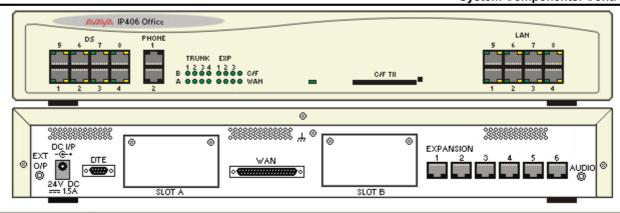
#### 10.1.3 IP406 V2

The IP406 V2 includes 8 digital station (DS) and 2 analog phone (PHONE) ports. It includes an eight port Ethernet LAN switch (unmanaged Layer 2) and Compact Flash card slot for an optional embedded voicemail memory card. It supports up to 6 external expansion modules plus IP extensions controlled through its LAN interface.

The IP406 V2 also includes automatic gain control (AGC) on its conference chip and performs IPSec tunneling through hardware rather than software.



Feature	Capacity		
Maximum Extensions	190 of various types in combination. Analog only: 182. DS only: 188. IP only: 190.		
Conference Parties	64. Conference chip includes automatic gain control (AGC).		
Trunks Cards	2 Trunk card slots. All types supported. Dual PRI trunk cards in Slot A only.		
VCM Card Slots	1 up to maximum voice compression channels capacity of 30 channels.		
Voicemail Channels	Maximum 20 usable for Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV connection sessions (subject to available licenses).		
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.		
Software Level	<ul> <li>IP Office core software level 2.1(27) minimum.</li> <li>Bin file = ip406u.bin.</li> </ul>		
Power Supply	The unit is supplied with an earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320">IEC60320</a> C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit.		
Mounting	The unit is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The unit can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.		
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.		
Weight	Unboxed: 3.0Kg/6.7lbs. Boxed: 4.3Kg/9.6lbs.		
Memory	Maximum configuration file size: 256KB.		



Ports	Description	
<u>AUDIO</u>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for external music on hold source input.	
C/F TII	Type 2 Compact Flash socket. Used for optional embedded voicemail card.	
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya un-earthed 45W external power supply unit supplied with the control unit.	
<u>DS</u>	RJ45 socket. Digital Station port. Used for connection of IP Office <u>supported DS phones</u> . Not suitable for out-of-building connections.	
DTE	9-Way D-Type socket. Used for system maintenance. Suitable for direct connection of IP Office Serial Port Feature Key dongle.	
EXPANSION	RJ45 socket. Used for direct connection to external expansion modules using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the expansion module.	
EXT O/P	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for switching external relay systems such as door entry controls. The port contains two independent switches controlled by the IP Office.	
LAN	These ports form an unmanaged layer 2 Ethernet switch. The ports are full-duplex 10/100Mbps auto-sensing, auto-MDI/MDIX.	
<u>PHONE</u>	Used for connection of analog phones. Not suitable for out-of-building connections. Four-wire analog phones should be connected via a master socket containing ringing capacitors.	
SLOT A	Used for trunk cards of all types except WAN port trunk card. Normally Slot B should be used first. Dual PRI trunk cards supported in Slot A only. Trunks cards are supplied with replacement external blanking plates suitable for the trunk card port connections.	
SLOT B		
<u>WAN</u>	37-Way D-Type socket. Used for the connection of V.24, V.35 or X.21 WAN service.	
ጕ	Used for connection of a <u>function or protective ground</u> . Use of a ground for all systems is recommended and for some locales may be a regulatory requirement.	

All control units are available in either North America or Rest of World variants. The choice controls various default settings of the unit. For E911 support a North American variant control unit must be used. The companding can be changed once a unit is installed.

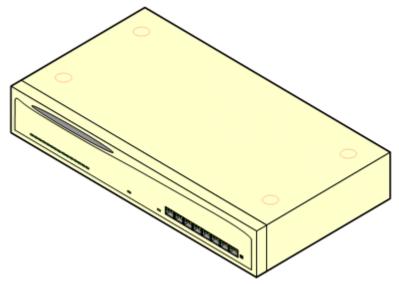
Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP406 V2 Office DS.	A-Law	Rest of World	700343536
	U-Law	North America	700359946
IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
8 9	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Control units are supplied with an external power supply unit but not a locale specific power cord.

#### 10.1.4 IP406 V1

This section is included for maintainer information only. This unit is not supported on IP Office 4.0 and higher.

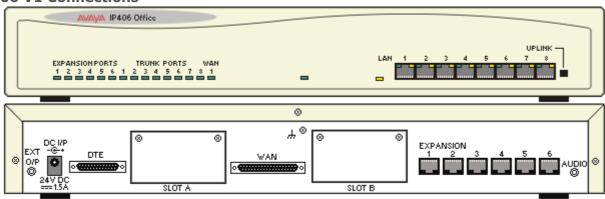
IP406 Office control unit supports up to 180 extensions by using up to 6 Expansion modules. It includes an eight port 10/100Mbps Ethernet LAN hub. The IP406 V1 has been superseded by the IP406 V2 control unit.



Feature	Capacity		
Maximum Extensions	180 of various types in combination. Analog only: 180. DS only: 180. IP only: 180.		
Conference Parties	54.		
Trunks Cards	2 Trunk card slots. All types supported except Dual PRI trunk cards.		
VCM Card Slots	1 up to maximum voice compression channels capacity of 20 channels.		
Data Channels	24 of which 20 usable for Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV connection sessions (subject to available Voicemail Pro Port and TAPI WAV licenses).		
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.		
Software Level	IP Office core software level 2.1(27) minimum to 3.2 maximum.		
	• Bin file = ip406.bin.		
Power Supply	The unit is supplied with a 2-Pin, 40W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit.		
Mounting	The unit is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The unit can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional Rack Mounting Kit.		
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8".		
Weight	Unboxed: 3.0Kg/6.6lbs. Boxed: 4.3Kg/9.6lbs.		
Maximum Configuration Size	192KB.		

IP Office Installation IP Office

#### **IP406 V1 Connections**



Ports	Description	
AUDIO	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for external music on hold source input.	
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the control unit.	
DTE	9-Way D-Type socket. Used for system maintenance. Suitable for direct connection of IP Office Serial Port Feature Key dongle.	
EXPANSI ON	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to external expansion modules using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the expansion module.	
EXT O/P	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for switching external relay systems such as door entry controls. The port contains two independent switches controlled by the IP Office.	
LAN	These ports form an Ethernet hub. The ports are half-duplex 10/100Mbps auto-sensing. Port 8 can be switched from MDIX standard LAN to MDI crossover operation using the UPLINK button on the control unit ( = MDIX, Out = MDI).	
SLOT A	Used for trunk cards of all types except Dual PRI trunk cards. Normally Slot B should be used first. Trunks cards are supplied with replacement external blanking plates suitable for the trunk card port connections.	
SLOT B		
WAN	37-Way D-Type socket. Used for the connection of V.24, V.35 or X.21 WAN service.	
Ή	Used for connection of a function or protective ground. Use of a ground for all systems is recommended and for some locales may be a regulatory requirement. On older modules where this screw is not present, the left-hand fixing screw of Slot B can be used.	

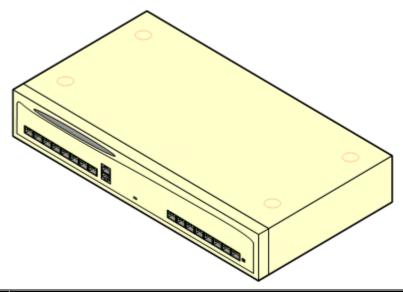
All control units are available in either North America or Rest of World variants. The choice controls various default settings of the unit. For E911 support a North American variant control unit must be used. The companding can be changed once a unit is installed.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP406 V1 Office	A-Law	Rest of World	700234461
1P406 VI Office	U-Law	North America	700210776
IEC60320 C7 Power Cord	CEE7/16	Europe	700213382
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700213374
	NEMA1-15	America	700213390
	Korea	Korea	700254519
62	China	China	700314172
Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

#### 10.1.5 IP403

This section is included for maintainer information only. This unit is not supported on IP Office 4.0 and higher.

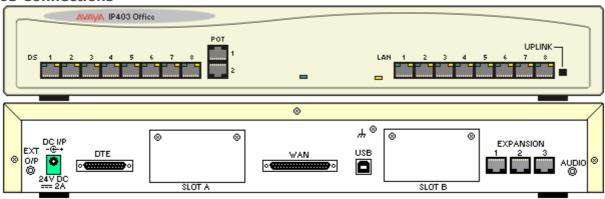
The front panel of the IP403 control unit includes eight digital extension (DS) ports, two analog phone (POT) ports and an eight port 10/100Mbps Ethernet LAN hub. The IP403 has been superseded by the IP406 V2 control unit. IP403 control units with integral DT rather than DS ports are also supported up to 3.2, however use of devices on those ports is not supported.



Feature	Capacity	
Maximum Extensions	100 of various types in combination. Analog only: 92. DS only: 98. IP only: 100.	
Conference Parties	64.	
Trunks Cards	2 Trunk card slots. All types supported except Dual PRI trunk cards.	
VCM Card Slots	1 up to maximum voice compression channels capacity of 20 channels.	
Data Channels	20 of which 10 usable for Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV connection sessions (subject to available Voicemail Pro Port and TAPI WAV licenses).	
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.	
Software Level	<ul> <li>IP Office core software level 1.0 to 3.2 maximum.</li> <li>DT Port Support: IP Office 3.0 and higher software does not support the use of DT ports. IP403 DT modules are supported on IP Office 3.0 but use of the integral DT ports is not supported.</li> <li>Bin file = ip403.bin.</li> </ul>	
Power Supply	The unit is supplied with a 2-Pin, 40W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit.	
Mounting	The unit is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The unit can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional Rack Mounting Kit.	
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8".	
Weight	Unboxed: 2.5Kg/5.8lbs. Boxed: 3.85Kg/8.6lbs.	
Maximum Configuration Size	192KB.	

IP Office Installation
IP Office

#### **IP403 Connections**



Description
3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for external music on hold source input.
DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the control unit.
RJ45 Socket. Digital Station port. Used for connection of IP Office supported DS phones. Not suitable for out-of-building connections.
9-Way D-Type socket. Used for system maintenance. Suitable for direct connection of IP Office Serial Port Feature Key dongle.
RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to external expansion modules using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the expansion module.
3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for switching external relay systems such as door entry controls. The port contains two independent switches controlled by the IP Office.
These ports form an Ethernet hub. The ports are half-duplex $10/100$ Mbps auto-sensing. Port 8 can be switched from MDIX standard LAN to MDI crossover operation using the UPLINK button on the control unit (In = MDIX, Out = MDI).
Used for connection of analog phones. Not suitable for out-of-building connections.
Used for trunk cards of all types except Dual PRI trunk cards. Normally Slot B should be used first. Trunks
cards are supplied with replacement external blanking plates suitable for the trunk card port connections.
Not used.
37-Way D-Type socket. Used for the connection of V.24, V.35 or X.21 WAN service.
Used for connection of a function or protective ground. Use of a ground for all systems is recommended and for some locales may be a regulatory requirement. On older modules where this screw is not present, the left-hand fixing screw of Slot B can be used.

All control units are available in either North America or Rest of World variants. The choice controls various default settings of the unit. For E911 support a North American variant control unit must be used. The companding can be changed once a unit is installed.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP403 Office DS	A-Law	Rest of World	700234453
II 103 GINEC B3	U-Law	North America	700350390
IEC60320 C7 Power Cord	CEE7/16	Europe	700213382
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700213374
	NEMA1-15	America	700213390
	Korea	Korea	700254519
	China	China	700314172
Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

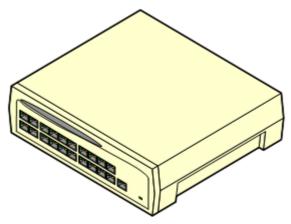
Control units are supplied with an external power supply unit but not a locale specific power cord.

IP Office Installation
IP Office
Page 210
15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

## 10.1.6 Small Office Edition (SOE)

This section is included for maintainer information only. This unit is not supported on IP Office 5.0 and higher.

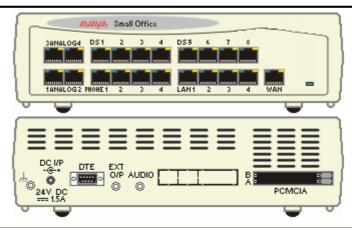
The IP Office Small Office Edition control unit shares many of the features of the other IP Office control units, however it does not support any expansion modules. Small Office Edition control units include various numbers of integral DS, PHONE (POT) and Analog ports.



Small Office Edition Model	Analog Trunks	Analog Extensions	Digital Stations	Voice Compression Channels
2T+4A (3 VoIP)	2	4	0	3
4T+8A (3 VoIP)	4	8	0	3
4T+4A+8DS (3 VoIP)	4	4	8	3
4T+4A+8DS (16 VoIP)	4	4	8	16

These models are still supported but are no longer available from Avaya. Previous models that included integral DT ports are not supported on IP Office 3.0 or higher.

Feature	Capacity	
Maximum Extensions	28 of various types in combination. Analog only: 4. DS only: 8. IP only: 16.	
Conference Parties	21 with a maximum of 8 parties in any particular conference.	
Trunks Cards	1 Trunk card slot for ATM4, Quad BRI, Single T1 PRI or single WAN port trunk cards. Sections of the rear panel are removable to provide cable connection to the installed trunk card. For the WAN port card a complete replacement back panel is provided.	
VCM Card Slots	None. Either 3 or 16 voice compression channels are pre-built into the module.	
Voicemail Channels	Maximum 10 usable for Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV connection sessions (subject to licenses).	
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.	
Software Level	<ul><li>IP Office core software level 2.0 minimum.</li><li>Bin file = ip401ng.bin.</li></ul>	
Power Supply  The unit is supplied with a 3-Pin 45W external power supply unit. The PS integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A local <a href="IEC60320 C13 power cord">IEC60320 C13 power cord</a> for the external PSU is required but is not sup unit.		
Mounting	The unit is designed as a free-standing module that can also be wall mounted via fixing brackets in the base.	
Dimensions	Width: 255mm/10.0". Depth: 241mm/9.5". Height: 76mm/3.0".	
Weight	Unboxed: 1.2Kg/2.64lbs. Boxed: 2.17Kg/4.77lbs.	
Memory	Maximum configuration file size: 192KB.	



Ports	Description
<u>AUDIO</u>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for external music on hold source input.
<u>ANALOG</u>	Used for connection of external analog trunks. Loop-start only.
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the control unit.
<u>DS</u>	Digital Station port. Used for connection of IP Office <u>supported DS phones</u> . Not suitable for out-of-building extensions.
<u>DTE</u>	9-Way D-Type socket. Used for system maintenance. Suitable for direct connection of IP Office Serial Port Feature Key dongle.
EXT O/P	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for switching external relay systems such as door entry controls. The port contains two independent switches controlled by the IP Office.
LAN	RJ45 socket. These ports form an unmanaged layer 2 Ethernet switch. The ports are full-duplex 10/100Mbps auto-sensing, auto-MDI/MDIX ports.
PCMCIA	Dual PCMCIA card slot. Used for optional <u>Embedded Voicemail card</u> and wireless access point card. Cards are not hot-swappable and order of slot usage is not significant.
PHONE	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of analog phones. Intended for two-wire analog phones. For connection to 4-wire analog phones connection should be via a master socket with ringing capacitors. During power failure, PHONE port 1 is directly connected to ANALOG trunk port 2. Not suitable for out-of-building connections.
	On some older Small Office Edition control units, these ports are labeled as POT rather than PHONE.
<u>WAN</u>	RJ45 socket. 10/100Mbps Ethernet LAN port. Acts as LAN2 within the configuration.
ጕ	3.5mm Jack socket. Function ground point. Used for connection of a <u>function or protective ground</u> . Use of a ground for all systems is recommended and for some locales may be a regulatory requirement.

All control units are available in either North America or Rest of World variants. The choice controls various default settings of the unit. For E911 support a North American variant control unit must be used. The companding can be changed once a unit is installed.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
Small Office Edition 4T+4A+8DS	A-Law	Rest of World	700280209
(3 VoIP)	U-Law	North America	700350424
Small Office Edition 4T+4A+8DS	A-Law	Rest of World	700280217
(16 VoIP)	U-Law	North America	700350432
IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
640	China	China	700261977
Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Control units are supplied with an external power supply unit but not a locale specific power cord.

#### 10.1.7 IP401 Control Unit

This type of IP Office control unit is supported up to IP Office 2.0 software.

#### • IP401 Compact Office 2 supports:

- Two digital and two analog telephones
- A BRI ISDN port (2 trunks)
- An four port auto-negotiating 10/100 BaseT LAN hub

#### • IP401 Compact Office 4 supports:

- · Four digital and four analog telephones
- Two BRI ISDN ports (4 trunks)
- An eight port auto-negotiating 10/100 BaseT LAN hub.

The auto-negotiating 10/100 BaseT LAN hub provides access to networks and/or up to eight IP telephones. The DT ports support Avaya 20 series telephones. DT ports are set to A-Law PCM encoding at default but can be programmed to -Law PCM encoding.

An IP401 Compact Office 2 can be expanded to an IP401 Compact Office 4.

In addition the IP401 Compact Office can be fitted with any of the following optional Integral Modules:

#### WAN Port

This port supports a single synchronous data connection, which can be X.21, V.35 or V.24.

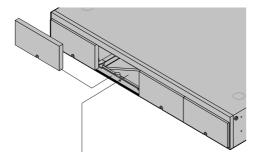
#### • Voice Compression Module (VCM)

Supports VoIP applications (over two channels) using Avaya 4600 IP telephone connected via LAN ports.

#### VME card

Provides memory capacity for embedded voice mail feature.

#### 10.2 IP500 Base Cards



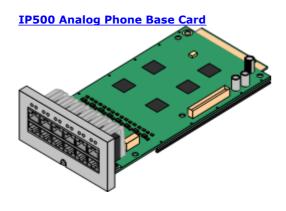
The IP500 control unit has 4 slots for the insertion of base cards. Each base cards includes an integral front panel with ports for cable connections.

The slots are numbered 1 to 4 from left to right. Normally they can be used in any order, however if the capacity for a particular type of card is exceeded, the card in the highest slot will be disabled.



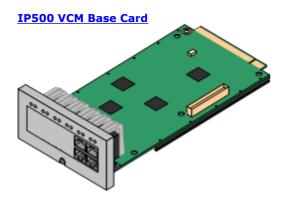
This card has 12 RJ45 ports. The first 8 ports are  $\underline{\text{DS}}$  ports for the connection of Avaya digital phones other than IP phones. The card can be fitted with an IP500 daughter card which then uses the additional 4 RJ45 ports for connections.

- This card accepts one IP500 daughter card of any type.
- Maximum: 3 per IP500 control unit.
- 4400 Series phones (4406D, 4412D and 4424D) are not supported on this card. They are supported on an external expansion module.



This card has 12 RJ45 ports. The card is available in two variants, providing 2 or 8 analog extension ports for the connection of analog phones. The card can be fitted with an IP500 daughter card which then uses the additional 4 RJ45 ports for connections.

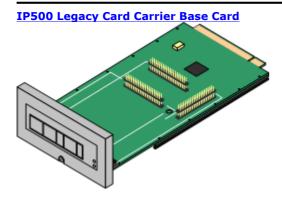
- This card accepts one IP500 daughter card of any type.
- Maximum: 4 per IP500 control unit.
- When fitted with an IP500 Analog Trunk daughter card, the Phone 8 base card supports 1 power failure extension to trunk (loop-start only) connection.
- The analog extension ports do not include a ringing capacitor. Where this is a requirement, connection should be via a Master socket containing ringing capacitors.



This card provides voice compression channels for use with VoIP calls. The module is available in variants supporting up to 32 or 64 channels. Each card provides 4 initial channels with additional channels being enabled by licenses in the IP Office configuration. The card can be fitted with an IP500 daughter card which then uses the 4 RJ45 ports for connections.

The maximum number of voice compression channels supported, using IP500 VCM cards and or IP400 VCM cards on IP500 carrier cards is 128.

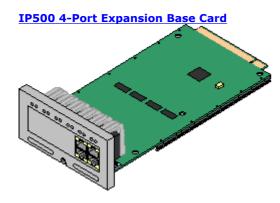
- This accepts one IP500 daughter card of any type.
- Maximum: 2 per IP500 control unit.



This card allows a various IP400 trunk and VCM cards to be used with the IP500 control unit. The front of the card includes a number of panels that can be snapped off to match the ports when a trunk card being fitted.

- This card does not accept an IP500 daughter card.
- Maximum: 2 per IP500 control unit.
- **IP400 Cards Supported:** The following cards are supported. Any card not listed is not supported.

✓ PRI T1	
✓ Dual PRI T1	ANLG 4 Uni (US only)
✓ PRI 30 E1 (1.4)	√ VCM 4
✓ Dual PRI E1	√ VCM 8
✓ PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45	√ VCM 16
√ Dual PRI E1R2 RJ45	√ VCM 24
	√ VCM 30



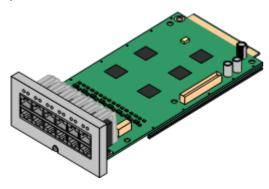
This card adds an additional 4 expansion ports for external expansion modules. The card is supplied with four 2m yellow interconnect cables.

- This card does not accept an IP500 daughter card.
- Maximum: 1 per IP500 control unit (Right-hand slot 4 only).
- **Supported Expansion Modules:** The following external expansion modules are supported:
  - IP500 Analogue Trunk Module
  - IP500 BRI So Module
  - IP500 Digital Station Module
- IP500 Phone Module
- IP400 Digital Station Module V2 (DS16/DS30 V2)
- IP400 Phone Module V2 (Phone8 V2/Phone16 V2/Phone30 V2)

#### 10.2.1 Analog Phone

This card is used to add analog phone extension ports to the IP500 control unit. It is available in two variants, providing either 2 or 8 analog extension ports.

The cards have 8 RJ45 extension ports (1 to 8) for use with analog phone devices. A further 4 RJ45 ports (9 to 12) are provided for trunk connections when an IP500 trunk daughter card is fitted to this card.



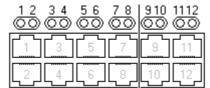
#### Supports

Provides either 8 or 2 analog phone ports depending on card variant:

- Supports ICLID modes DTMFA, DTMFC, DTMFD, FSK and UK20.
- REN 2 (1 for external bell device).
- Off-Hook current: 25mA
- Ring Voltage: 40V.
- The Analog Phone 8 provides a power fail port when fitted with an IP500 Analog Trunk daughter card. During power failure extension port 8 is connected to the analog trunk port 12.
- Intended for connection to two-wire analog phones, the ports do not include a ringing capacitor. For connection to 4wire analog phones, connection should be via a master socket with ringing capacitors.
- Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 4.
- IP500 Daughter Card Support: ✓ 1.

#### **Analog Extension Ports (1-8)**

- LED1 only is used.
- LED1 is used for card status:
- Red On Error
- Red Flashing Initializing.
- Red Flash every 5 seconds Okay.



#### Daughter Card Ports (9-12)

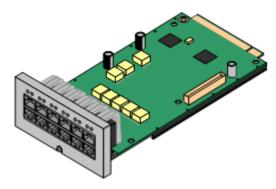
LED use depends daughter card type:

- IP500 Analog Trunk Card.
- IP500 BRI Trunk Card.
- IP500 PRI Trunk Card.
- LED 9 is also used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 Extn Card Phone 2	IP Office 500 Extension Card Phone 2	700431778
IPO 500 Extn Card Phone 8	IP Office 500 Extension Card Phone 8	700417231

# 10.2.2 Digital Station

This card is used to add digital station (DS) extension ports to the IP500 control unit. It provides 8 RJ45 DS extension ports for use with Avaya digital phones not including IP phones. A further 4 RJ45 ports are provided for trunk connections when an IP500 trunk card is fitted to this card.

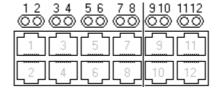


Supports
 Provides 8 <u>DS</u> ports for <u>digital stations</u> supported (except 4406D, 4412D and 4424D).

- Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 3.
- IP500 Daughter Card Support: ✓ 1.

# Digital Station Ports (1-8)

- Green On Phone detected.
- LED1 is used for card status:
- Red On Error
- Red Flashing Initializing.
- Red Flash every 5 seconds Okay.



# Daughter Card Ports (9-12)

LED use depends daughter card type:

- IP500 Analog Trunk Card.
- IP500 BRI Trunk Card.
- IP500 PRI Trunk Card.
- LED 9 is also used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 Extn Card Dgtl Sta 8	IP Office 500 Extension Card Digital Station 8	700417330

# 10.2.3 Legacy Card Carrier

The IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card can be used to fit IP Office IP400 cards into the IP500 control unit. This can include IP400 trunk and IP400 VCM cards. Up to 2 Legacy Card Carrier cards are supported in an IP500 control unit.



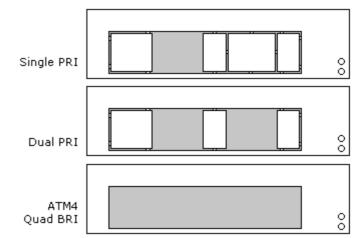
The following IP400 cards are supported. Cards not listed are not supported.

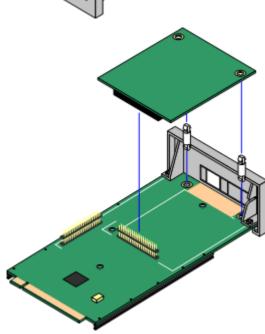
- ✓ PRI T1

  ✓ BRI-8 (UNI)
- ✓ Dual PRI T1
   ✓ ANLG 4 Uni (US only)
- ✓ PRI 30 E1 (1.4)
   ✓ VCM 4
- J Dual PRI E1 J VCM 8
- ✓ PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45
   ✓ VCM 16
- ✓ Dual PRI E1R2 RJ45 ✓ VCM 24 ✓ VCM 30
- Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 2.
- IP500 Daughter Card Support: X.



Panels on the front of the carrier card can be snapped off to match the port connects when fitting an IP500 trunk card.





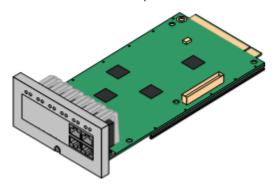
# 10.2.4 VCM

This type of card is used to add <u>voice compression channels</u> to the IP500 control unit. Those channels are used for VoIP calls including IP extensions and or IP trunks.

The IP500 VCM card is available in two variants; 32 channels and 64 channels. Each card provides 4 unlicensed VCM channels. Additional channels are enabled through the addition of IP500 VCM licenses.

The IP500 control unit supports up to 128 voice compression channels, using IP500 VCM cards and or  $\underline{\text{IP400 VCM cards}}$  on an  $\underline{\text{IP500 carrier card}}$ .

Both cards have 4 RJ45 ports for that are used for connections when an IP500 daughter card is fitted.



#### Supports

Codecs G.711, G729a and G.723 with 64ms echo cancellation. The maximum number of simultaneous channels useable on an IP500 VCM base card is affected by the codec being used. The following table assumes that all calls using the VCM use the same codec.

Codec	IP500 VCM32 IP500 VCM6	
G.711	32	64
G.729a	30	60
G.723	22	44

- Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 2.
- IP500 Daughter Card Support: 

  √ 1.
- LEDs 1 to 8 are unlabelled. They are used to indicate voice compression channel usage. Each LED lit represents 12.5% of the available voice compression channel capacity in use (total card capacity rather than licensed capacity).
- LED1 is used for general card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.



# Daughter Card Ports (9-12)

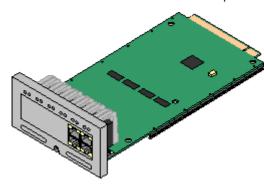
LED use depends daughter card type:

- IP500 Analog Trunk Card.
- IP500 BRI Trunk Card.
- IP500 PRI Trunk Card.
- LED 9 is also used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 MC VCM 32	IP Office 500 Media Card Voice Coding Module 32	700417389
IPO 500 MC VCM 64	IP Office 500 Media Card Voice Coding Module 64	700417397
IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 4 CH	IP500 Addition VCM Channels License: 4 Channels	202961
IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 8 CH	IP500 Addition VCM Channels License: 8 Channels	202962
IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 16 CH	IP500 Addition VCM Channels License: 16 Channels	202963
IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 28 CH	IP500 Addition VCM Channels License: 28 Channels	202964
IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 60 CH	IP500 Addition VCM Channels License: 60 Channels	202965

# 10.2.5 4-Port Expansion Card

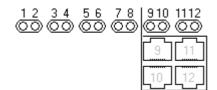
This card is used to add 4 additional expansion ports to the IP500 control unit. This card is only supported in slot 4.



#### Supports

Provides 4 additional <u>expansion ports</u> for connection of external expansion modules.

- Supported Expansion Modules: The following external expansion modules are supported:
  - IP500 Analogue Trunk Module
  - IP500 BRI So Module
  - IP500 Digital Station Module
- IP500 Phone Module
- IP400 Digital Station Module V2 (DS16/DS30 V2)
- IP400 Phone Module V2 (Phone8 V2/Phone16 V2/Phone30 V2)
- Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 1 Right hand slot 4 only.
- IP500 Daughter Card Support: X.
- Each external expansion module (except the WAN3 10/100) is supplied with a blue 1 meter (3'3") expansion interconnect cable. This cable must be used when connecting to expansion ports on the rear of a control unit.
- When connecting to expansion ports on an IP500 4-Port Expansion card, a yellow 2 meter (6'6") expansion interconnect cable can be used in place of the standard blue cable. 4 Yellow cables are supplied with the IP500 4-Port Expansion card.
- The WAN3 10/100 module differs in that it connects via a LAN port on its front to one of the control unit's LAN ports. This type of external expansion module is not supported by IP500 control units.
- Pre-IP Office 5.0 IP500 systems require an IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional license to support external expansion modules. This license is not required for IP Office 5.0+.



#### **Expansion Modules (1-12)**

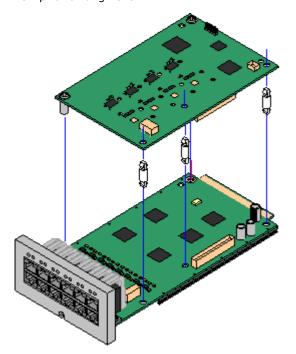
LED's 1 to 8 are used for the expansion ports on the rear of the control unit. LED's 9 to 12 are used for the card's own expansion ports.

- Off No module connected or supported.
- Red Flashing Initializing.
- Green On Module detected.
- Red On Error
- Red Flash every 5 seconds Base card okay.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO IP500 EXP CARD 4 PORT	Includes 4 yellow 2 metre interconnect cables.	700472889
IPO EXP CABLE RJ45/RJ45 2M YELLOW	Only for use with the 4-Port Expansion card.	700472871

# 10.3 IP500 Trunk Cards

Updated for IP500 PRI-U trunk daughter card. Need to add accurate picture of card and also update fitting picture for the new pillar arrangment.



IP500 daughter trunk cards can be fitted to IP500 base cards to provide support for trunk. The daughter card uses the physical ports provided on the front panel of the base card for cable connection.

The addition of an IP500 daughter card is supported on any IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card.

For those base card that support daughter cards, there are no restrictions on the combination of card types. However in systems with both analog phone base cards and analog trunk daughter cards, combining the two type is recommended as it then provides analog power failure support for one trunk/extension.

Each daughter card is supplied with the stand off pillars required for installation and a label to identify the cards presence on the physical unit once installed.

#### Note: Change to Installation

With the introduction of the IP500 PRI-U trunk daughter card, the 5 plastic stand off pillars supplied with these card were changed. All trunk daughter cards are now supplied with two pre-fitted metal pillars and 3 plastic pillars. Two screws and washers for final attachment of the metal pillars to the base card are also included. This change does not affect existing cards supplied with 5 plastic pillars.

This card can be added to an IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card. It allows that base card to then also support 4 analog loop-start trunks.

- When fitted to an IP500 Analog Phone 8 base card, the combination supports 1 power failure extension to trunk (loop-start only) connection.
- Maximum: 4 per IP500 control unit.

This card can be added to an IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card. It allows that card to then also support up 4 BRI trunk connections, each trunk providing 2B+D digital channels. The card is available in 2 port (4 channels) and 4

• Maximum: 4 per IP500 control unit.

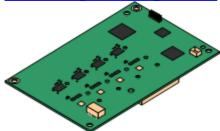
port (8 channels) variants.

 S-Bus Connection: On IP Office 4.2+ systems, the card can be switched from To trunk mode to So mode. This mode requires additional terminating resistors and an ISDN crossover cable connection, see <u>BRI Port (So)</u>.

This card can be added to an IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card. The card is a universal card that can be configured in software for E1 PRI, T1 robbed bit, T1 PRI or E1R2. The card is available in single and dual port variants.

- Maximum: 4 per IP500 control unit.
- The IP500 PRI-U card supports E1, T1 and E1-R2 PRI modes. The IP Office system supports 8 unlicensed B-channels on each IP500 PRI-U port fitted. Additional B-channels, up to the capacity of ports installed and PRI mode selected require IP500 Universal PRI (Additional Channels) licenses added to the configuration. These additional channels consume the licenses based on which additional channels are configured as in-service from port 9 of slot 1 upwards. D-channels are not affected by licensing.





**IP500 BRI Trunk Daughter Card** 



**IP500 PRI-U Trunk Daughter Card** 



# 10.3.1 Analog Trunk Card

This card can be added to an IP500 base card to provide that card with support for 4 loop-start analog trunks.

This card can be fitted to any IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Carrier card and IP500 4-Port Expansion card.



- Ports/Channels
  - 4 Loop-start analog trunk ports. Connections via the host IP500 base card.
  - DTMF, ICLID, Busy tone detection.
  - Over-voltage and lightning protection (may still require additional protection equipment see <u>Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building</u> Connections.
  - · DTMF and LD dialing.
  - Adjustable echo cancellation (default 16ms). Selectable to Off, 8, 16, 32, 64 and 128 milliseconds.
  - Power Fail Port when fitted to an IP500 Analog Phone 8 base card.
     During power failure extension port 8 is connected to the analog trunk port 12.
- · License: No license required.
- Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 4.
- IP Office Software Level: 4.0+.



#### **Daughter Card Ports (9-12)**

The LED's for ports 9 to 12 of the IP500 base card are used as follows::

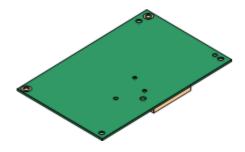
- Green on: Card fitted.
- Green flashing: Trunk in use.
- LED 9 is also used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 Trnk Anlg 4 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Analog 4 Universal	700417405

# 10.3.2 BRI Trunk Cards

This card can be added to an IP500 base card to provide that card with support for <u>BRI-To</u> trunks. The card is available in 8 channel (4 physical trunks) or 4 channel (2 physical trunks) variants.

This card can be fitted to any IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Carrier card and IP500 4-Port Expansion card.



#### • Ports/Channels

2 or 4 BRI trunk ports. Connections via ports 9 to 12 of the host IP500 base card.

- Each trunk port supports 2B+D channels.
- ETSI or AusTS013 basic rate protocol set through the IP Office configuration.
- License: No license required.
- Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 4.
- IP Office Software Level: 4.0+.
- S-Bus Connection: On IP Office 4.2+ systems, the card can be switched from To trunk mode to So mode. This mode requires additional terminating resistors and an ISDN crossover cable connection, see BRI Port (So).
- This card is approved for use in the following countries:

Brazil.	New Zealand.
China.	Russia.
India.	South Africa.
Argentina.	United Arab Emirates (UAE).
Australia.	European Union (EU).



#### **Daughter Card Ports (9-12)**

The LED's for ports 9 to 12 of the IP500 base card are used as follows:

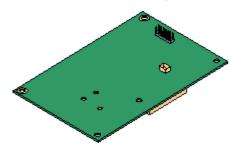
- Off: No trunk present.
- · Green on: Trunk present.
- Green flashing: Trunk in use.
- LED 9 is also used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 Trnk BRI 4 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Basic Rate 4 Universal	700417413
IPO 500 Trnk BRI 8 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Basic Rate 8 Universal	700417421
IPO IP500 BRI SO CONVTR CBL	IP500 BRI So Converter Cable	700458649

### 10.3.3 PRI Trunk Cards

This card can be added to an IP500 base card to provide that card with support for PRI trunks. The card is available in single port or dual port variants.

This card can be fitted to any IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Carrier card and IP500 4-Port Expansion card.



#### Ports/Channels

1 or 2 <u>PRI trunk ports</u>. Each port supports the following PRI line types. On dual port cards both ports will be the same line type. The line type selection can be changed using IP Office Manager.

- E1 PRI (30B+D channels per port).
- E1R2 PRI (30B channels per port).
- T1 robbed bit (24B channels per port) or T1 PRI (23B+D channels per port).
- When installed in IP500 with a U-Law Feature Key dongle, the card will default T1 PRI mode. When installed in an IP500 with an A-Law Feature Key dongle the card will default to E1 PRI mode. The required mode can be selected within IP Office Manager by right-clicking on the line icon and selecting Change Universal PRI Card Line Type and then selecting the required line type.
- Physical trunk connection is via ports 9 and 10 of the host IP500 base card.
- Port 11 and 12 can be used as test points for connection of test and monitoring equipment for the adjacent port.

#### Licenses

The IP Office system supports 8 unlicensed B-channels on each IP500 PRI-U port fitted. Additional B-channels, up to the capacity of ports installed and PRI mode selected require **IP500 Universal PRI (Additional Channels)** licenses added to the configuration. These additional channels consume the licenses based on which additional channels are configured as in-service from port 9 of slot 1 upwards. D-channels are not affected by licensing.

- Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 4.
- Software Level: 4.1+.



#### Daughter Card Ports (9-12)

The LED's for ports 9 to 12 of the IP500 base card are used as follows:

- · Off: No trunk present.
- · Green on: Trunk present.
- · Green flashing: Trunk in use.
- Red/Green Fast Flash (port 9) or Green Fast Flash (port 10): Alarm indication signal (AIS) from the trunk remote end.
- Red with Green Blink (port 9) or Green Blink (port 10):
   Port in loopback mode (set through IP Office System Monitor).
- LED 9 is also used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 TRNK PRI 1 UNI	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Primary Rate 1 Universal	700417439
IPO 500 TRNK PRI 2 UNI	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Primary Rate 2 Universal	700417462

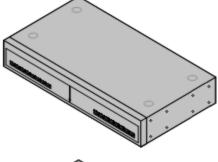
# 10.4 IP500 Expansion Modules

The following IP500 external expansion modules are supported by IP Office 5.0. They are intended for use with an IP500 control unit but can also be used with IP400 control units. Unlike IP400 external expansion modules, these units use the IP500 rack mounting kit.

### • IP500 Analog Trunk Module

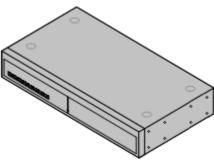
Provides an additional 16 <u>ANALOG</u> ports for connection of analog trunks. Supports both loop-start and ground-start trunks.

- Currently only available for the US locale.
- Use with ground start trunks requires that the trunk module and the IP Office control unit are grounded.



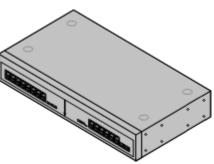
#### • IP500 BRI So8 Module

Provides 8 ETSI <u>BRI-So ports</u> for the connection of ISDN devices. This unit is not intended to support BRI trunks.



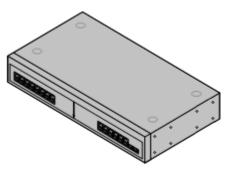
### • IP500 Digital Station Module

Provides, depending on variant, an additional 16 or 30 <u>DS</u> ports for supported <u>Avaya digital phones</u>.



### IP500 Phone Module

Provides, depending on variant, an additional 16 or 30  $\underline{\text{PHONE}}$  ports for analog phones.



# 10.4.1 Analog Trunk 16

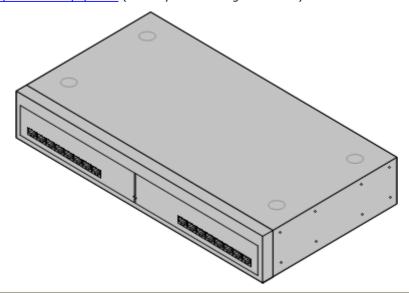
The IP500 Analog Trunk module can be used to add 16 additional analog trunks to an IP Office system. The module supports both loop-start and, with suitable grounding, ground-start trunks. This module is currently only supported in the US locale.

#### • IMPORTANT

In all IP Office installations, any module being used for analog trunk connections must be connected to a <u>functional earth</u>.

# • 🔔 WARNING

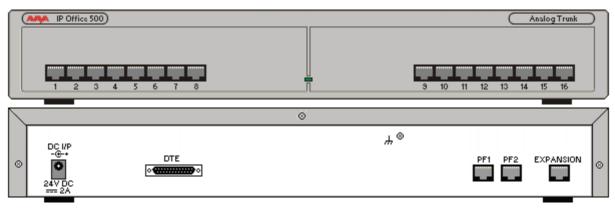
Within areas of high lightning risk, any module using analog trunk connections must be connected to a <u>protective ground</u> and to <u>surge protection equipment</u> (an Avaya 146G Surge Protector).



Feature	Details
Supported on	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition.
Locales	Specific variants are provided for different IP Office locales, see below.
Software Level	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = naatm16.bin.
Included	Power supply unit (see below) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
Power Supply	The module is supplied with a 2-pin, 40W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
Mounting	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP500 Rack Mounting Kit.
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
Weight	Unboxed: 2.9Kg/6.6lbs. Boxed: 4.2Kg/9.4lbs.

IP Office Installation
IP Office
Page 226
IP Office
15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# **IPO 500 Analog Trunk Module Connections**



Ports	Description
ANALOG	RJ45 socket. Used for connection to analog trunks. Ports can be configured as either loop-start or ground-start trunks through the IP Office configuration.  In the event of power failure, Analog ports 1 and 2 are directly connected to analog extension ports PF1 and PF2 respectively. If used the connected phones must be clearly labeled as power failure devices. This is only supported for loop-start analog trunks.
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 40W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C7">IEC60320 C7</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<u>DTE</u>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
EXPANSION	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
<u>PF</u>	RJ45 socket. Power failure analog extension ports. See Analog section above.
Ψ.	Ground point. Used for connection of a protective or functional ground if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead.  • IMPORTANT  In all IP Office installations, any module being used for analog trunk connections must be connected to a functional earth.  • WARNING
	Within areas of high lightning risk, any module using analog trunk connections must be connected to a <u>protective ground</u> and to <u>surge protection equipment</u> .

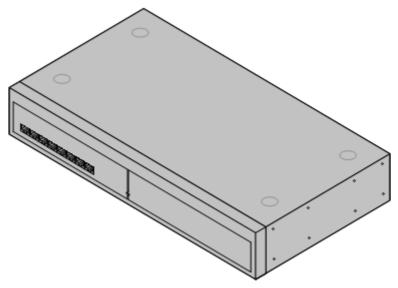
All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IPO 500 Analog Trunk 16	America	America	700449473
IEC60320 C7 Power Cord	NEMA1-15	America	700213390
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700429202

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

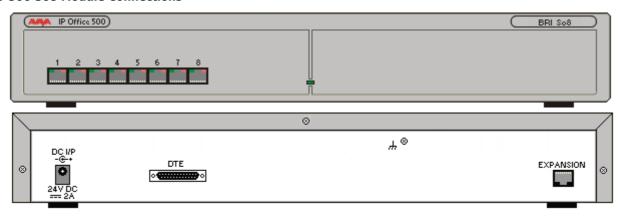
# 10.4.2 BRI SO8

The So8 module can be used to add ETSI BRI S0-interface ports to the IP Office system. These ports can then be used for the connection of ISDN devices.



Feature	Details
Supported on	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition.
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.
Software Level	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = nas0-16.bin.
Included	Power supply unit (see below) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
Power Supply	The unit is supplied with an earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C13">IEC60320 C13</a> <a href="Down cord">power cord</a> for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit.
Mounting	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP500 Rack Mounting Kit.
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
Weight	Unboxed: 2.8Kg/6.3lbs. Boxed: 4.1Kg/9.2lbs.

# **IPO 500 So8 Module Connections**



Ports	Description
BRI	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of ISDN terminal devices.  Note: These ports appear a lines within the IP Office configuration. However they cannot be used for connection to external BRI lines.
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C13">IEC60320 C13</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<u>DTE</u>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
EXPANSION	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
Ή	Function ground point. Used for connection of a <u>protective or functional ground</u> if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead.

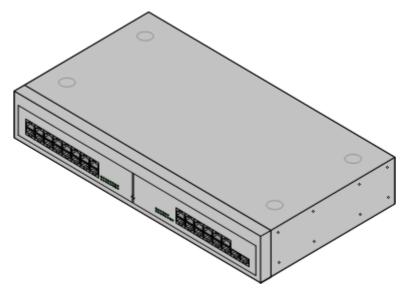
All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system. Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IPO 500 BRI So8		All	700449515
IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
8 4 9	China	China	700261977
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700429202

# 10.4.3 Digital Station

IPO 500 Digital Station modules can be used to add additional DS ports to an IP Office system. Note that this requires the IP Office 500 control unit to be configured with an IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional license.

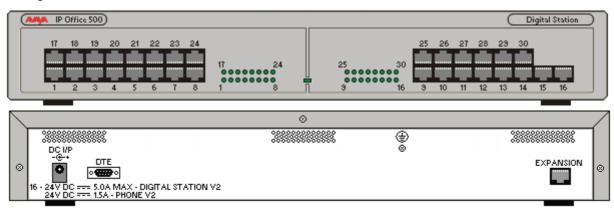
The module is available in 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as the IPO 500 Digital Station 16 and IPO 500 Digital Station 30 respectively.



Feature	Details
Supported on	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition.
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.
Software Level	IP Office core software level 2.1(31) minimum. Bin file = nadcpV2.bin.
Included	Power supply unit (see below) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
Power Supply	The module is supplied with a Earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply module. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C13">IEC60320 C13</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
Mounting	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP500 Rack Mounting Kit.
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8".
Weight	Unboxed: 3.5Kg/7.8lbs. Boxed: 4.8Kg/10.8lbs. (Based on DS30 V2)

IP Office Installation
IP Office
Page 230
IP Office
15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# IPO 500 Digital Station Connections



Ports	Description
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C13">IEC60320 C13</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<u>DS</u>	RJ45 socket. Digital Station port. Used for connection of IP Office <u>supported DS phones</u> . If connected to an <u>out-of-building extension</u> , the connection must be made via additional IROB barrier devices in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
DTE	9-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
EXPANSION	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
<b>(</b>	Protective Ground point. Use of a protective ground is required for all installations, see <a href="Grounding (Earthing)">Grounding (Earthing)</a> . Where the module is connected to analog extensions in another building, an IP Office Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V) is required at both ends, see <a href="Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections">Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections</a> .

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

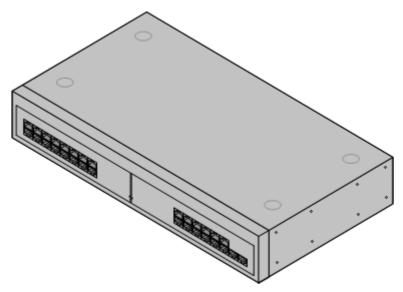
Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IPO 500 Digital Station	16 Ports	All	700449499
	30 Ports		700426216
IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
8.0	China	China	700261977
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700429202

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

# 10.4.4 Phone

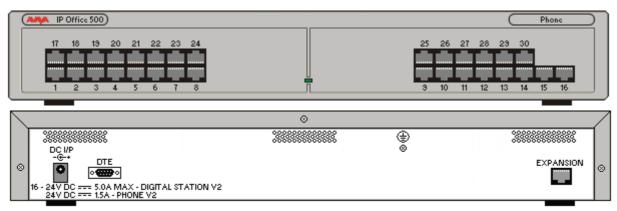
IPO 500 Phone modules can be used to add additional PHONE ports to an IP Office system. Note that this requires the IP Office 500 control unit to be configured with an IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional license.

The module is available in 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as the IPO 500 Phone 16 and IPO 500 Phone 30 respectively.



Feature	Details
Supported on	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition.
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 2.1(36) minimum. Bin file = dvpots.bin.
Included	Power supply unit (see below) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
Power Supply	The module is supplied with a Earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C13">IEC60320 C13</a> <a href="Dower cord">power cord</a> for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
Mounting	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP500 Rack Mounting Kit.
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8".
Weight	Unboxed: 3.1Kg/6.94lbs. Boxed: 4.4Kg/9.7lbs. (Based on Phone 30 V2)

# **IPO 500 Phone Connections**



Ports	Description
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C13">IEC60320 C13</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<u>DTE</u>	9-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
EXPANSION	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
PHONE	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of analog phones. Intended for two-wire analog phones. For connection to 4-wire analog phones connection should be via a master socket with ringing capacitors. If connected to an <a href="https://doi.org/10.1007/journal.com/out-of-building-extension">out-of-building-extension</a> , the connection must be made via additional <a href="https://doi.org/10.1007/journal.com/out-of-building-extension">IP Office</a> <a href="https://doi.org/10.1007/journal.com/out-of-building-extension">Barrier Boxes</a> in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
<b>(</b>	Protective Ground point. Use of a protective ground is required for all installations, see <u>Grounding</u> ( <u>Earthing</u> ). Where the module is connected to analog extensions in another building, an IP Office Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V) is required at both ends, see <u>Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections</u> .

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IPO 500 Phone	16 Ports	All	700449507
	30 Ports	All	700426224
IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
4 0	China	China	700261977
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700429202

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

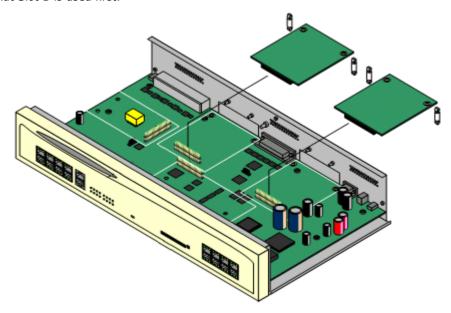
# 10.5 IP400 Trunk Cards

A range of IP400 trunk cards are available for different trunk types. Each IP400 trunk card is supplied with stand off pillars and a replacement blanking plate for use with IP400 control units.

#### • Small Office Edition Control Units

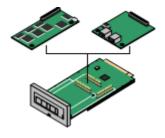
All versions of the Small Office Edition control include either two or four integral analog trunk ports on the front of the unit. In addition a single IP400 trunk card can be fitted to the rear of the unit.

The IP406 V2 and IP412 can be fitted with up to 2 IP400 trunk cards. Except where otherwise indicated, it is recommended that Slot B is used first.



#### • IP500 Control Unit

The IP500 control unit can accept up to two IP400 trunk cards by mounting each card on an IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card.



**IP Office Installation** Page 234 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009) The following IP400 trunk card types are supported by IP Office 4.0:

IP400 Trunk Cards		SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
A STATE OF THE STA	Analog Trunk Card (ATM4) Provides 4 RJ45 loop-start analog trunk ports. The card is available in several locale specific variants. This card has been superseded by the ATM4U card below.	×	7	<b>y</b>	7
	Additional loop or ground start analog trunks can also be added using <b>Analog Trunk</b> external expansion modules.				
S AND	Analog Trunk Card (ATM4U) Provides 4 RJ45 loop-start analog trunk ports as per the ATM4 above but available in a single worldwide variant. Also supports adjustable echo cancellation on IP Office 3.1.		7	<b>J</b>	7
	Additional loop or ground start analog trunks can also be added using <u>Analog Trunk</u> external expansion modules.				
STATE OF THE PARTY	Quad BRI Trunk Card Provides support for 4 RJ45 BRI (2B+D) trunk ports. These can be configured to ETSI or AusTS013 operation. The ports include 100ohm termination.	7	7	,	7
	Single PRI T1 Trunk Cards Supports PRI (23B+D) trunks and T1 Robbed-Bit (24B) trunks through a single RJ45 port. The mode of operation is selected in the IP Office configuration.	7	7	J	7
	Single E1 PRI Trunk Cards Supports PRI (30B+D) trunks through a single RJ45 port. The port can be configured for PRI or QSIG operation.	×	<i>y</i>	<i>y</i>	7
	Single E1R2 Trunk Cards Supports PRI (30B+D) trunks using E1R2 signalling. Available in coaxial or RJ45 connector variants. Coaxial variants are not supported on an IP500 carrier card.	×	<i>y</i>	<i>y</i>	7
- Salar	Dual PRI Trunk Cards As the single PRI cards above but supporting the connection of two PRI trunks. On the IP406 V2, supported in Slot A only.	×	7	7	7
	WAN Port Card Used only with the Small Office Edition. Provides a single 37-way D-type socket for connection to a V.24, V.35 or X.21 WAN service. Includes a replacement back panel for the control unit.	7	×	7	×

# 10.5.1 Analog Trunk Card Uni (ATM4U)

This card supersedes the previous Analog Trunk cards and is referred to as the "ATM4U". It can be identified by a label on the base of the card.

The card is supported on IP Office software 2.1(36) and higher. Unlike the previous ATM4 card, the same ATM4U card variant can be used in all locales.

For systems running IP Office software 3.1 or higher, the echo cancellation used on each trunk can be switched off or on (16ms).

The card provides 4 RJ45 sockets for <u>analog trunk connections</u>. The card only supports loop-start trunks. For ground-start trunks an Analog Trunk expansion module should be used.

#### • Power Failure Operation

There are no power failure extension connections provided for the analog trunk card. If this is a requirement, the ATM16 expansion module should be used.

# MARNING

In all IP Office installations, any module or control unit using analog trunk connections must be connected to a functional earth.

# • 🔔 WARNING

Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module or control unit using analog trunk connections must be connected to a <u>protective ground</u> and to <u>surge protection equipment</u>.

ATM4U Trunk Card		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
September 1	ATM4 Uni (Loop-Start)	All	700359938	×	7	,	•

- The card include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.
- For the IP500 control unit an IP500 Carrier Card is required, up to a maximum of 2 carrier cards.

# 10.5.2 Analog Trunk Cards (ATM4)

The Analog Trunk card is also referred to as the "ATM4". It provides 4 RJ45 sockets for <u>analog trunk connections</u>. The card only supports loop-start trunks.

The card is available in a number of locale specific variants as detailed below.

#### • Power Failure Operation

There are no power failure extension connections provided for the analog trunk card.

### • 🔔 WARNING

In all IP Office installations, any module or control unit using analog trunk connections must be connected to a functional earth.

# • 🔔 WARNING

Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module or control unit using analog trunk connections must be connected to a <u>protective ground</u> and to <u>surge protection equipment</u>.

ATM4 Trunk Cards		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
Server of the se	IP400 Analog 4 (Loop- Start)	North and South America	700185192	×	7	<b>~</b>	×
	IP400 Analog 4 EU (Loop-Start)	Europe	700241672	×	7	•	X
	IP400 Analog 4 NZ (Loop-Start)	New Zealand	700241706	×	7	<b>y</b>	×

• These cards include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.

### 10.5.3 BRI Trunk Cards

The BRI trunk card is also referred to as the "Quad BRI". It provides 4 RJ45 sockets for ETSI BRI trunk connections, with each trunk supporting 2B+D channels.

• The trunk card ports include 100 ohm termination.

Variant		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	IP400 BRI	All	700185168	\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	7	<b>7</b>	~
S. B. B. B.	IP400 BRI 8 (UNI)	All except China	700262017	<b>,</b>	·	~	7

- These cards include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.
- For the IP500 control unit an IP500 Carrier Card is required, up to a maximum of 2 carrier cards.

# 10.5.4 T1 PRI Trunk Cards

These trunk cards support 23B+D primary rate (US PRI) trunks and 24B T1 robbed-bit trunks. The mode of operation is selected within the IP Office configuration.

The T1 PRI card includes an integral CSU/DSU that can be activated through the IP Office Monitor application.

PRI Trunk Cards		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	IP400 PRI 24 T1	North America	700185200	~	,	•	<b>,</b>
Series .	IP400 PRI 48 T1	North America	700185218	×	7	,	,

- These cards include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.
- For dual port cards the IP406 V2 only supports a single dual card in Slot A.
- For the IP500 control unit an IP500 Carrier Card is required, up to a maximum of 2 carrier cards.

# 10.5.5 E1 PRI Trunk Cards

These cards support primary rate trunks providing 30B+D channels.

E1 PRI trunk Cards		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	IP400 PRI 30 E1 (1.4)	All except China and CALA.	700272461	X	7	7	,
- Jako	IP400 PRI 60 E1	All except China and CALA.	700185184	×	J	<i>y</i>	•

- These cards include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.
- For dual port cards the IP406 V2 only supports a single dual card in Slot A.
- For the IP500 control unit an IP500 Carrier Card is required, up to a maximum of 2 carrier cards.

# 10.5.6 WAN Trunk Card

This trunk card provides a single 37-way D-type WAN port.

WAN Cards		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	IP400 WAN Expansion	All	700289713	4	×	×	×

• The card is supplied with two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement rear panel for the Small Office Edition control unit.

### 10.5.7 E1R2 PRI Trunk Cards

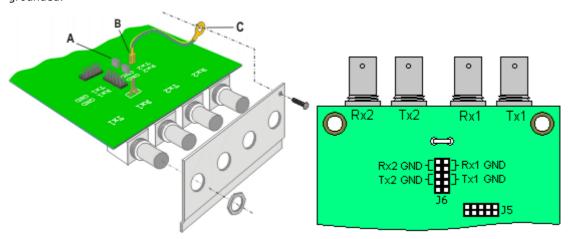
These cards support E1 trunks with R2 signalling. Each trunk provides up to 30B+D channels.

E1R2 PRI trunk cards are available with either RJ45 or coaxial cable connectors.

E1R2PRI trunk Card	s	Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	IP400 PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45	CALA, Korea, China	700241631	×	1	7	<b>*</b>
	IP400 PRI 60 E1R2 RJ45		700241649	×	1	7	<b>'</b>
	IP400 PRI 30 E1R2 COAX	CALA	700241656	×	1	1	×
200	IP400 PRI 60 E1R2 COAX		700241664	X	1	7	×

- These cards include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.
- For E1R2 coaxial card, a ground-jumper cable and coaxial connector locking rings are included.
- For dual port cards the IP406 V2 only supports a single dual card in Slot A.
- For the IP500 control unit an IP500 Carrier Card is required, up to a maximum of 2 carrier cards.

E1R2 coax trunk cards must be grounded correctly and require the IP Office control unit to be connected to a protective ground. Normally the ends of one connection is grounded. For example, if the exchange Tx1 is grounded, the IP Office Rx1 should also be grounded. However this must be confirmed with the line provider to establish which ends they want grounded.



- 1. Connect the ground strap spade end (B) supplied with the card to the spade connection on the card and the other end (C) to the chassis with the long securing screw also supplied with the card.
- 2. Use the two jumpers supplied with the card, match the ground selection of the line provider. For example, if the line provider has grounded their Tx1, place a jumper across the two Rx1 pins of jumper block J6.

# 10.6 IP400 Internal Cards

### 10.6.1 Modem Cards

A modem card allows the IP Office to answer incoming modem calls up to V.90. There are two variants of modem card available:

Variants		Countr y	SOE	IP4 06 V2		IP50 0	SAP Code
	Modem 2 Card Provides 2 modem channels. Supported from IP Office 1.0 onwards.	All	×	7	7	×	70018522 6
	Internal Modem Card Provides 12 modem channels except on the IP403 where it only provides 4. Supported from IP Office 2.1(27) onwards.	All	×	7	7	×	70034345 2

- The cards are supplied with 2 plastic stand off pillars for installation.
- The first analog trunk on Small Office Edition control units and on modules fitted with an ATM4 or ATM4U trunk card, can be set to answer V.32 analog modem calls. Whilst in this mode, the trunk cannot be used for voice calls.

# 10.6.2 Wireless Card

This card is supported by the Small Office Edition control unit only and allows the unit to act as an 802.11b wireless access point. The card can be inserted into either of the control units two PCMCIA slots.

 These cards are not hot swappable. Removal of the card while the IP Office control unit is powered is not recommended.

Wireless Card		Country	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500	SAP Code
	<ul> <li>Small Office Edition Wireless Card</li> <li>Use of the card requires entry of a Small Office WiFi license (IP400 WiFi Access Point RFA) into the IP Office configuration.</li> </ul>	All	۷	X	×	×	700289739

# 10.6.3 Embedded Voicemail Memory Cards

These cards are supported on the Small Office Edition and the IP406 V2 control units. They are specially formatted Compact Flash cards that provide embedded voicemail operation and can also be configured for basic auto-attendant support.

Use of these cards for voicemail does not require a license.

• Spanish-Argentina

• These cards are not hot swappable. Removal of the cards while the IP Office control unit is powered may cause lose or corruption of messages and prompts.

Variant		Countr y	SOE	IP40 6 V2	IP41 2		SAP Code
	Small Office Edition Uses a 64MB Compact Flash cards fitted into a PCMCIA slot caddy. The card provides up to 10 hours storage for compressed prompts, greetings and messages. Operation of the card uses the one of the Small Office's voice compression channels for each call.	All	7	×	X	×	7002897 21
	IP406 V2 Uses a 512MB Compact Flash card. This card provides up to 15 hours storage for uncompressed prompts, greetings and messages. Operation of this card does not require voice compression channels.	All	×	7	×	7	7003434 60

- From IP Office 3.0 onwards, the prompt files for the following languages are pre-installed on the Avaya memory cards.
  - Danish Finnish Portuguese • German · Portuguese-Brazilian French • English-UK • French-Canadian Russian English-US Swedish Italian Spanish Korean • Chinese - Mandarin · Spanish-Mexico Dutch • Chinese- Cantonese (IP Office 4.2
- For full details of embedded voicemail setup and configuration, refer to the Embedded Voicemail Installation manual.

Norwegian

Memory cards in these slots can also be used for storage of files normally obtained via TFTP transfer. For example the
music-on-hold wav file and supported 4600 Series/5600 Series software files. This will however reduce storage space
for prompt and message files if embedded voicemail is being used. Non-Avaya memory cards can be used for this
function.

# **10.6.4 Voice Compression Modules**

IP400 VCM's are optional cards that can be installed inside the IP Office control unit (except the Small Office Edition). Each VCM provides a number of voice compression channels, indicated by a number suffix. For example, a VCM 8 has 8 voice compression channels.

• For the IP500 control unit, to use an IP400 Voice Compression Card an IP500 Carrier Card is also required for each IP400 VCM. For IP500 control units, voice compression channels can also be added using up to 2 IP500 VCM base cards with VCM licenses.

IP400 VCM Cards		SAP Code	Small Office Edition <sup>[2]</sup>	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
25ms echo cancellation.	VCM5[1]	700185119	×	<b>*</b>	\ \	×
	VCM10 <sup>[1]</sup>	700185127	×	<b>y</b>	<b>-</b>	X
	VCM20 <sup>[1]</sup>	700185135	×	<b>y</b>	<b>-</b>	X
	VCM30	700293939	×	<b>y</b>	<b>y</b>	<b>✓</b>
64ms echo cancellation.	VCM4	700359854	×	<b>y</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>
	VCM8	700359862	×	<b>y</b>	<b>&gt;</b>	<b>-</b>
	VCM16	700359870	×	<b>y</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>
	VCM24	700359888	×	<b>y</b>	<b>y</b>	<b>'</b>
Number of IP400 VCM cards.		0	1	2	2	
Maximum number of channels.		3/16	30	60	128	

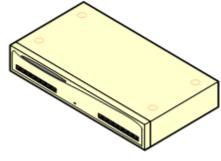
- 1. These modules are still supported on some systems but are no longer available from Avaya.
- 2. Small Office Edition control units have either 3 or 16 built in voice compression channels with 40mms echo cancellation.

**IP Office Installation** Page 242 **IP Office** 

# 10.7 IP400 Expansion Modules

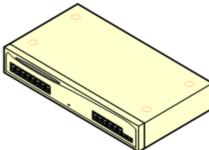
The following IP400 external expansion modules are supported by IP Office 5.0. Except for the WAN3 10/100, these modules can also be used with an IP500 control unit.

- IP400 Analog Trunk Module (ATM16)
  - Provides an additional 16 <u>ANALOG</u> ports for connection of analog trunks. Supports both loop-start and ground-start trunks.
  - Available in a number of variants for different locales.
  - Use with ground start trunks requires that the trunk module and the IP Office control unit are grounded.



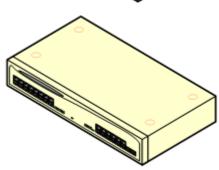
• IP400 Digital Station Module (DS16/DS30)

Provides, depending on the variant, an additional 16 or 30 <u>DS</u> ports for supported Avaya digital phones. This module has been superseded by the Digital Station V2.



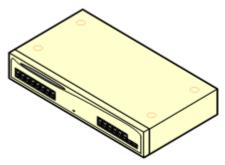
• IP400 Digital Station Module V2 (DS16 V2/DS30 V2)

Provides, depending on variant, an additional 16 or 30 <u>DS</u> ports for supported <u>Avaya digital phones</u>. Supersedes the previous Digital Station module.



• IP400 Phone Module (Phone8/Phone16/Phone30)

Provides, depending on variant, an additional 8, 16 or 30 <u>POT</u> ports for analog phones. This module has been superseded by the Phone Module V2.



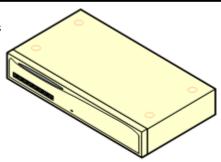
- IP400 Phone Module V2 (Phone8 V2/Phone16 V2/Phone30 V2)
  Provides, depending on variant, an additional 8, 16 or 30 PHONE ports for analog phones. Supersedes the previous Phone module. With IP Office 3.1, the Phone V2 supports a wider range of message waiting indication (MWI)
  - With V2 units, the labeling of analog phone ports was changed from POT to PHONE.



options than Phone V1 modules.

#### • IP400 So8 Module

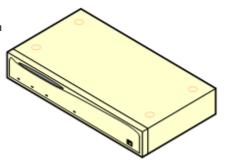
Provides 8 ETSI <u>BRI-So</u> ports for the connection of ISDN devices. This unit is not intended to support BRI trunks.



# • IP400 WAN3 10/100 Module

Provides on its rear an additional three 37-way  $\underline{\text{D-type WAN}}$  ports. These can be used for the connection of  $\underline{\text{V.24}}$ ,  $\underline{\text{V.35}}$  and  $\underline{\text{X.21}}$  WAN services. The module connects to the control unit via a LAN port rather than an expansion port.

- The WAN3 has been superseded by the WAN3 10/100 and is not supported by IP Office 3.2 and higher.
- IP Office systems are restricted to a maximum of 2 WAN3 modules regardless of the control unit type.
- This module is not supported with the IP500.



# 10.7.1 Analog Trunk 16

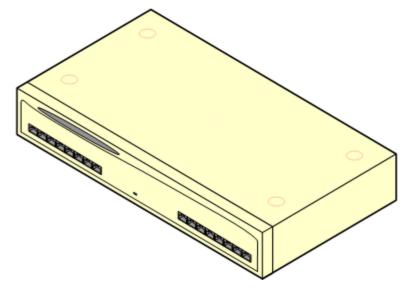
The IP400 Analog Trunk module (also known as the ATM16) is used to add 16 additional analog trunks to an IP Office system. The module supports both loop-start and, with suitable grounding, ground-start trunks.

#### • TMPORTANT

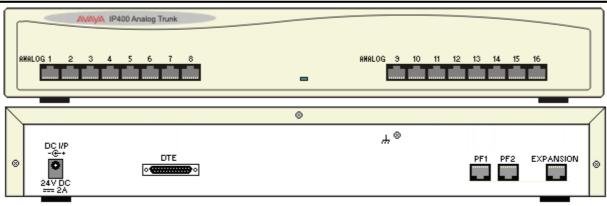
In all IP Office installations, any module being used for analog trunk connections must be connected to a <u>functional</u> earth.

# • 🔔 WARNING

Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module using analog trunk connections must be connected to a <u>protective ground</u> and to <u>surge protection equipment</u>.



Feature	Details
Supported on	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition.
Locales	Specific variants are provided for different IP Office locales, see below.
Software Level	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = naatm16.bin.
Included	Power supply unit (see below) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
Power Supply	The module is supplied with a 2-pin, 40W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C7">IEC60320 C7</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
Mounting	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
Weight	Unboxed: 2.9Kg/6.6lbs. Boxed: 4.2Kg/9.4lbs.



Ports	Description
ANALOG	RJ45 socket. Used for connection to analog trunks. Ports can be configured as either loop-start or ground-start trunks through the IP Office configuration.  In the event of power failure, Analog ports 1 and 2 are directly connected to analog extension ports PF1 and PF2 respectively. If used the connected phones must be clearly labeled as power failure devices. This is only supported for loop-start analog trunks.
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 40W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C7">IEC60320 C7</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
DTE	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
EXPANSION	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
PF	RJ45 socket. Power failure analog extension ports. See Analog section above.
.Н.	<ul> <li>Ground point. Used for connection of a protective or functional ground if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead.</li> <li>IMPORTANT         <ul> <li>In all IP Office installations, any module being used for analog trunk connections must be connected to a functional earth.</li> <li>WARNING</li> <li>Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module using analog trunk connections must be connected to a protective ground and to surge protection equipment.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

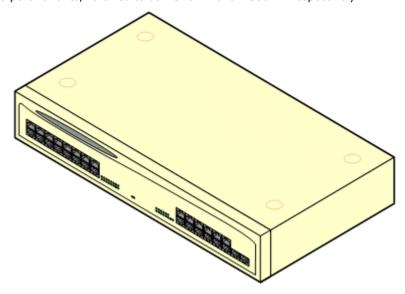
All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 Analog Trunk 16	America	America	700211360
	Europe	Europe	700241680
	New Zealand	New Zealand	700241698
IEC60320 C7 Power Cord	CEE7/16	Europe	700213382
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700213374
	NEMA1-15	America	700213390
	Korea	Korea	700254519
62	China	China	700314172
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

# 10.7.2 Digital Station V2

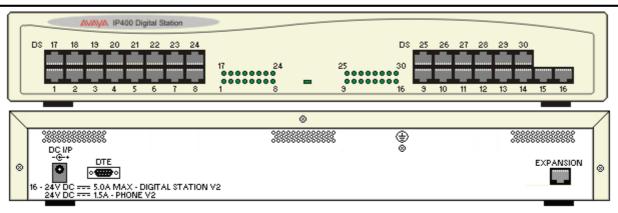
The IP400 Digital Station V2 (also known as DS V2) is used to add additional DS ports to an IP Office system. The DS V2 is available in 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as DS16 V2 and DS30 V2 respectively.



The DS V2 supersedes the original IP400 Digital Station, now referred to as a DS V1. The module version is indicated by labels both the base and the rear of the module. Key changes are:

- The DS ports have been rotated 180° to allow easier connection access.
- The port status LED's have been moved and grouped adjacent to the ports.
- The DTE serial port on the rear of the module has been changed to a 9-pin D-type socket.
- The DS V2 uses an earthed 3-pin 60W external power supply unit.

Feature	Details
Supported on	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition.
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 2.1(31) minimum. Bin file = nadcpV2.bin.
Included	Power supply unit (see below) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
Power Supply	The module is supplied with a Earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply module. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C13">IEC60320 C13</a> <a href="Dower cord">Dower cord</a> for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
Mounting	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
Weight	Unboxed: 3.5Kg/7.8lbs. Boxed: 4.8Kg/10.8lbs. (Based on DS30 V2)



Ports	Description
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C13">IEC60320 C13</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<u>DS</u>	RJ45 socket. Digital Station port. Used for connection of IP Office supported DS phones.  If connected to an out-of-building extension, the connection must be made via additional IROB barrier devices in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
<u>DTE</u>	9-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
EXPANSION	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
<b>(</b>	Protective Ground point. Use of a protective ground is required for all installations, see <u>Grounding</u> ( <u>Earthing</u> ). Where the module is connected to analog extensions in another building, an IP Office Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V) is required at both ends, see <u>Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections</u> .

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

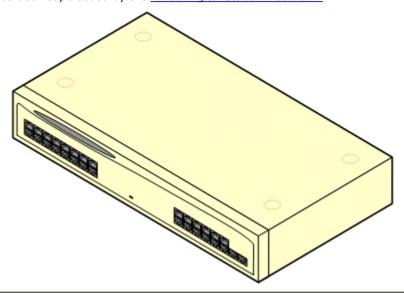
Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 Digital Station V2	16 Ports	All	700359839
	30 Ports		700359847
IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
4 0	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

# 10.7.3 Digital Station

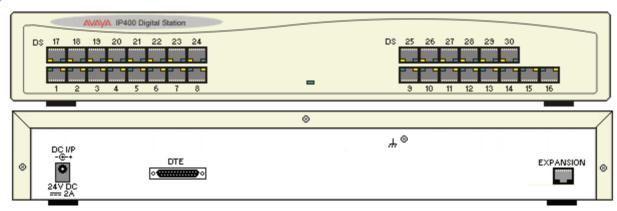
The IP400 Digital Station module (also known as DS module) is used to add additional DS ports to an IP Office system.

The DS module is available in 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as DS16 and DS30 modules respectively. The IP400 Digital Station Module has been superseded by the  $\underline{\text{IP400 Digital Station Module V2}}$ .



Feature	Details
Supported on	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition.
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.
Software Level	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = nadcp-16.bin.
Included	Power supply unit (see below) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
Power Supply	The module is supplied with a 2-pin, 40W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
Mounting	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
Weight	Unboxed: 3.5Kg/7.8lbs. Boxed: 4.8Kg/10.8lbs. (Based on DS30).

# **Digital Station Module Connections**



Ports	Description
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 40W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C7">IEC60320 C7</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<u>DS</u>	Digital Station port. Used for connection of IP Office <u>supported DS phones</u> .  If connected to an <u>out-of-building extension</u> , the connection must be made via additional IROB barrier devices in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
<u>DTE</u>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
EXPANSION	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
Ψ.	Ground point. Used for connection of a <u>protective or functional ground</u> if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead.  Must be connected if any out-of-building extensions are connected to this module.

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

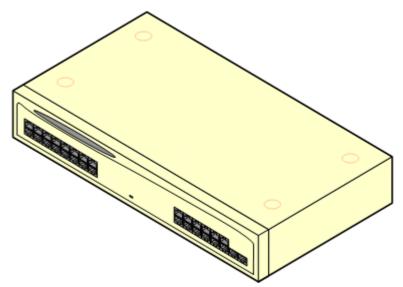
Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 Digital Station	16 Ports	All	700184807
	30 Ports		700184880
IEC60320 C7 Power Cord	CEE7/16	Europe	700213382
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700213374
	NEMA1-15	America	700213390
	Korea	Korea	700254519
62	China	China	700314172
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

# 10.7.4 Phone V2

The IP400 Phone V2 module (also known as the Phone V2 module) is used to add additional PHONE ports to an IP Office system. PHONE ports are used for analog phones.

The Phone V2 module is available in 8, 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as the Phone 8, Phone 16 and Phone 30 respectively.

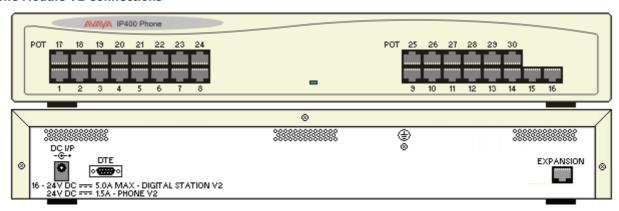


The Phone V2 module supersedes the original IP400 Phone module, now referred to as the Phone V1. The module version is indicated by labels on both the base and the rear of the module. Key changes are:

- The Phone V2 uses an earthed 3-pin 60W external power supply unit.
- With IP Office 3.1, the message waiting indication (MWI) on each port can be configured for None, On, 51V Stepped, 81V, Line Reversal A or Line Reversal B. On uses the default determined by the system locale. Ports on a Phone V2 module can additionally be configured for 101V operation.
- These ports do not include a ringing capacitor. Therefore for connection to 4-wire analog phones where this is a requirement (typically the United Kingdom and New Zealand), connection should be via a Master socket containing ringing capacitors.
- The DTE serial port on the rear of the module has been changed to a 9-pin D-type socket.

Feature	Details
Supported on	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition.
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 2.1(36) minimum. Bin file = dvpots.bin.
Included	Power supply unit (see below) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
Power Supply	The module is supplied with a Earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
Mounting	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
Weight	Unboxed: 3.1Kg/6.94lbs. Boxed: 4.4Kg/9.7lbs. (Based on Phone 30 V2)

### **Phone Module V2 Connections**



Ports	Description
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C13">IEC60320 C13</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<u>DTE</u>	9-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
EXPANSION	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
PHONE	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of analog phones. Intended for two-wire analog phones. For connection to 4-wire analog phones connection should be via a master socket with ringing capacitors. If connected to an <u>out-of-building extension</u> , the connection must be made via additional <u>IP Office Barrier Boxes</u> in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
<b>(</b>	Protective Ground point. Use of a protective ground is required for all installations, see <u>Grounding (Earthing)</u> . Where the module is connected to analog extensions in another building, an IP Office Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V) is required at both ends, see <u>Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections</u> .

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

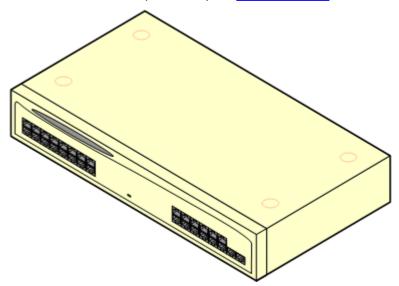
Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 Phone V2	8 Ports	All	700359896
	16 Ports		700359904
	30 Ports		700359912
IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
8 9	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		AII	700210800

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

### 10.7.5 Phone

The IP400 Phone module (also known as the Phone V1 module) is used to add additional POT ports to an IP Office system. POT ports are used for analog phones.

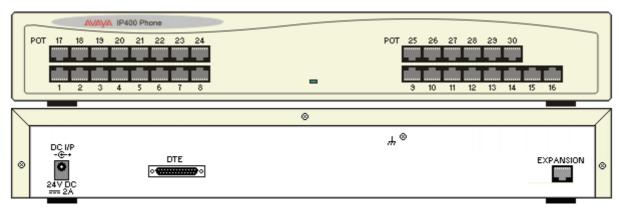
The Phone module is available in 8, 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as the Phone 8, Phone 16 and Phone 30 respectively. The IP400 Phone Module has been superseded by the Phone Module V2.



• With IP Office 3.1 and higher, the message waiting indication (MWI) on each POT port can be configured for None, On, 51V Stepped, 81V, Line Reversal A or Line Reversal B. On uses the default determined by the system locale. POT ports on a Phone V2 module can additionally be configured for 101V operation.

Feature	Details
Supported on	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition.
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.
Software Level	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = napots16.bin (earlier units, not supported on IP500) or avpots16.bin (later units).
Included	Power supply unit (see below) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
Power Supply	The module is supplied with a 2-pin, 40W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
Mounting	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
Weight	Unboxed: 3.1Kg/6.94lbs. Boxed: 4.4Kg/9.7lbs. (Based on Phone 30 V2).

#### **Phone V1 Module Connections**



Ports	Description
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 40W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C7">IEC60320 C7</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<u>DTE</u>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
EXPANSION	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
РОТ	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of analog phones.  If connected to an <u>out-of-building extension</u> , the connection must be made via additional IP Office Barrier Box devices in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
Ή	Function ground point. Used for connection of a <u>protective or functional ground</u> if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead.  Must be connected if any <u>out-of-building extensions</u> are connected to this module.

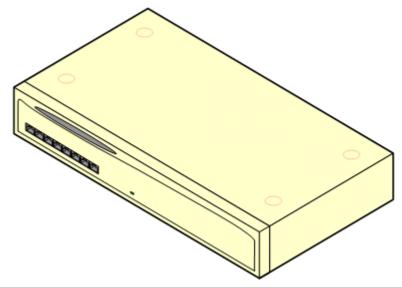
All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 Phone V1	8 Ports	All	700184773
	16 Ports		700184781
	30 Ports		700184799
IEC60320 C7 Power Cord	CEE7/16	Europe	700213382
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700213374
	NEMA1-15	America	700213390
	Korea	Korea	700254519
62	China	China	700314172
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

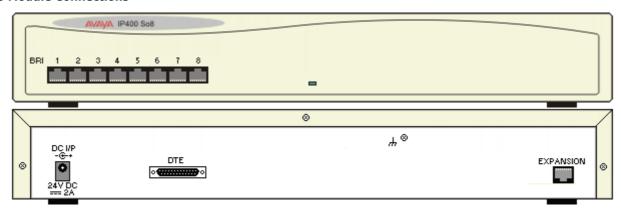
## 10.7.6 So8

The So8 module is used to add ETSI BRI S0-interface ports to the IP Office system. These ports can then be used for the connection of ISDN devices.



Feature	Details
Supported on	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition.
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = nas0-16.bin.
Included	Power supply unit (see below) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
Power Supply	The unit is supplied with an earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit.  • Older units were supplied with a 2-Pin, 40W external power supply unit which used a locale specific locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord.
Mounting	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
Weight	Unboxed: 2.8Kg/6.3lbs. Boxed: 4.1Kg/9.2lbs.

#### **So8 Module Connections**



Ports	Description
<u>BRI</u>	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of ISDN terminal devices.
	Note: These ports appear a lines within the IP Office configuration. However they cannot be used for connection to external BRI lines.
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C13">IEC60320 C13</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<u>DTE</u>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
EXPANSION	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
ጕ	Function ground point. Used for connection of a <u>protective or functional ground</u> if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead.

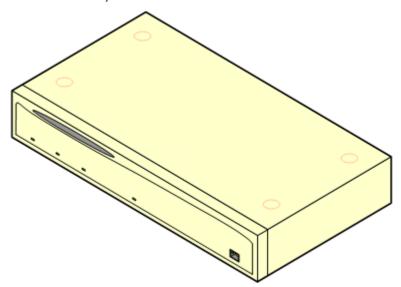
All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system. Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 So8		All	700185077
IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
8 9	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

### 10.7.7 WAN3 10/100

The IP400 WAN3 10/100 module can be used to add an additional 3 WAN ports to an IP Office system. These ports are used for V.24, V.35 and X.21 WAN services.

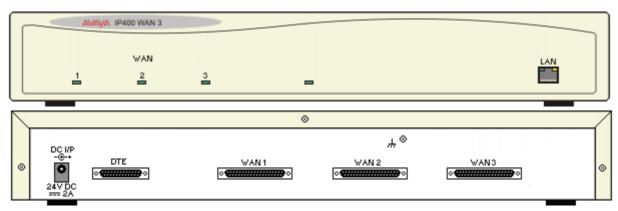
Unlike other external expansion modules the WAN3 10/100 module connects to the IP Office control unit via LAN ports. It has its own IP address, which is obtained by DHCP.



The WAN3 exists in two variants. The original WAN3 only supported a 10Mbps LAN connection and is not supported on IP Office 3.2 and higher. The WAN3 has been superseded by the WAN3 10/100 which supports a 10Mbps/100Mbps LAN connection.

Feature	Details
Supported on	All IP400 control units except Small Office Edition and IP500.
Locales	Supported in all IP Office locales.
Software Level	WAN3 10/100: IP Office core software level 1.4 minimum. Bin file = ipwan3.bin.
Included	Power supply unit (see below) and LAN Interconnect cable.
Power Supply	The unit is supplied with an earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit.  • Older units were supplied with a 2-Pin, 40W external power supply unit which used a locale specific locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord.
Mounting	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
Dimensions	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
Weight	Unboxed: 2.8Kg/6.3lbs. Boxed: 4.1Kg/9.2lbs.

#### **WAN3 Module Connections**



Ports	Description
DC I/P	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 40W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific <a href="IEC60320 C7">IEC60320 C7</a> power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<u>DTE</u>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
EXPANSION	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
LAN	RJ45 socket. Used for direct connection to a LAN port on the IP Office control unit. A LAN Interconnect cable is supplied with the module for that purpose. When connecting to an IP412 control unit a LAN crossover cable should be used.
WAN	These ports support a single synchronous data connection, which can be X.21, V.35 or V.24/V.28. The selection of the required interface is automatically determined from the pin-out of the cable plugged into the WAN port. This cable must be connected before power is applied for auto detection to work. Connection to a Digital Leased Circuit is made by connecting the WAN port on the rear of the module to the existing Network Terminating Module (NTU) via the appropriate X.21, V.35 or V.24 cable. These WAN ports are identical to those on the IP406 V2 and IP412 control units.  • These WAN ports must be clocked externally, the IP Office does not provide a clock signal. The clock signal is usually provided by the service provider but under some circumstances (for example laser, microwave or baseband modems) extra provision must be made by the installer.
ጕ	Function ground point. Used for connection of a <u>protective or functional ground</u> if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead.

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system. Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 WAN3	IP400 WAN3		700185028
IP400 WAN3 10/100			700262009
IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/16	Europe	700289762
Q Q Q	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

# 10.8 Phones

IP Office 5.0 supports the following phones and phone add-ons. Availability may be subject to local restrictions.

Digital stations connect to the IP Office via **DS** ports.

Series	IP Office Supported Digital Station (DS) Phones	Region
2400	<u>2402</u> , <u>2410</u> , <u>2420</u> .	Global
4400	4406D, 4412D+, 4424D+. Not supported on the IP500 Digital Station card.	North America
5400	<u>5402, 5410, 5420</u> .	Global
6400	<u>6408D</u> , <u>6416D+M</u> , <u>6424D+M</u> .	Global
T3 (Upn)	T3 Compact, T3 Classic, T3 Comfort.	Europe, Middle East and Africa
-	3810 Wireless phone.	North America

IP Phones connect to the IP Office system via the RJ45 LAN or WAN.

Series	IP Office Supported H323 IP Phones	Region
1600	1603IP/SW, 1608, 1616	Global
3600	3616, 3620, 3626, 3641, 3645 (Connect via AVPP add-on module).	
4600	4601, 4602, 4602SW, 4610, 4610SW, 4620, 4620SW, 4621SW, 4625.	
5600	<u>5601</u> , <u>5602</u> , <u>5602SW</u> , <u>5610</u> , <u>5620</u> , <u>5621</u> .	
Softphone	Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone application (requires Phone Manager Pro and Phone Manager IP Audio licenses).	
T3 (IP)	T3 IP Compact, T3 IP Classic, T3 IP Comfort.	Europe, Middle East and Africa
SIP Extensions	These phones attach using IP Endpoint licenses.	_
Others	Other IP softphones and hardphones require entry of an IP Endpoints license. Functionality beyond making and answering calls is not guaranteed by Avaya.	-

Analog phones and devices connect to <a href="PHONE">PHONE</a> ports with the IP Office system. However due to the variety of analog phones and device available no guarantee of operation is given. It is the responsibility of the IP Office installer and maintainer to test and verify the operation of proposed analog equipment.

Series	IP Office Recommended Analog Phones	Region
6200 Series	6211, 6219, 6221.	North America
Interquartz Gemini		Europe, Middle East, Africa, Asia- Pacific

Series	IP Office Supported DECT Phones	Region
IP DECT	3701, 3711 - Connection via IP DECT base stations.	Global
DECT R4	3720, 3725 - Connection via Unified DECT base stations.	Global

### 10.8.1 1603

This phone is supported with IP Office 4.2 and higher. Support for the 1603SW model was added in IP Office 5.0.



Fixed Telephony Function Keys				
✓ <b>ଏ</b> SPEAKER	× 3 HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP	× CONTACTS
X ☑ MESSAGE	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ (+C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN	<b>×(≡</b> CALL LOG
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>∭⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	✓ <b>A</b> MENU	

Material Description	Code		
Phones (Ethernet cord sold separately. Local power sold separately. PoE adapter sold separately.)			
1603IP Phone	700415540		
1603SW Phone	700458508		
Accessories			
CAT5 Ethernet Cable (14 ft)	700383326		
CAT5 Ethernet Cable (1 ft)	700436710		
Power Adapters			
1603 PoE adapter	700415607		
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V US	700451230		
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V UK	700451248		
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V EU	700451255		
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V ARGENTINA	700451263		
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V KOREA	700451271		
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V CHINA	700451289		
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V AUSTRALIA	700451297		
Labels			
1603 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (8.5" x 11")	700415706		
1603 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (A4)	700434210		

### 10.8.2 1608

This phone is supported with IP Office 4.2 and higher.



Fixed Function Keys				
✓ 【 SPEAKER	✓ 3 HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP	✓ <sup>™</sup> CONTACTS
✓   MESSAGE	✓ ¥ HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN	<b>√(≡</b> CALL LOG
<b>√ 【</b> DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	✓ A MENU	

Material Description	Code
<b>Phones</b> (Ethernet cord sold separately. Local power sold separately. PoE as separately.)	dapter sold
1608 IP Phone	700415557
Accessories	
CAT5 Ethernet Cable (14 ft)	700383326
CAT5 Ethernet Cable (1 ft)	700436710
1608 Wall Mount Kit (Includes 1 ft Ethernet cable and screws)	700415623
Power Adapters	
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V US	700451230
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V UK	700451248
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V EU	700451255
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V ARGENTINA	700451263
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V KOREA	700451271
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V CHINA	700451289
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V AUSTRALIA	700451297
Labels	
1608 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (8.5" x 11")	700415649
1608 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (A4)	700434228
Headsets	
HIS Headset Cable for 9600 & 1608/1616 IP Phones	700409881
SupraElite Monaural (One Ear) Voice Tube (HIS cable required)	700343718
SupraElite Monaural (One Ear) Noise Cancelling (HIS cable required)	700343726
SupraElite Monaural (Two Ear) Voice Tube (HIS cable required)	700343734
SupraElite Monaural (Two Ear) Noise Cancelling (HIS cable required)	700343742
AWH-55+ Wireless Headset	700428204
AWH-65+ Wireless Headset - UK	700428212
AWH-65+ Wireless Headset - EURO	700428220
AWH75N Executive Wireless Headset NAR	700446313
AWH75N Executive Wireless Headset EU	700446321
AWH75N Executive Wireless Headset UK	700446339
ABT-35+S Headset & Base - NA	700428170
ABT-35+S Headset & Base - EURO	700428196

### 10.8.3 1616

This phone is supported with IP Office 4.2 and higher.



Fixed Function Ke	Fixed Function Keys				
✓ <b>ଏ</b> SPEAKER	✓ 3 HEADSET	✓ <b>%</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP	✓ <sup>₩</sup> CONTACTS	
✓ IMMESSAGE	✓ <b>≌</b> HOLD	✓ (+C TRANSFER	✓ VOLUME DOWN	<b>√(≡</b> CALL LOG	
J C+ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	✓ A MENU		

Material Description	Code
<b>Phones</b> (Ethernet cord sold separately. Local power sold separately. Po separately.)	E adapter sold
1616 IP Phone	700450190
BM32 Button Module for 1616 (includes cable and bridge)	700415573
Accessories	
CAT5 Ethernet Cable (14 ft)	700383326
CAT5 Ethernet Cable (1 ft)	700436710
1616 Wall Mount Kit (Includes 1 ft Ethernet cable and screws)	700415631
Power Adapters	
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V US	700451230
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V UK	700451248
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V EU	700451255
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V ARGENTINA	700451263
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V KOREA	700451271
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V CHINA	700451289
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V AUSTRALIA	700451297
Labels	
1616/BM32 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (8.5" x 11")	700415656
1616/BM32 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (A4)	700434236
Headsets	
HIS Headset Cable for 9600 & 1608/1616 IP Phones	700409881
SupraElite Monaural (One Ear) Voice Tube (HIS cable required)	700343718
SupraElite Monaural (One Ear) Noise Cancelling (HIS cable required)	700343726
SupraElite Monaural (Two Ear) Voice Tube (HIS cable required)	700343734
SupraElite Monaural (Two Ear) Noise Cancelling (HIS cable required)	700343742
AWH-55+ Wireless Headset	700428204
AWH-65+ Wireless Headset - UK	700428212
AWH-65+ Wireless Headset - EURO	700428220
AWH75N Executive Wireless Headset NAR	700446313
AWH75N Executive Wireless Headset EU	700446321
AWH75N Executive Wireless Headset UK	700446339
ABT-35+S Headset & Base - NA	700428170
ABT-35+S Headset & Base - EURO	700428196

### 10.8.4 2402

In addition to the two physical programmable buttons, the FEATURE key plus 0-9, \* and # can be used to access an addition 12 programmable slots.

On IP Office, the 2402D display is not used.



Standard DCP Phone Keys				
X SPEAKER	× $\Omega$ HEADSET	✓ 🕻 MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP	
✓   MESSAGES	✓ ¥ HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ VOLUME DOWN	
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE		

Variant		SAP Code
2402D	Multi-Grey	700381973
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

# 10.8.5 2410

2410D	Feature	2410
	Connects via	DS port.
AVAIN	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✔ 12. (6 buttons x 2 pages).
	Headset Socket	<b>J</b>
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
	Message Waiting Lamp	<b>y</b>
	Display	29 characters x 5 lines. (168 x 80 pixels).
Managara de la companya della companya della companya de la companya de la companya della compan	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	<b>√</b>

Standard DCP Phone Keys				
✓ <b>ଏ</b> SPEAKER	✓ <b>∩</b> HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP	
✓   ✓   MESSAGES	✓ <b>≌</b> HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN	
✓ C+ DROP	✓ <b>   ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE		

Variant		SAP Code
2410	Multi-Grey	700381999
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

# 10.8.6 2420

2420D	Feature	Details
	Connects via	DS port.
Name and Aller	IP Office Release	1.4+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (8 buttons x 3 pages)
	Headset Socket	<b>'</b>
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
	Message Waiting Lamp	<b>'</b>
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24*, 201B.
	Upgradable Firmware	<b>y</b>

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ <b>ଏ</b> SPEAKER	✓ <b>Ω</b> HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
✓   MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
<b>√ 【</b> DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

2420	Multi-Grey	700381585
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
201B Recorder Interface Module		700381635
20B Stand		700381650
EU24*	Multi-Grey	700381817
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

<sup>\*</sup>When used with an EU24 unit, a 1151 type power supply unit must be used to power the phone.

## 10.8.7 3616

This is an 802.11b WiFi phone. It connects to the IP Office via a wireless access point and Avaya Voice Priority Processor (AVPP).

3616	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network.
Minya 546	IP Office Release	2.0+
00	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 6.
1) @ac 3ac	Headset Socket	7
700 GAN 6000 7000 GAN 6000	Message Waiting Lamp	×
0.0	Upgradable Firmware	×

Variant	SAP Code
3616 Wireless Phone	700413040
Additional battery pack for 3616	700277387
Desktop charger for 3616.	700412901
Clip for 3616	700413057
3616/3626 Configuration Cradle	700375934

## 10.8.8 3620

This is an 802.11b WiFi phone. It connects to the IP Office via a wireless access point and Avaya Voice Priority Processor (AVPP).

The 3620 is similar to the 3616 but has been designed for use in healthcare environments. It is waterproof and has a back lit display.

3616	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network.
(Mai 전 1···································	IP Office Release	3.2+
Aaaa Bbbb Cccc Dddd	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 6.
1 (ABC) (30F)	Headset Socket	7
(\$ 0 (\$ 100) (	Message Waiting Lamp	×
RON • LINE	Upgradable Firmware	×

Variant	SAP Code
3620 Wireless Phone	700413065
Additional battery pack.	700277387
Desktop charger.	700412901
Clip	700413057
Configuration Cradle	700375934

## 10.8.9 3626

This phones is similar to the 3616 in functionality. However the 3626 has a ruggedized construction. This is an 802.11b WiFi phone. It connects to the IP Office via a wireless access point and Avaya Voice Priority Processor (AVPP).

3626	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network.
analys. 365	IP Office Release	2.0+
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 6.
(1) (240) (350)	Headset Socket	7
7 rss 8111/ 9 rcr	Message Waiting Lamp	×
	Upgradable Firmware	×

Variant		SAP Code
3626 Wireless Phone		700413024
Additional battery pack for 3626		700277395
Desktop charger for 3626		700412919
3626 Gang changer		700412927
Clip for 3626		700413131
3626 Vinyl case with keypad cover		700412984
3626 Carry case	Yellow	700289309
3626 Carry case with keypad cover	Black	700289317
	Yellow	700289325
3616/3626 Configuration Cradle		700375934

### 10.8.10 3641

The Avaya 3641 IP Wireless Telephone is a WiFi telephone that runs using H.323.



The 3641 supports the following features:

- Lightweight innovative design .
- · Simple to use.
- 802.11a, 802.11b and 802.11g standard-compatible.
- Transmission type Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum (DSSS).
- FCC certification Part 15.247.
- Management of telephones via DHCP and TFTP.
- Voice encoding G711.
- Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) 40bit and 128 bit. WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK.
- 5x16 character alphanumeric, plus status indicators.
- 4 hours talk time and 80 hours standby. Extendable with optional battery packs to 8 hours talk time and 160 hours standby.

**IP Office Installation** Page 272 **IP Office** 

### 10.8.11 3645

The Avaya 3645 IP Wireless Telephone is a WiFi telephone that runs using H.323.



The 3645 supports the following features:

- Lightweight innovative design .
- · Simple to use.
- 802.11a, 802.11b and 802.11g standard-compatible.
- Transmission type Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum (DSSS).
- FCC certification Part 15.247.
- Management of telephones via DHCP and TFTP.
- Voice encoding G711.
- Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) 40bit and 128 bit. WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK.
- 5x16 character alphanumeric, plus status indicators.
- 4 hours talk time and 80 hours standby. Extendable with optional battery packs to 8 hours talk time and 160 hours standby.
- Can be enabled for Push-to-talk (walkie-talkie) feature for broadcast between employees.

# 10.8.12 3701

The 3701 is an Avaya DECT handset supported on IP Office when using Avaya IP DECT base stations.

3701	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network
	IP Office Release	3.1+
Einstellungen Annuf-Optionen Zumück - OK	Programmable Buttons	×
	Headset Socket	×
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	<b>√/</b> ×
7 8 9	Message Waiting Lamp	~
O SOS R	Upgradable Firmware	~

Variant		SAP Code
3701	3701	
Belt Clip		700346885
Phone Charger		700346828
Power Adaptor for Charger	European	700346836
	UK	700346844
	Australia	700378318
8-Phone Gang Charger		700346851
Power Adaptor for Rack Mount Charger	Global	700346869

## 10.8.13 3711

The 3711 is an Avaya DECT handset supported on IP Office when using Avaya IP DECT base stations.

3711	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network
	IP Office Release	3.1+
Telefonoptionen Ruto-Abhaban Stilles Laden Reichw.alarn	Programmable Buttons	×
UK • ZULICK	Headset Socket	7
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	3/3
	Message Waiting Lamp	7
d on R	Upgradable Firmware	7

Variant		SAP Code
3711		700346810
Belt Clip		700346885
Phone Charger		700346828
Power Adaptor for Charger	European	700346836
	UK	700346844
	Australia	700378318
8-Phone Gang Charger		700346851
Power Adapator for Rack Mount Charger	Global	700346869

### 10.8.14 3810

The phone uses a wireless 900MHz digital protocol to connect to its base station. The base station connects to an IP Office DS port. The base station also requires a power outlet socket. Additional power outlet sockets are required for the

Depending on coverage overlap, between three and five 3810's can be connected to the same IP Office.

This phone is supported in North America only.



Item	SAP Code
3810 Set - Includes phone, base station, charger, belt clip and power supply units for charger and base station.	700305105

IP Office Installation Page 276 **IP Office** 

## 10.8.15 4406

This phone is supported in North America only (U-Law only). Not supported on the IP500 Digital Station card.

4406D+	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
Alestyca .	IP Office Release	1.0+
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 6 <b>=</b> ○.
E E	Headset Socket	<b>7</b>
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
	Message Waiting Lamp	7
	Display	16 characters x 2 lines.
Author)	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	×

Standard DCP Phone Keys				
✓ <b>ଏ</b> SPEAKER	× $\Omega$ HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP	
X ⊠ MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN	
X 【↓ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE		

Item	SAP Code
4406D+ (Black)	108199027
4406D+ (White)	108199019
Small 4400 Series Stand (Black)	108541194
Stand 4400 Series Stand (White)	108541202

### 10.8.16 4412

This phone is supported in North America only (U-Law only). Not supported on the IP500 Digital Station card.

Note: A maximum of twenty-seven 4412D telephones are supported on the IP500 DS30 expansion modules and on IP400 DS30 (version 2) expansion module at PCS level 5. Earlier IP400 DS30 expansion modules will only support sixteen of these telephones.



Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ <b>ଏ</b> SPEAKER	× $\Omega$ HEADSET	✓ 🕻 MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
X ™ MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ (+C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
× C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Item		SAP Code
4412D+		108199050
	White	108199043
Large 4400 Series Stand for 4412D+/4424D+	Black	108541269
	White	108541277

### 10.8.17 4424

This phone is supported in North America only (U-Law only). Not supported on the IP500 Digital Station card.

Note: A maximum of twenty-seven 4424D telephones are supported on the IP500 DS30 expansion modules and on IP400 DS30 (version 2) expansion module at PCS level 5. Earlier IP400 DS30 expansion modules will only support sixteen of these telephones.

4424D+	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS ports.
	IP Office Release	1.0+
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 24 <del>8</del> ○ .
	Headset Socket	·
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
	Message Waiting Lamp	7
	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	<u>4450</u> x 2.
	Upgradeable Firmware	×

Standard DCP Phone Keys				
✓ <b>ଏ</b> SPEAKER	× \(\Omega\) HEADSET	✓ 🕻 MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP	
X ☑ MESSAGES	✓ ¥ HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN	
× 【→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE		

Item		SAP Code
4424D+	Black	108199084
	White	108199076
Large 4400 Series Stand for 4412D+/4424D+	Black	108541269
	White	108541277
4450 DSS Add-On	Black	108199696
	White	108199407
Small 4400 Series Stand for 4450.	Black	108541194
	White	108541202
Power Supply for 4450		108596412

### 10.8.18 4601

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151D1 or 1151D2 power supply unit and power cord or an 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source. For RoHS compliance the 4601 has been replaced by the 4601+, however the two phones are functionally the same.



Standard DCP Phone Keys			
X SPEAKER	× $\Omega$ HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓ ¥ HOLD	✓ (+C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
4601+	Multi-Grey	700381890
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

### 10.8.19 4602

These phones are similar in physical appearance and functions. However the 4602SW+ includes a PC data pass-through port which gives priority to phone traffic. The 4602IP is no longer available from Avaya.

The 4602SW+ is the RoHS compliant replacement for the 4602SW which is no longer available.

4602/4602SW	Feature	4602IP	4602SW+	
	Connects via	IP network.	IP network.	
	IP Office Release	1.3+	1.3+	
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 2 □>   <b>4</b> *		
20000	Headset Socket	×		
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	<b>√/</b> ×		
	Message Waiting Lamp	7		
	PoE Class/Typical Idle Power Consumption	3.5W (Class 2)		
The state of the s	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.		
	Supported Add-Ons	None.		
	Upgradable Firmware	7		
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	×/×	J/J	

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
X SPEAKER	× $\Omega$ HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓ ¥ HOLD	✓ (+C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
4602IP	Multi-Grey	700221260
4602SW+	Multi-Grey	700381916
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

## 10.8.20 4610

4610SW	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (6 buttons x 4pages).
	Headset Socket	7
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J.
	Message Waiting Lamp	<i>y</i>
	PoE Class/Typical Idle Power Consumption	4.0W (Class 2)
	Display	29 characters x 5 lines
		(168 x 80 pixels)
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	<i>y</i>
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	J/J

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ <b>ଏ</b> SPEAKER	✓ <b>Ω</b> HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
X ☑ MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ (+C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>CCC</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
4610SW	Multi-Grey	700381957
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord.	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

### 10.8.21 4620

These phones are similar in physical appearance and functions. However the 4620SW's PC data pass-through port gives priority to phone traffic.

4620IP/4620SW	Feature	4620IP	4620SW
A PARINE	Connects via	IP network.	
	IP Office Release	2.0+	
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 24 (12 buttons x 2 pages).	
500	Headset Socket	7	
\$ 000 ±	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J	
	Message Waiting Lamp	·	
	PoE Class/Typical Idle Power Consumption	4W (Class 3)	5.9W (Class 3)
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines (168 x 132 pixels)	
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24*, EU24BL*.	
	Upgradeable Firmware	<b>/</b>	
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	<b>√/</b> ×	1/3

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ 【 SPEAKER	✓ <b>Ω</b> HEADSET	<b>√ ¼</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
X ☑ MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ C→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
4620IP	Multi-Grey	700212186
4620SW	Multi-Grey	700259674
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

<sup>\*</sup>When used with an EU24 or EU24BL unit, a 1151 type power supply unit must be used to power the phone.

### 10.8.22 4621

The 4621 is similar in physical appearance and function to the 4620SW. However the 4621SW includes a backlight function for the screen.

4621SW	Feature	4621SW
	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	3.0(577)+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (12 buttons x 2 pages).
0000	Headset Socket	<b>y</b>
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
	Message Waiting Lamp	<b>7</b>
	PoE Class/Typical Idle Power Consumption	5.75W (Class 2)
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines
		(168 x 132 pixels)
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24*, EU24BL*.
	Upgradeable Firmware	<b>7</b>
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	J/J

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ 【 SPEAKER	✓ <b>Ω</b> HEADSET	✓ 🕻 MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
X ☑ MESSAGES	✓ <b>≌</b> HOLD	✓ (+C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
<b>√ (</b> DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
4621SW	Multi-Grey	700345192
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24*	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL*	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

<sup>\*</sup>When used with an EU24 or EU24BL unit, a 1151 type power supply unit must be used to power the phone.

### 10.8.23 4625

The 4625 is similar in physical appearance and function to the 4621SW. However the 4625SW includes a color display.

4625SW	Feature	4625SW
SASA	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	3.2+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (12 buttons x 2 pages).
5-0-0	Headset Socket	<b>√</b>
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
2000	Message Waiting Lamp	<b>J</b>
	PoE Class/Typical Idle Power Consumption	6.45W (Class 3)
The state of the s	Display	29 characters x 7 lines
4111		(168 x 132 pixels)
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24*, EU24BL*.
	Upgradeable Firmware	✓
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	J/J

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ 【 SPEAKER	✓ <b>Ω</b> HEADSET	✓ 🕻 MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
X ☑ MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J 【↓ DROP	✓ <b>   ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
4625SW	Multi-Grey	700381551
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24*	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL*	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

<sup>\*</sup>When used with an EU24 or EU24BL unit, a 1151 type power supply unit must be used to power the phone.

### 10.8.24 5402

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 2402D. However the 5402 phone is only supported on IP Office.

In addition to the two physical programmable buttons, the FEATURE key plus 0-9, \* and # can be used to access an addition 12 programmable slots.



Standard DCP Phone Keys			
X 4 SPEAKER	× $\Omega$ HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
✓    MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ (+C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
5402	Multi-Grey	700345309
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

## 10.8.25 5410

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 2410. However the 5410 phone is only supported on IP Office.

5410	Feature	Detail
4403	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	√ 12 (6 buttons x 2 pages).
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
	Message Waiting Lamp	<b>√</b>
	Display	29 characters x 5 lines.
		(168 x 80 pixels).
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	J

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ ◀ SPEAKER	✓ <b>Ω</b> HEADSET	✓ <b>%</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ (+C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>   ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ CCC CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
5410	Multi-Grey	700345291
5410 (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700382005
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

### 10.8.26 5420

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 2420. However the 5420 is only supported on IP Office.

5420D	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
Alaysa Alaysa	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (8 buttons x 3 pages)
	Headset Socket	7
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
	Message Waiting Lamp	7
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24*, 201B.
	Upgradable Firmware	<b>/</b>

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ ¶ SPEAKER	✓ <b>∩</b> HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
✓   MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>III⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
5420D	Multi-Grey	700339823
5420D (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700381627
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
201B Recorder Interface Module		700381635
20B Stand	20B Stand	
EU24*	Multi-Grey	700381817
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

<sup>\*</sup>When used with an EU24 unit, a 1151 type power supply unit must be used to power the phone.

# 10.8.27 5601

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 4601. However the 5601 phone is only supported on IP Office. The 5601+ is the RoHS compliant version that has replaced the previous 5601 IP model but is otherwise the same.

5601	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP Network.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 2
	Headset Socket	×
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	×/×
	Message Waiting Lamp	7
	PoE Class/Typical Idle Power Consumption	3.5W (Class 2)
	Display	None.
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradeable Firmware	1
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	×/×

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
<b>X ◀</b> SPEAKER	× $\Omega$ HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
✓   MESSAGES	✓ <b>≌</b> HOLD	✓ (+C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J (→ DROP	✓ <b>III⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
5601IP	Multi-Grey	700345366
5601+ (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700381908
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

# 10.8.28 5602

The 5602IP and 5602SW phones are similar in physical appearance and functions. However the 5602SW includes a PC data pass-through port which gives priority to phone traffic. The 5602IP is no longer available from Avaya. The 5602SW+ is the RoHS compliant version that has replaced the previous 5602SW model but is otherwise the same.

5602IP/5602SW	Feature	5602IP	5602SW	
and	Connects via	IP network.	IP network.	
	IP Office Release	3.0+		
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 2 □>-   <b>↓</b> *		
	Headset Socket	X		
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/X		
	Message Waiting Lamp	<b>/</b>		
The state of the s	PoE Class/Typical Idle Power Consumption	4.1W (Class	2)	
	Display	24 character	s x 2 lines.	
	Supported Add-Ons	None.		
	Upgradable Firmware	<b>/</b>		
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	X/X	J/J	

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
X SPEAKER	× $\Omega$ HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
✓    MESSAGES	✓ ¥ HOLD	✓ (+C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
5602IP	Multi-Grey	700345341
5602SW	Multi-Grey	700381825
5602SW+ (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700381932
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

# 10.8.29 5610

5610	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network.
Alząja	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (6 buttons x 4 pages).
The South of the second of the	Headset Socket	7
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J.
	Message Waiting Lamp	7
	PoE Class/Typical Idle Power Consumption	5W (Class 2)
	Display	29 characters x 5 lines
		(168 x 80 pixels)
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	·
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	J/J

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ 【 SPEAKER	✓ <b>Ω</b> HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
X ☑ MESSAGES	✓ ¥ HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ VOLUME DOWN
<b>√ (</b> DROP	✓ <b>   ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
5610SW	Multi-Grey	700345333
5610SW (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700381965
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

# 10.8.30 5620

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 4620SW. It is no longer available from Avaya, having been replaced by the 5621.



Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ 【 SPEAKER	✓ <b>Ω</b> HEADSET	<b>√ ¼</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
X ⊠ MESSAGES	✓ ¥ HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J (+ DROP	✓ <b>III⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
5620IP	Multi-Grey	700339815
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24*	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL*	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

<sup>\*</sup>When used with an EU24 or EU24BL unit, a 1151 type power supply unit must be used to power the phone.

# 10.8.31 5621

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 4621SW.

5621	Feature	5620IP
A PARISA	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	3.2+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (12 buttons x 2 pages).
3-00-	Headset Socket	<b>7</b>
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
1 = ====	Message Waiting Lamp	<b>7</b>
	PoE Class/Typical Idle Power Consumption	5.9W (Class 3)
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines (168 x 132 pixels)
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24*, EU24BL*.
	Upgradeable Firmware	✓
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	J/J

Standard DCP Phon	e Keys		
✓ ¶ SPEAKER	✓ <b>Ω</b> HEADSET	✓ 🕻 MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
★ MESSAGES	✓ <b>≌</b> HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
5621SW	Multi-Grey	700345982
5621SW (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700385982
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24*	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL*	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

<sup>\*</sup>When used with an EU24 or EU24BL unit, a 1151 type power supply unit must be used to power the phone.

# 10.8.32 6408D

These phones no longer available from Avaya.



Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ 【 SPEAKER	× $\Omega$ HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
X ⊠ MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
× C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Item	SAP Code	
6408D+ (Grey)	70020100	
6408D+ (White)	70020092	
6408 Stand (Grey)	108933169	
6408 Stand (White)	108933177	

# 10.8.33 6416D

These phones no longer available from Avaya. An additional 24 programmable buttons can be added using an XM24 and power supply unit.

6416D	Feature	Detail
Asaya	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	1.0+.
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 16 <b>□</b> .
	Headset Socket	7
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
	Message Waiting Lamp	<b>7</b>
	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	XM24
	Upgradable Firmware	×

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ <b>ଏ</b> SPEAKER	✓ <b>Ω</b> HEADSET	✓ 🕻 MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
X ☑ MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ C→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
6416D+M	Grey	108807611
	White	108807603
6416/6424D+M Stand	Grey	848219127
	White	848219119
XM24	Grey	700406523
	White	700406515
XM24 Stand	Grey	108272378
	White	108272386
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

# 10.8.34 6424D

An additional 24 programmable buttons can be added using an XM24 and power supply unit.

6424D	Feature	Detail
MAYA	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	1.0+.
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 24 <b>□</b> .
	Headset Socket	7
S E E	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
	Message Waiting Lamp	7
	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	XM24
	Upgradeable Firmware	×

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓ <b>ଏ</b> SPEAKER	✓ <b>∩</b> HEADSET	<b>√ %</b> MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
X ☑ MESSAGES	✓ ≌ HOLD	✓ (→C TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
J C→ DROP	✓ <b>Ⅲ⊅</b> REDIAL	✓ <b>(((</b> CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
6424D+M	Grey	108807595
	White	108807587
6416/6424D+M Stand	Grey	848219127
	White	848219119
XM24	Grey	700406523
	White	700406515
XM24 Stand	Grey	108272378
	White	108272386
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700345447
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700345454
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord.	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

# 10.8.35 T3 Classic

This phone is supported in Europe only (U-Law only). The T3 Classic has 2 Link ports for optional add-on T3 Headset and or T3 DSS units (up to 2 further T3 DSS units can be chained from the first T3 DSS).

The IP Office supports T3 UPN and IP phones. It does not support T3 IPN phones. Previous restrictions against using T3 phones on systems with other types of digital stations no longer apply.

T3 Classic	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	3.1+. [Not Small Office Edition]
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 4.
	Headset Socket*	<b>y</b>
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	3/3
	Message Waiting Lamp	~
	Upgradeable Firmware	×

\*Using optional T3 Headset Link unit.

Variant	Colour	SAP Code
T3 UPN Classic	Black	700380272
	White	700380306
T3 IP Classic	Black	700414733
	White	700414725
T3 DSS Unit	Black	700380322
	White	700380330
T3 DSS Expansion Unit	Black	700380348
	White	700380355
T3 IP Power Supply Unit		700414766
AEI/Headset Link for T3 IP		700414774
Power Supply for T3 IP DSS		700414790
Headset Link for T3 UPN		700380363

# 10.8.36 T3 Comfort

This phone is supported in Europe only (U-Law only). The T3 Classic has 2 Link ports for optional add-on T3 Headset and or T3 DSS units (up to 2 further T3 DSS units can be chained from the first T3 DSS).

The IP Office supports T3 UPN and IP phones. It does not support T3 IPN phones. Previous restrictions against using T3 phones on systems with other types of digital stations no longer apply.

T3 Comfort	Feature	T3 Comfort
	Connects via	DS ports.
	IP Office Release	3.1+ [Not Small Office Edition]
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 10.
	Headset Socket*	<b>√</b>
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
	Message Waiting Lamp	<b>√</b>
	Upgradeable Firmware	×

\*Using optional T3 Headset Link unit.

Variant	Colour	SAP Code
T3 UPN Comfort	Black	700380280
	White	700380314
T3 IP Comfort	Black	700414758
	White	700414741
T3 DSS Unit	Black	700380322
	White	700380330
T3 DSS Expansion Unit	Black	700380348
	White	700380355
T3 IP Power Supply Unit		700414766
AEI/Headset Link for T3 IP		700414774
Power Supply for T3 IP DSS		700414790
Headset Link for T3 UPN		700380363

# 10.8.37 T3 Compact

This phone is supported in Europe only (U-Law only). The T3 Classic has 1 Link port for optional add-on T3 Headset or T3 DSS units (up to 2 further T3 DSS units can be chained from the first T3 DSS).

The IP Office supports T3 UPN and IP phones. It does not support T3 IPN phones. Previous restrictions against using T3 phones on systems with other types of digital stations no longer apply.

T3 Compact	Feature	T3 Compact
	Connects via	DS ports.
	IP Office Release	3.1+ [Not Small Office Edition]
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 10.
	Headset Socket	7
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	J/J
	Message Waiting Lamp	7
	Upgradeable Firmware	×

\*Using optional T3 Headset Link unit.

Variant	Colour	SAP Code
T3 UPN Compact	Black	700380264
	White	700380298
T3 IP Compact	Black	700414717
	White	700414709
T3 DSS Unit	Black	700380322
	White	700380330
T3 DSS Expansion Unit	Black	700380348
	White	700380355
T3 IP Power Supply Unit		700414766
AEI/Headset Link for T3 IP		700414774
Power Supply for T3 IP DSS		700414790
Headset Link for T3 UPN		700380363

# 10.9 Phone Add-Ons

Some IP Office phones support button modules which provided the phone with additional programmable buttons. The number of button modules supported per phone and per system are as follow:

- EU24/EU24BL: (4620, 4621, 5420, 5620, 5621/4620, 4621, 5620, 5621)
  Up to 8 EU24s per system (24 buttons each, max 196 buttons).
- **DSS4450:** (4412D+, 4424D+)
  Up to 8 DSS4450 modules per system (maximum of 2 per DS expansion module, including the IP406v2) (50 buttons each, max 400 buttons).
- BM32: (1616)
  Up to 16 BM32s supported (32 buttons each, up to 512 buttons).
- XM24: (6416+, 6424+)
  Up to 10 XM24 units per system (maximum of 2 per DS expansion module, including the IP406v2) with a maximum of 1 per 6416+/6424+ phone (24 buttons each giving a maximum of 240 XM24 buttons).
- T3 Series: (All T3 phones)
  Up to 30 T3 DSS modules supported. (36 buttons each, up to 1080 buttons). T3 DSS buttons are not included in the overall system limit for additional button module buttons.

Excluding T3 DSS modules only, where different types of button module are being used on the same system, in addition to the individual limits above, the maximum combined number of buttons per system is 512, regardless of whether the buttons are programmed or not.

IP Office Installation
IP Office
Page 300
IP Office
15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

# 10.9.1 4450

The DSS4450 works in association with the 4412D and 4424D telephones, each of which can support up to two DSS4450 adjuncts.

Each DSS4450 provides an additional 60 programmable keys with single red lamps except for the bottom two rows which have green lamps. The DSS4450 requires an auxiliary Avaya power supply unit and must be used with the cables supplied.

IP Office supports a maximum 2  $\times$  4450 units on each Digital Station expansion module, including the IP406 V2 control unit. A maximum of 8  $\times$  4450 units total are supported on the whole IP Office system. For additional limitations see Phone Add-Ons.

This phone is not supported on the IP500 DS8 Extension Card. For the IP500 it will work on external Digital Station Expansion Modules.

4450	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DSS port on phone.
5	Supported by	4412D+, 4424D+
SSSS	Maximum per phone	2.
	Maximum per DS module/ control unit	2.
	Maximum per IP Office system	8.
3	Additional requirements	4450 power supply unit on phone.
	IP Office Release	1.0+
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 60 (50x 10x 10x 10x 10x 10x 10x 10x 10x 10x 1

Item	SAP Code
4450 (Black)	108199696
4450 (White)	108199407
Small 4400 Series Stand (Black)	108541194
Small 4400 Series Stand (White)	108541202
Power Supply for 4450	108596412

# 10.9.2 BM32

This add on provides an additional 32 twin-LED programmable buttons for 1616 phones. The BM32 does not require its own power supply connection, instead it draws power from the phone to which it is connected.

- Up to 3 BM32 units can be connected in a chain from a single 1616.
- To support a BM32 the phone must be powered by an individual 1600 Series Power Adapter.
- Up to a maximum of 16 BM32 units are supported on the whole IP Office system. For IP Office 5.0+ this limit has been increased to 32 BM32 units on the system. For additional limitations see <a href="Phone Add-Ons">Phone Add-Ons</a>.
- The BM32 buttons cannot be used for appearance functions such as call and line appearances.

Item	SAP Code
BM32 BUTTON MODULE	700415573
Accessories	
1600 SERIES BM32 CABLE - REPLACEMENT	700415581
1600 SERIES BM32 BOND BRIDGE - REPLACEMENT	700415599
1616/BM32 PLASTIC LABEL COVERS (20) - REPLACEMENT	700415672
1600 SERIES BM32 FLIP STAND - REPLACEMENT	700432800
Paper Labels	
1616/BM32 PAPER DESI LABELS - PACKAGE OF 50 LABELS (8.5" x 11")	700415656
1616/BM32 PAPER DESI LABELS - PACKAGE OF 50 LABELS (A4)	700434236

# 10.9.3 EU24

Provides an additional 24 programmable buttons. For additional limitations see <a href="Phone Add-Ons">Phone Add-Ons</a>.

Only the cable supplied with the EU24/EU24BL should for connection to the EU24/EU24BL. This cable should only
be connected to the port marked EU24 on suitable phones. Doing otherwise will cause damage to the EU24/EU24BL
and the equipment to which it is attached.

EU24	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	EU24 port on phone.
= -	Supported by	2420, 4620, 4621, 4625, 5420, 5620, 5621.
	Maximum per phone	1.
	Maximum per IP Office	8.
	Additional Requirements	A 1151 Type power supply unit must be used to power the phone.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	<b>J</b> 24.

Item		SAP Code
EU24 1XU-A Expansion Module	Multi-Grey	700381817
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

# 10.9.4 EU24BL

Provides an additional 24 programmable buttons. The EU24BL is physically similar to the EU24 but includes a backlight function that matches 4621 phone. For additional limitations see  $\underline{\text{Phone Add-Ons}}$ .

• Only the cable supplied with the EU24/EU24BL should for connection to the EU24/EU24BL. This cable should only be connected to the port marked EU24 on suitable phones. Doing otherwise will cause damage to the EU24/EU24BL and the equipment to which it is attached.

EU24BL	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	EU24 port on phone.
	Supported by	4620, 4621, 4625, 5620, 5621.
	Maximum per phone	1.
a diameter	Maximum per IP Office	8.
	Additional requirements	A 1151 Type power supply unit must be used to power the phone.
	IP Office release	3.1+.
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 24.
	Programmable Buttons	<b>✓</b> 24.

Item		SAP Code
EU24BL 2XU-A Backlighted Expansion Module	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

# 10.9.5 T3 DSS

The T3 DSS provides an additional 36 programmable keys for phones in the supported T3 series. The T3 DSS is moulded and designed to be attached to the associated phone. Signalling is achieved by cable connection to the Link port on the T3 phone. A further two T3 DSS units can be chained from the first T3 DSS. For additional limitations see <a href="Phone Add-Ons">Phone Add-Ons</a>

FeatureDetailConnects viaLink port on phone.Supported byT3 Compact, T3 Classic, T3 ComfortMaximum per phone3.Maximum per DS module-.Additional requirementsNone.IP Office release3.1+.Programmable Buttons✓ 36.

Item	Colour	SAP Code
T3 DSS Unit	Black	700380322
	White	700380330
T3 DSS Expansion Unit	Black	700380348
	White	700380355

# 10.9.6 201B RIM

The 201B Recorder Interface Module (RIM) is supported for use with 2420 and 5420 phones. It provides the phone with a 3.5mm mini-RCA jack socket for connection of recording devices. It also provides two headset sockets which can be used in place of the phones existing headset socket (the phone and the RIM sockets can not be used at the same time).

• The 201B is the RoHS compliant replacement for the 201A. The 20B stand is the RoHS complaint replacement for the 20A stand.

To install the 201B, the phones existing stand must be removed and be replace by a 20B stand (also called the 20B Module Adapter Base). This is an expanded stand that includes two slots, into one of which the 201B can be inserted. However only one 201B is supported per phone.

Use of the 20B and therefore the 201B requires the phone to be powered by a 1151D1 or 1151D2 power supply unit. Full installation instructions are included with the 20B Stand.

Item		SAP Code
201B Recorder Interface Module		700381635
20B Stand		700381650
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
1151D1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

# 10.9.7 XM24

Connects to the XM24 port on the base of 6416 and 6424 phones. Requires the phone to have a separate power supply using an Avaya 1151D1 or 1151D2 power supply unit and a power outlet socket are required. For additional limitations see <a href="Phone Add-Ons">Phone Add-Ons</a>.

XM24	Feature	XM24
Au.	Connects via	XM24 port on phone.
	Supported by	6416+, 6424+
B B	Maximum per phone	1.
88	Maximum per DS module/control unit	2.
8 8	Maximum per IP Office system	10
E E	Additional requirements	1151D1 or 1151D2 PSU for phone.
	IP Office Release	1.0+.
	Programmable Buttons	<b>√</b> 24.

Item		SAP Code
XM24	Grey	700406523
	White	700406515
XM24 Stand	Grey	108272378
	White	108272386
1151D1 Power Supply.	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

# 10.10 Applications

This section outlines the requirements for various IP Office applications. These are just outlines, for full details refer to the specific installation manuals for those applications and to the IP Office Technical Bulletins.

1. The use of Windows 2000 operating systems is no longer tested or supported with IP Office 5.0 applications.

IP Office Installation Page 308 **IP Office** 

# 10.10.1 Call Status

This is a simple application that shows current calls in progress on the IP Office system. It is intended for use by IP Office installers and maintainers. It has been replaced by the <a href="System Status Application">System Status Application</a> and is included in the IP Office Admin suite to assist with maintenance of pre-4.0 IP Office systems.

Details	
IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)	
License X No license required.	

# **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements	
RAM	64MB
Hard Disk Free Space	50MB
Processor:	
- Pentium	PIII 800MHz
- Celeron	Celeron 3 800Mhz
- AMD	Athlon B 65-0MHz

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	1
2008 Server	X
Client OS:	
2000 Professional	X
XP Professional	7
Vista Business/Enterprise	1
Vista Ultimate	<b>/</b>

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Call Status	CallStatus\callstatus.exe	UDP 50798.

# 10.10.2 Compact Business Center (CBC)

This is a licensed application. It receives data from the <u>IP Office Delta Server</u> application. The CBC is able to show details of calls handled by up to 3 selected hunt groups. It can also display details of IP Office trunk usage. The CBC retains calls details for 31 days.

As of December 2008 the IP Office Compact Business Center application is no longer sold by Avaya.

Details	
DVD	Compact Contact Center 5.2 DVD (700451545)
License	✓ Compact Business Center (IP400 CBC - 171993)

# **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements	
RAM	256MB
Hard Disk Free Space	10GB
Processor:	
- Pentium	PIII 800Mhz
- Celeron	Celeron 3 800Mhz
- AMD	Athlon B 650Mhz
Additional Apps:	
- Delta Server	Required on same PC or subnet.

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	<b>√</b>
2008 Server	×
Client OS:	
2000 Professional	×
XP Professional	<b>✓</b>
Vista Business/Enterprise	<b>✓</b>
Vista Ultimate	<b>√</b>

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
CBC	CCC\CBC\CBC.exe	

# 10.10.3 Compact Contact Center (CCC)

CCC is a reporting application designed for use in call centers. It provides a range of both real-time and historical reporting options. CCC consists of CCC Server applications that receive call information from the IP Office Delta Server, and a number of client applications for the display of that information. CCC and its clients are controlled by a range of licenses entered into the IP Office configuration.

The CCC server applications are listed below. Typically they are installed onto the same PC:

#### CCC Archiver

The Archiver manages the collection and storage of call activity information.

#### Wallboard Server

Wallboards provide current information on the number of calls waiting, response times and service levels. Wallboard Manager provides the ability to control both physical wallboards and PC wallboards. The Wallboard server must be installed on the same PC as the Delta Server.

#### The CCC clients are:

#### • Call Center View (CCV):

Provides a realtime information about call center activity.

#### Alarm Reporter

Provides real-time and past 7-days information on alarms that have occurred within the call center.

#### PC Wallboard:

The PC Wallboard allows call center agents and supervisors to display real-time call center performance information on their Windows PC screen.

#### · Report Manager:

Provides in depth historical reporting on calls, agents and groups.

#### • Workforce Management:

This application allows CCC to share information with a third-party agent scheduling application - Blue Pumpkin.

Details	
DVD	Compact Contact Center 5.2 DVD (700451545)
License	✓ Licensed application. See below.
Additional	Delta Server installed.

# **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements			XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server			
Variant	RAM	HD	Pentium	Celeron	AMD			10	Sei vei	Server
CCC Server	512MB	10GB	Pentium 4 2.8GHz	1.7GHz	Athlon XP 3000+ All Athlon64 chips.	×	×	×	<b>J</b> [1]	\ 
" plus VMPro	512MB	30GB*	Pentium 4 2.8GHz.	Not tested.	Athlon XP 3000 + All Athlon 64	×	X	×	<b>J</b> [1]	<b>y</b>
Wallboard Server	128MB	10GB	Pentium 3 800Mhz	Celeron 3 800Mhz	Athlon B 650MHz	1	×	<b>J</b> [1]	×	×
Wallboard Client	128MB*	10GB	PIII 800MHz	Celeron 3 800MHz	Athlon B 650Mhz	1	×	<b>J</b> [1]	×	×
PC Wallboard	1					7	×	<b>J</b> [1]	×	×
Call Center View (CCV)						7	×	<b>J</b> [1]	×	×
CCC Reporter	Any PC w	ith Intern	et Explorer (	5.0 or higher		1	X	[1]	<b>J</b> [1]	<b>y</b>

- 1. The use of Windows 2000 operating systems is no longer tested or supported with IP Office 5.0 applications.
- 2. If VM Pro and CCC are run on the same server, CCC is limited to up to a maximum of 25 agents, 8 ports of VM Pro and on Windows server operating systems only.
- 3.\*For all voicemail servers, also allow 1MB per minute for messages and greeting storage.
- 4.\*For Windows XP minimum RAM 256MB.
- 5. The Wallboard Server MUST reside on the same PC as the Delta Server. Any Dual Core CPU of 1.8Ghz and higher is supported.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports	Ports
Archiver	CCC\Archiver\ArchiverSQL.exe	TCP 8081.	UDP 8081.
		TCP 8082.	UDP 8082.
		TCP 8083.	UDP 8083.
		TCP 8084.	UDP 8084.
		TCP 8085.	UDP 8085.
		TCP 8086.	UDP 8086.
		TCP 8087.	UDP 8087.
		TCP 8088.	UDP 8088.
		TCP 8089.	UDP 8089.
CCV	CCC\CallCentreView\CallCentreView.exe		
CCC Alarm Reporter	CCC\CCVAlarmReporter\CCVAlarmReporter.exe		
Wallboard DBMGR	CCC\DBMgr\DBMgr.exe		
PC Wallboard	CCC\PCWallboard\PCWallboard.exe		TCP 2127.
			UDP 2127.
CCC Reporter Admin	CCC\Reporting\Admin.exe	TCP 8081.	UDP 8081.
		TCP 8082.	UDP 8082.
		TCP 8083.	UDP 8083.
		TCP 8084.	UDP 8084.
		TCP 8085.	UDP 8085.
		TCP 8086.	UDP 8086.
		TCP 8087.	UDP 8087.
		TCP 8088.	UDP 8088.
		TCP 8089.	UDP 8089.
			UDP 50800.
CCC Reporter	CCC\Reporting\bin\CCCReporter.exe		
CCC User Access	CCC\User Access\CCCUserAccess.exe		
Wallboard Server	CCC\WBServer\WbServer32.exe		TCP 2127.
			UDP 2127.

# **CCC Licenses**

License shows the name as it appears in the IP Office configuration. RFA Name is the name used for the orderable item.

License	Description	RFA Name		SAP
CCC Server	Enables the CCC Server application (Archiver and Wallboard Manager) with support for 1 supervisor, reporting on 5 agents, and one PC Wallboard.  This license is a pre-requisite for all the following CCC licensing.		171994	
CCC Agents	Enables various numbers of additional	IP400 CCC AGT	5	171995
	agents (5, 10, 20, 50) for CCC reporting.		10	174469
			20	174470
			50	174471
CCC Supervisors	Enables additional supervisors (1, 5, 10,	IP400 CCC SUP	1	171996
	20) up to the maximum of 21 supported supervisors.	" 5	5	184730
	Super visors.	" 10	10	184731
		" 20	20	184732
CCC PC Wallboards	Enables additional CCC PC Wallboards for 5, 10, 20, 50 agents.	IP400 CCC PCW	5	172786
		" 10	10	174472
		" 20	20	174473
		" 50	50	174474
CCC Spectrum Wallboards	Enables the operation of between 4 Spectrum wallboards (not Ferrograph). Licenses are cumulative up to a maximum of 16 wallboards.	IP400 CCC Wallboard	4	176196
Report Viewer	Allows additional users (5, 10, 20) access to	IP400 CCC Report	5	184726
	historic reports.		10	184727
			20	184728
CCC Agent Rostering	Enables the Agent Rostering Interface for CCC which provides connection to a 3rd party Agent Rostering package (Blue Pumpkin). No longer supported.	IP400 CCC Rostering		171997
CCC Designer (users)	Enables CCC Report Designer, which permits a supervisor to design and customize their own reports. One license per user. Note: requires the user to have Crystal Report Writer software.	IP400 CCC Designer		171999

### 10.10.4 Conference Center

This is a server application that is accessed via web browser. It allows users with a Conferencing Center password to book conferences. Details of the people to invite to a conference can be entered and those people set to receive either an email invite or, using <u>IP Office Voicemail Pro</u>, a call asking them to join the conference.

Access to the Conferencing Center for configuration and conference booking is via web browser.

Details	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
License	✓ Conferencing Center (IP400 Conferencing Center RFA - 182302)
Languages	English, French, German, Italian, Latin Spanish, Swedish.

### **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements				
RAM	512MB			
Hard Disk Free Space	80GB			
Processor:				
- Pentium	P4 2.8GHz			
- Celeron	Not tested.			
- AMD	Athlon XP 3000+, Athlon64			
Additional Apps:				
- Web Browser	Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher.			

Operating System Support		
Server OS:		
2000 Server <sup>[1]</sup>	<b>J</b> [1]	
2003 Server	<b>y</b>	
2008 Server	×	
Client OS:		
2000 Professional*[1]	<b>J</b> [1]	
XP Professional	×	
Vista Business/Enterprise	×	
Vista Ultimate	×	

- Client PC: For conference booking and web conference access any Windows PC running Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher.
- For conversion of files to .MHT format, Microsoft Office is required on the client PC.
- When IP Office Conferencing Center is installed, 5 conference slots are reserved by the IP Office control unit for its own use (call recording, etc) and are not available to IP Office Conferencing Center or for general conference usage.
- Windows XP Professional, 2000 Professional can be used but would typically support a maximum of 10 web clients. To support more than 10 clients a server with IIS will be required. Any Dual Core CPU of 2.4Ghz and higher is supported.
- For pre-IP Office 5.0, this application requires the IP500 control unit to include an **IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional** license. This no longer applies for IP Office 5.0+.
- 1. The use of Windows 2000 operating systems is no longer tested or supported with IP Office 5.0 applications.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Conferencing Center	ECSConference\ConferenceService.exe	ALL 50801. ALL 8089.
		UDP 50791.
		UDP 50795.

### 10.10.5 ContactStore

The Voicemail Pro can be used for manual and automatic call recording. Normally those recordings are placed into the mailbox specified for the user or hunt group whose call is being recorded and are then treated as normal messages.

• For IP Office 5.0, the supported version of ContactStore for IP Office is 7.4.

Contact Store allows those recordings to be redirected into a database on the ContactStore PC. This allows recordings to be archived and searched separately from user messages. This application requires entry of a license into the IP Office configuration.

User access to the Contact Store is via web browser. Internet 6.0 or higher is supported.

Details	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
License	✓ VMPro Recordings Administrators (IP400 ContactStore for IPO RFA - 187166)

#### **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements				
RAM	512MB			
Hard Disk Free Space	10GB*			
Processor:				
- Pentium	P4 2.4GHz			
- Celeron	Not tested.			
- AMD	Athlon XP 3000+, Athlon64			
Additional Apps:				
- Web Browser	Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher.			

Operating System Support		
Server OS:		
2000 Server <sup>[1]</sup>	<b>J</b> [1]	
2003 Server	<b>✓</b>	
2008 Server	×	
Client OS:		
2000 Professional <sup>[1]</sup>	<b>J</b> [1]	
XP Professional	<b>√</b>	
Vista Business/Enterprise	×	
Vista Ultimate	×	

- If run on the same PC as the Voicemail Pro, apart from meeting the requirements of Voicemail Pro:
  - ContactStore must use a separate disk partition from Voicemail Pro.
  - Minimum hard disk free space increases to 20GB\* and Pentium processor to P4 2.8GHz minimum.
- \*1: For all voicemail servers, also allow 1MB per minute for messages and greeting storage.
- \*2: Also allow 7.2MB per hour for recordings in the Contact Store disk partition.
- Recordings and data are stored in an MSDE database. This is created during installation of the Contact Store software.

#### **Ports**

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Contact Store	Witness\tomcat5024\bin\tomcat5.exe	TCP 8888.
		UDP 50791. UDP 50795.

1. The use of Windows 2000 operating systems is no longer tested or supported with IP Office 5.0 applications.

# 10.10.6 Customer Call Reporter (CCR)

This is a server application that is accessed via web browser.

Details	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
License	✓ See below.
Languages	Dutch, English (UK), English (US), French, Italian, Brazilian Portuguese, Russian and Spanish.

# **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	2GB	
Hard Disk Free Space	30GB	
Processor:		
- Pentium	Intel Pentium D945 Dual Core	
- Celeron	Not tested.	
- AMD	AMD Athlon 64 4000+.	
Additional Apps:		
- Web Browser	<ul> <li>Google Chrome</li> <li>Mozilla Firefox 3.0.</li> <li>Windows Safari 2.0.</li> <li>Internet Explorer 8.</li> <li>Internet Explorer 7.</li> </ul>	

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	<b>7</b>
2008 Server	7
Client OS:	
2000 Professional*	×
XP Professional	×
Vista Business/Enterprise	×
Vista Ultimate	×

# Licenses

e presence of at least one CCR SUP ense is required to use CCR. The ense is available in 1, 5, 10, 15 and 25 pervisor versions. Multiple licenses can added to achieve the number of pervisors required up to 30 pervisors. One license instance is nsumed for each supervisor configured the IP Office Customer Call Reporter stem, regardless of whether the apervisor is logged in.	IPO CUSTMR CALL REPORTER <i>Y</i> SPV LIC	10 20	217655 217656 217657
added to achieve the number of pervisors required up to 30 pervisors. One license instance is nsumed for each supervisor configured the IP Office Customer Call Reporter stem, regardless of whether the apervisor is logged in.			
the IP Office Customer Call Reporter stem, regardless of whether the spervisor is logged in.		20	217657
ables support for agents. The license is			
ailable in 1, 5, 10, 20, 50 and 75 agent	IPO CUSTMR CALL REPORTER X AGT LIC	1	217650
ultiple license can be added to achieve		5	217651
the number of agents required up to the maximum of 150		10	217652
r each SBCC agent configured on the IP fice system,		20	217653
regardless of whether the Agent is logged in to an extension or to SBCC.		50	217654
be used for IP Office Customer Call porter. The CCC licenses are used as lows:  CCC Server Enables 1 supervisor and 5 agents.  CCC Supervisors Enables the equivalent number of supervisors.  CCC Agents	IPO CUSTMR CALL REPORTER UPG LIC		217658
rsulte ax er fice gas b epole C Er C Er	sions.  tiple license can be added to achieve number of agents required up to the kimum of 150  Ints. One license instance is consumed each SBCC agent configured on the IP ce system, ardless of whether the Agent is ged in to an extension or to SBCC.  Icense allows existing CCC licenses are used for IP Office Customer Call orter. The CCC licenses are used as lows:  CC Server  Inables 1 supervisor and 5 agents.  CC Supervisors  Inables the equivalent number of upervisors.	sions.  tiple license can be added to achieve number of agents required up to the kimum of 150  nts. One license instance is consumed each SBCC agent configured on the IP ce system, ardless of whether the Agent is ged in to an extension or to SBCC.  Ici license allows existing CCC licenses are used for IP Office Customer Call orter. The CCC licenses are used as lows:  CC Server  nables 1 supervisor and 5 agents.  CC Supervisors  nables the equivalent number of upervisors.  CC Agents  nables the equivalent number of	stions.  tiple license can be added to achieve number of agents required up to the kimum of 150  nts. One license instance is consumed each SBCC agent configured on the IP ce system, ardless of whether the Agent is ged in to an extension or to SBCC.  Ilicense allows existing CCC licenses are used for IP Office Customer Call orter. The CCC licenses are used as lows:  CC Server  nables 1 supervisor and 5 agents.  CC Supervisors  nables the equivalent number of upervisors.  CC Agents  nables the equivalent number of

# 10.10.7 Delta Server

Applications such as CCC and CBC do not communicate directly with the IP Office system. They communicate across the LAN with a PC running the IP Office Delta Server application. This application receives call information from the IP Office systems which it then shares with other applications. The Delta Server does not require a license in the IP Office configuration. Only one Delta Server can be used with each IP Office system.

Delta Server installs as a Windows service. Access to the application is through web browser on the PC to the address http://localhost:8080.

### • Delta Server SMDR Output

The Delta server can be configured to output a call log of all calls made and received by the IP Office system. This is called a SMDR call log. The Delta sever send these records to an SMDR file stored on the PC and which can then be accessed by 3rd-party call logging applications. The Delta Server can also send SMDR records to a remote IP address. Note that IP Office 4.2+ systems can send SMDR direct from the IP Office control unit to an IP address without requiring the Delta Server application.

Details	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
License	X No license required.
Languages	Brazilian Portuguese, English (UK), English (US), Dutch, French, French Canadian, Italian, Latin Spanish, Spanish.

### **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	256MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	10GB	
Processor:		
- Pentium	PIII 800MHz	
- Celeron	Any 1.7GHz	
- AMD	Any 1.4GHz	
Additional Apps:		
- Web Browser	Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher.	

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	<b>y</b>
2008 Server	<b>y</b>
Client OS:	
2000 Professional	×
XP Professional	<b>y</b>
Vista Business/Enterprise	×
Vista Ultimate	×

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Delta Server PWA	CCC\DeltaServer\DeltaServerHTTPPasswordAssistant. exe	
SMDR CR	CCC\DeltaServer\SMDRClientResponse.exe	
SMDR SR	CCC\DeltaServer\SMDRServerResponse.exe	
Delta Server Service V5	CCC\DeltaServer\DeltaServerService.exe	TCP 8080. UDP 50800.
Delta Server Service Management Assistant V5	CCC\DeltaServer\DeltaServerManagementAssistant. exe	

# 10.10.8 Feature Key Server

This application is required for IP Office systems where licenses are being validated against a parallel or USB port Feature Key dongle. It must be installed on the same PC as the dongle. The application installs as a service and appears as an icon in the PC's system tray. It has no configuration settings.

Feature key server is not required for IP Office systems with a serial port dongle attached directly to the IP Office control unit or for IP500 systems.

Details	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
License	X No license required.

# **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements	
RAM	256MB
Hard Disk Free Space	1MB
Processor:	
- Pentium	PIII 800MHz
- Celeron	Celeron 3 800Mhz
- AMD	Athlon B 650MHz
Additional Apps:	

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	<b>y</b>
2008 Server	×
Client OS:	
2000 Professional	×
XP Professional	×
Vista Business/Enterprise	×
Vista Ultimate	×

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Feature Key Server	KeyServe\keyserve.exe	UDP 50800.

# 10.10.9 Manager

This tool is used to access all parts of the IP Office configuration. Different levels of access can be defined to control which parts of the configuration the Manager user can view and alter. Manager is also used to upgrade the software files used by an IP Office system. When running is also acts as a TFTP server from which some Avaya phones can request new software.

Note that IP Office Manager's software level is always two higher than the IP Office core software with which it is release. For example IP Office 4.0 core software is release with IP Office Manager 6.0.

IP Office Manager 6.2 is backwards compatible and can be used to manage IP Office systems running software from IP Office 2.1 upwards.

Details	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
Languages	English, Brazilian, Dutch, French, German, Italian, Spanish (Mexican).
License	X No license required.

### **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	256MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	1GB*	
Processor:		
- Pentium	PIII 800MHz	
- Celeron	Celeron 3 800Mhz	
- AMD	Athlon Opteron, Athlon64/XP	
Additional Apps:		
NET2	Installed with Manager if not already present.	

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	7
2008 Server	7
Client OS:	
2000 Professional	×
XP Professional	7
Vista Business/Enterprise	7
Vista Ultimate	7

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
IP Office Manager	Manager\manager.exe	TCP Port 50802.
		TCP Port 50804.
		TCP Port 50812.
		UDP Port 50798.

<sup>\*</sup>Includes disk space required for .NET2 component.

# 10.10.10 Monitor

Monitor (also know as System Monitor) is a tool that can show all activity on the IP Office system in great detail. As a consequence, interpretation of Monitor traces requires a high-level of data and telephony protocol knowledge. However, all IP Office installers and maintainers must understand how to run Monitor when necessary as Avaya may request copies of Monitor traces to resolve support issues.

For IP Office 4.0 and higher, the <u>System Status Application</u> has been added to provide more easily interpreted information than is provided by Monitor.

• Two versions of Monitor are included in the IP Office Admin applications suite, one for IP Office 4.0 systems and one for pre-4.0 IP Office systems. Care should be taken to ensure that the correct version is used when monitoring an IP Office system.

Details	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
Languages	English only.
License	X No license required.

# **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	128MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	10GB	
Processor:		
- Pentium	PIII 800MHz	
- Celeron	Celeron 3 800Mhz	
- AMD	Athlon B 650MHz	
Additional Apps:		

Operating System Support		
Server OS:		
2000 Server	×	
2003 Server	<b>/</b>	
2008 Server	<b>✓</b>	
Client OS:		
2000 Professional	×	
XP Professional	<b>-</b>	
Vista Business/Enterprise	<b>/</b>	
Vista Ultimate	<b>✓</b>	

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
System Monitor	Monitor\sysmonitor.exe	UDP 50794.

# 10.10.11 MS-CRM

The Avaya IP Office MS-CRM component allows the IP Office system to be used to make and receive calls for users using the Microsoft MS-CRM application. As of December 2008 the IP Office MS-CRM application is no longer sold by Avaya.

Details	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
Languages	English.
License	✓ License application. See below.

# **PC Requirements: Server**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	128MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	10GB	
Processor:		
- Pentium	P4 2.4Ghz	
- Celeron	Not tested.	
- AMD	Not tested.	
Additional Apps:		
- MS Dynamics CRM3.0		
- IIS 5.0+.		

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	7
2003 Server	7
2008 Server	×
Client OS:	
2000 Professional	×
XP Professional	×
Vista Business/Enterprise	×
Vista Ultimate	×

# **PC Requirements: Client**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	512MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	10GB	
Processor:		
- Pentium	P4 1.4Mhz	
- Celeron	Not tested.	
- AMD	Not tested.	
Additional Apps:		
NET2	Installed by IP Office MS-CRM	
- IP Office TAPI 2.1	software if not detected.	

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	×
Client OS:	
2000 Professional <sup>[1]</sup>	<b>J</b> [1]
XP Professional	<b>✓</b>
Vista Business/Enterprise	×
Vista Ultimate	×

#### Licenses

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP
MS-CRM	Enables IP Office support for MS-CRM.	IP400 Microsoft CRM Intgr	180588

 $1. The use of \underline{\textit{Windows 2000}} \ operating \ systems \ is \ no \ longer \ tested \ or \ supported \ with \ IP \ Office \ 5.0 \ applications.$ 

# 10.10.12 Phone Manager

Phone Manager is an application that allows the user to control and monitor their own phone through their PC. For Avaya phone's that support handsfree operation, Phone Manager can be used to make and answer calls. During usage, the Phone Manager records details of calls made, answered and missed. It can also be configured to show the status of other users on the system. Phone Manager also allows the user to access and change many of the setting stored in the IP Office configuration that relate to their own phone operation, for example their forwarding destination numbers.

Though installed as a single set of software, that same software can operate in several modes:

#### · Phone Manager Lite

The default mode of Phone Manager. Requires no license, this application can be installed for any IP Office user.

#### • Phone Manager Pro

Users configured for Professional Edition mode are able to access a range of additional features. Phone manager Pro requires entry of licenses into the IP Office system. The licenses also control the number of simultaneous Phone Manager Pro users. The user's Phone Manager software then automatically changes from Lite mode to Professional Edition mode.

• Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone (formerly called Phone Manager iPro)

This is a PC softphone mode of Phone Manager operation. The user acts as a VoIP extension, making calls through the speaker and microphone of their PC. This mode requires further licenses in addition to the Phone Manager Pro licenses.

Details	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
Languages	Brazilian, Chinese (Simplified), Danish, Dutch, English, French, Finnish, German, Italian, Korean, Latin Spanish, Norwegian, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish.
License	✓ License application. See below.

### **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements				
RAM	64MB			
Hard Disk Free Space	160MB for Lite/1GB for Pro.			
Processor:				
- Pentium	PIII 800MHz			
- Celeron	Celeron 3 800Mhz			
- AMD	Athlon B 650MHz			
Additional Apps:				

Operating System Support				
Server OS:				
2000 Server	×			
2003 Server	×			
2008 Server	×			
Client OS:				
2000 Professional	×			
XP Professional	<b>y</b>			
Vista Business/Enterprise	7			
Vista Ultimate	<b>y</b>			

• Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone also requires the user PC to have a speaker and microphone installed and the user associated with an IP extension on the IP Office.

IP Office Installation IP Office

## **Ports**

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Phone Manager	Phone Manager\PhoneManager.exe	UDP 50796. UDP 50799.
Phone Manager VOIP Server	Phone Manager\iClaritySvr.exe	UDP 1719. UDP 1720.

## Licenses

License	Description	RFA Name		SAP
Phone Manager Pro (per seat)		IP400 Phone Manager Pro	1	177468
			5	177469
			10	177470
			20	177471
			50	177472
Phone Manager Pro IP Audio	Enables Phone Manager Pro IP	IP400 IPPRO	1	171992
Not	softphone operation for a user.  Note: Also requires the user to have a Phone Manager Pro license.		5	174463
			10	174464
	I a construction of the co		20	174465
			50	174466

- In addition to entering Phone Manager licenses, each user is individually configured for the expected Phone Manager type.
- During operation, the number of Phone Manager license keys available and the number unused can be checked. Run Phone Manager and select **Help | About**. Holding down the Ctrl and Shift keys, click on the software version number.

# 10.10.13 SoftConsole

This is a licensed application. It is intended for telephone system operators or receptionists. Its displays details of calls directed to the user and allows them to quickly see the status of the callers required destination and transfer the call. The SoftConsole user is able to access a range of details about the status of users and groups on the IP Office system.

- The IP Office SoftConsole works in conjunction with a physical IP Office extension phone to provide the speech path for calls. It is not supported for use with an IP softphone.
- Up to 4 simultaneous SoftConsole users can be licensed.

Details		
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)	
Languages	Brazilian, Chinese (Simplified), Danish, Dutch, English, French, Finnish, German, Italian, Korean, Latin Spanish, Norwegian, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish.	
License	✓ License application. See below.	

# **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	128MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	1GB	
Processor:		
- Pentium	PIII 800MHz	
- Celeron	Celeron 3 800Mhz	
- AMD	Athlon B 650MHz	
Additional Apps:		

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	×
2008 Server	×
Client OS:	
2000 Professional	×
XP Professional	7
Vista Business/Enterprise	7
Vista Ultimate	7

## **Ports**

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
SoftConsole	SoftConsole\SoftConsole.exe	UDP 50799.
		UDP 50796.

### Licenses

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP
SoftConsole (users)	Adds one additional SoftConsole user. A maximum of four SoftConsole user can be licensed.	IP400 SoftConsole	171987

# 10.10.14 System Status Application (SSA)

This tool provides a wide range of information about the current status of an IP Office 4.0 or higher system. Its includes available resources and components within the system. This includes details of current call in progress. Details of the number of alarms are recorded and the time date of the most recent alarms.

When required for diagnostics escalation SSA is able to take a snap shot image of the IP Office system's status including a copy of its current configuration.

Use of SSA requires an IP Office service user name and password that has been configured for System Status access in the IP Office's security settings.

Details	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
License	X No license required.

# **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	256MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	1.4GB	
Processor:		
- Pentium	PIII 800MHz	
- Celeron	Celeron 3 800Mhz	
- AMD	Athlon B 650MHz	
Additional Apps:		
- Sun Java Virtual Machine	Installed with SSA if not already present.	

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	<b>y</b>
2008 Server	<b>y</b>
Client OS:	
2000 Professional	×
XP Professional	
Vista Business/Enterprise   ✓	
Vista Ultimate	<b>y</b>

# 10.10.15 TAPI

IP Office TAPI is a client PC application that allows TAPI compliant applications to interact with the IP Office. The IP Office TAPI software can be used in one of two modes, depended on whether it is licensed or not. The same software is installed in either case with the licenses, if any, being entered in the IP Office system configuration.

### 1st Party TAPI

In this unlicensed mode the TAPI software supports control of an individual user's associated extension, allowing a TAPI compliant application to answer (requires a phone that supports handsfree answer) and make calls.

### • 3rd Party TAPI

In this licensed mode, TAPI software can be used to control call function on multiple user extension. This mode is used with CTI Developer applications.

Details	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
License	X Optional. Licenses are required for 3rd party TAPI mode operation.

## **PC Requirements: 1st Party TAPI**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	64MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	50MB	
Processor:		
- Pentium	PIII 800MHz	
- Celeron Celeron 3 800Mhz		
- AMD	Athlon B 65-0MHz	

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	×
2008 Server	×
Client OS:	
2000 Professional	×
XP Professional	1
Vista Business/Enterprise	7
Vista Ultimate	<b>V</b>

## **PC Requirements: 3rd Party TAPI**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	64MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	50MB	
Processor:		
- Pentium	PIII 800MHz	
- Celeron	Celeron 3 800Mhz	
- AMD	Athlon B 65-0MHz	

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	<b>✓</b>
Client OS:	
2000 Professional	×
XP Professional	<b>√</b>
Vista Business/Enterprise	<b>√</b>
Vista Ultimate	<b>√</b>

### **Ports**

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
TAPI2	TAPI\tspi2w.tsp	UDP 50797.

# Licenses

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP
CTI Link Pro	Enables CTI Link Pro functionality (TAPI Link Pro and DEVLink Pro).	IP400 CTI	171988
Wave User	Allows streaming of WAV files, using TAPILink Pro, for 3rd party voice applications. This is a per user license.  Note that TAPI WAV calls use system data channels taken from the same pools as used for voicemail ports.	IP400 TAPI WAV	177466

**System Components: Applications** 

The maximum number of simultaneous TAPI WAV user calls and voicemail users is determined by the IP Office control unit type; Small Office Edition = 10, IP406 = 20, IP412 = 30, IP500 = 40 (IP Office 5.0+) / 30 (pre-IP Office 5.0).		
---	--	--

# 10.10.16 Voicemail Lite

This application is not supported by IP Office 5.0 and higher. It provides voicemail operation for all IP Office users and groups, using the PC hard-disk to store prompts and messages. Only 4 simultaneous connections to leave or play messages are supported.

Details		
DVD	-	
Languages	Chinese (Mandarin), Danish, German, Greek, English UK), English (US), Spanish, Latin Spanish, Finnish, French, French Canadian, Hungarian, Italian, Korean, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Brazilian, Swedish.	
License	X For pre-IP Office 5.0, this application requires the IP500 control unit to include an IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional license.	

# **PC Requirements**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	256MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	2GB*	
Processor:		
- Pentium	P4 1.4GHz.	
- Celeron	Celeron 1.7GHz	
- AMD	Any 1.4GHz	

<sup>• \*</sup>Also allow 1MB per minute for message and prompt storage.

Operating System Support	
Server OS:	
2000 Server	×
2003 Server	7
2008 Server	<b>7</b>
Client OS:	
2000 Professional	×
XP Professional	7
Vista Business/Enterprise	7
Vista Ultimate	<b>V</b>

## **Ports**

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Voicemail Lite	Voicemail Server\VMLite.exe	UDP 50791.

# 10.10.17 Voicemail Pro

This application requires various licenses entered into the IP Office configuration to control the features it offers and the number of simultaneous connections, up to 30 on the IP412 and IP500 control units. The operation of Voicemail Pro can be customized to provide special services.

The Voicemail Pro software can be installed as separate Voicemail Pro client and server parts. This allows the remote administration of the Voicemail Pro server from a PC with just the Voicemail Pro client installed. A copy of the client is automatically installed locally with the Voicemail Pro server.

Source	
DVD	IP Office 5.0 Applications DVD (700472863)
Languages	Chinese (Mandarin and Cantonese), Danish, German, Greek, English (UK), English (US), Spanish, Latin Spanish, Finnish, French, French Canadian, Hungarian, Italian, Korean, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Brazilian, Swedish.
License	✓ See below.

The Voicemail Pro server part of the software consists of several components in addition to the core server software, these are:

### Campaigns

The Voicemail Pro can be configured to run a campaign. This consists of a series of questions for which the Voicemail Pro records the callers answer or key presses. The resulting recordings can then be played back by users. The web aspect of campaigns allows user to perform this playback and processing of campaign recordings via their web browser. This requires an IIS web server to be run on the same PC as the Voicemail Pro software.

### Text to Speech (TTS)

Through adding additional licenses, the Voicemail Pro is able to use the TTS functions of Windows to speak text and numbers to callers in addition to recording prompts. This is intended mainly for scenarios where the Voicemail Pro is obtaining text and number values from a customer database.

### Unified Messaging Service (UMS)

Voicemail Pro supports a feature called voicemail email to send messages or message alerts to a user's email mailbox. This however is a one-way process with no link back to the user's voicemail mailbox on whether the email has been read or deleted. UMS allows this to become a two-way process, where users can play voicemail messages through their email mailbox or voicemail mailbox.

## **Basic Voicemail Pro**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	256MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	2GB*	
Processor:		
- Pentium	P4 1.4GHz	
- Celeron	Any 1.7GHz	
- AMD	Any 1.4GHz.	

<sup>\*</sup>Also allow 1MB per minute for message and prompt storage.

Operating System Support		
Server OS:		
2000 Server	×	
2003 Server	<b>√</b>	
2008 Server	✓	
Client OS:		
2000 Professional	×	
XP Professional	<b>√</b>	
Vista Business/Enterprise	<b>✓</b>	
Vista Ultimate	✓	

## Voicemail Pro plus UMS Web Voicemail and/or Campaigns

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	512MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	2GB*	
Processor:		
- Pentium	P4 2.8GHz	
- Celeron	Not tested.	
- AMD	Athlon XP 3000+, Athlon 64	

<sup>\*</sup>Also allow 1MB per minute for message and prompt storage.

Operating System Support		
Server OS:		
2000 Server	×	
2003 Server	<b>y</b>	
2008 Server	<b>y</b>	
Client OS:		
2000 Professional	×	
XP Professional	×	
Vista Business/Enterprise	×	
Vista Ultimate	×	

- Both Web Campaigns and UMS Web Voicemail require the IIS web server on the voicemail server PC to be enabled.
- UMS Web Voicemail will install PHP if not detected as already installed.
- UMS (IMAP or Web Voicemail) cannot be installed if IMS is installed and vice versa.

## **Voicemail Pro plus IMS**

Minimum PC Requirements		
RAM	512MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	2GB*	
Processor:		
- Pentium	P4 2.8GHz	
- Celeron	Not tested.	
- AMD	Athlon XP 3000+, Athlon 64	

<sup>\*</sup>Also allow 1MB per minute for message and prompt storage.

Non OS Applications	IMS
Microsoft Exchange 2000	Yes
Microsoft Exchange 2003	Yes
Microsoft Exchange 2007	Yes
Microsoft Outlook 2003	Yes
Microsoft Outlook 2007	No

Operating System Support		
Server OS:		
2000 Server	×	
2003 Server	<b>y</b>	
2008 Server	×	
Client OS:		
2000 Professional	×	
XP Professional	×	
Vista Business/Enterprise	×	
Vista Ultimate	×	

## Voicemail Pro plus IVR and or TTS

Minimum PC Requirements: Basic Voicemail Pro		
RAM	512MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	20GB*	
Processor:		
- Pentium	P4 2.8GHz	
- Celeron	Not tested.	
- AMD	Athlon XP 3000+, Athlon 64	

Also allow 1MB per minute for message and prompt storage.

<sup>\*</sup>Generic TTS only. The current ScanSoft TTS provided with Voicemail-Pro is not supported on Vista.

Operating System Support		
Server OS:		
2000 Server	×	
2003 Server	<b>y</b>	
2008 Server	<b>y</b>	
Client OS:		
2000 Professional	×	
XP Professional	<b>y</b>	
Vista Business/Enterprise	<b>√</b> *	
Vista Ultimate	<b>√</b> *	

• If the database being queried is located on the VM Pro server the query speed of the database will be affected by the amount of memory available. Please take into account the memory requirements of the database being queried.

## **Voicemail Pro plus Compact Call Center**

Minimum PC Requirements: Basic Voicemail Pro		
RAM	512MB	
Hard Disk Free Space	10GB*	
Processor:		
- Pentium	P4 2.8GHz	
- Celeron	Not tested.	
- AMD	Athlon XP 3000+, Athlon 64	

Also allow 1MB per minute for message and prompt storage.

Operating System Support		
Server OS:		
2000 Server	×	
2003 Server	✓	
2008 Server	/	
Client OS:		
2000 Professional	×	
XP Professional	×	
Vista Business/Enterprise	×	
Vista Ultimate	×	

 VM Pro and CCC can be run on the same server up to a maximum of 25 agents, 8 ports of VM Pro. Any Dual Core CPU of 2.4Ghz and higher is supported.

# **Ports**

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Voicemail Pro Service	Voicemail Pro\VM\vmprov5svc.exe	UDP 50791. UDP 50795. ALL 50801. ALL 8089.
VMPro Database	Voicemail Pro\VM\VMPDBSvc.exe	
VPIM Client	Voicemail Pro\VPIMClient.exe	
VMPro VPIM DBSVR	Voicemail Pro\VPIM\vpimdbsvr.exe	
VMPro VPIM Receiver	Voicemail Pro\VPIM\VPIMReceiver.exe	
VMPro VPIM Server	Voicemail Pro\VPIM\VPIMServer3.exe	
IMS Admin	Voicemail Pro\IMS\IMSAdmin.exe	
IMS Service Restart	Voicemail Pro\IMS\IMSServiceRestart.exe	
IMS Gateway Service	Voicemail Pro\IMS\UMServer.exe	TCP 445. TCP 593. UDP 445. UDP 593
IMS Voice Service	Voicemail Pro\IMS\VMServer.exe	
IMS Security	Voicemail Pro\VM\IMSSec.exe	
IMS Client for Outlook	%ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IMS Client\UMSForm.exe	TCP 445. TCP 593. UDP 445. UDP 593.

## Licenses

License shows the name as it appears in the IP Office configuration. RFA Name is the name used for the orderable item.

License	Description	RFA Name		SAP
AUDIX Voicemail	Enables IP Office to use a remote Intuity Audix or Modular Messaging for voicemail. Does not require a local Voice Mail Pro server.	IP400 AUDIX		177467
Voicemail Pro (4 ports)	Enables Voicemail Pro plus 4 ports.	IP400 Voicemail Pro		171991
Additional Voicemail Pro	Adds additional ports (2, 4, 8 or 16) to an	IP400 Voicemail 2	2	174459
(ports)	existing Voicemail Pro, up to the maximum number of ports supported by the IP Office control unit type.	Pro	<i>4</i> 8	174460 174461
	Maximum: Small Office Edition = 10, IP406 V2 = 20, IP412 = 30, IP500 = 40.		16	174462
VMPro Networked Messaging	Enables VPNM (Voicemail Pro Networked Messaging) functionality within Voicemail Pro. This allows message exchange with remote Voicemail Pro systems and Avaya Interchange systems.			182297
Integrated Messaging	Enables IMS Pro operation with Voicemail Pro. Enables synchronization to MS Exchange email systems with a form within Outlook to control voicemail playback.	IP400 Integrated Messaging Pro		171990
VMPro TTS (Scansoft)	Enables use of text to speech facilities using Avaya supplied TTS software with Voicemail Pro. One license per simultaneous instance of TTS usage.	IP400 Avaya TTS		182299
VMPro TTS (Generic)	Enables use of text to speech facilities using third party TTS software with Voicemail Pro. One license per simultaneous instance of TTS usage.	IP400 3rd Party TTS	5	182303
VMPro VB Script	Enables VB Script functionality with Voicemail Pro.	IP400 VB Scripting		182300
VMPro Database Interface	Enables 3rd party database support within Voicemail Pro call flows.	IP400 3rd Party IVR		182298
VMPro Recordings Administrators	Enables integration between Voicemail Pro and the Avaya Contact Store for IP Office application. ContactStore can be run unlicensed from the date of the first recorded call.	IP400 ContactStore for IPO		187166
UMS Web Services	for users to access their mailbox. Licensed UMS Web Services users who hot desk to a remote system remain licensed against their	IPO LIC VMPRO	1	217880
		UMS	5	217881
			10	217882
	home IP Office system.		20	217883
			50	217884

For pre-IP Office 5.0, Voicemail Pro required the IP500 control unit to include an **IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional** license. This no longer applies for IP Office 5.0+.

# 10.10.18 IP Office Ports

Most PC firewalls will request the user to allow various exceptions when a newly installed application is first run. However this may not always be the case, especially if the firewall is located elsewhere than the user's PC.

### **Adding Firewall Exceptions**

The file avayafw.bat can be used to open up the necessary firewall exceptions for IP Office applications. The file can be downloaded from <a href="http://marketingtools.avaya.com/knowledgebase/tools/firewall">http://marketingtools.avaya.com/knowledgebase/tools/firewall</a>.

It only works for:

- The default Windows XP/Windows 2003 firewall.
- The application must be installed for the exception to be created.
- The application must be installed in the default location.

Whilst avayafw.bat only works subject to the conditions above, for other firewalls study of this file will indicate the necessary application files and ports for which exceptions need to be created.

# **Ports Used**

The list below details many of the IP ports used by IP Office control units and IP Office applications. Many of these are standard ports for different IP traffic protocols.

- ◀ Indicates a listening port on the IP Office control unit. ► indicates a port to which the IP Office sends, for example to a PC running an IP Office application.
- \* Indicates that the port and or protocol can be changed.

Port		Protocol		Function
25*	<b>&gt;</b>	SMTP	TCP	Email system alarms from the IP Office to SMTP server. For IP Office 4.2 also used for Voicemail Email on Embedded Voicemail.
37	►	Time	UDP	Time requests from the IP Office to a Time Server (RFC868).
53	4	DNS	UDP	Domain Name Service responses.
67	4	BOOTP/DHCP	UDP	DHCP server operation.
68	<b>&gt;</b>	BOOTP/DHCP	UDP	DHCP client operation.
69	4	TFTP	UDP	File requests to the IP Office.
69	►	TFTP	UDP	File requests by the IP Office.
80	4	HTTP	ТСР	HTTP File requests.
161*	4	SNMP	UDP	From SNMP applications.
162*	►	SNMP Trap	UDP	To addresses set in the IP Office configuration.
500	4	IKE	UDP	Key exchange for IPSec protocol.
389*	►	LDAP	ТСР	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol.
520	►	RIP	UDP	To and from the IP Office to other RIP devices. For RIP1 and RIP2 (RIP1
520	4	RIP	UDP	compatible) the destination address is a subnet broadcast, eg. 192.168.42.255. For RIP2 Multicast the destination address is 224.0.0.9.
1701	4	L2TP	UDP	Layer 2 tunneling protocol.
1718	4	H.323	UDP	H.323 Discovery
1719	4	H.323 RAS	UDP	H.323 Status. VoIP device registering with the IP Office.
1720	<b>&gt;</b>	H.323/H.245	UDP	H.323 Signalling. Data to a registered VoIP device.
2127	<b>&gt;</b>	(UDP)	UDP	PC Wallboard to CCC Wallboard Server.
3478	<b>&gt;</b>	SIP	UDP	Port used for STUN requests from the IP Office to the SIP provider.
5005	4	RTCPMon	UDP	RTCP Monitoring information from Avaya H323 phones.
5060	<b>4</b>	SIP	UDP/ TCP*	SIP Line Signalling
8080	<b>&gt;</b>	HTTP	ТСР	Browser access to the Delta Server application.
8089	<b>-</b>	Enconf	UDP	From the IP Office to the Conferencing Center Server Service. User access to the Conferencing Center is direct via HTTP sessions.
8888	►	HTTP	TCP	Browser access to the IP Office ContactStore (VRL) application.
49152 to 53247 *	◆	RTP/RTCP	UDP	Dynamically allocated ports used during VoIP calls for RTP and RTCP traffic. The port range can be adjusted through the System   Gatekeeper tab.
50791	<b>&gt;</b>	IPO Voicemail	UDP	To voicemail server address.
50793	4	IPO Solo Voicemail	UDP	From IP Office TAPI PC with Wave drive user support.
50794	4	IPO Monitor	UDP	From the IP Office Monitor application.
50795	4	IPO Voice Networking	UDP	Small Community Network signalling (AVRIP) and BLF updates. Each system does a broadcast every 30 seconds. BLF updates are sent required up a maximum of every 0.5 seconds.
50796	4	IPO PCPartner	UDP	From an IP Office application (for example Phone Manager or SoftConsole). Used to initiate a session between the IP Office and the application.
50797	4	IPO TAPI	UDP	From an IP Office TAPI user PC.
50798	►	(UDP)	UDP	BT Fusion variant. No longer used.
50799	<b>&gt;</b>	IPO BLF	UDP	Broadcast to the IP Office LAN and the first 10 IP addresses registered from other subnets.
50800	<b>&gt;</b>	IPO License Dongle	UDP	To the License Server IP Address set in the IP Office configuration.
50801	4	EConf	UDP	Conferencing Center Service to IP Office.
50802	4	Discovery	TCP	IP Office discovery from Manager.
50804 *	4	Service Access Protocol	ТСР	IP Office configuration settings access.

Port		Protocol		Function
50805 *	◀		ТСР	" TLS Secure.
50808	4		ТСР	IP Office system status access.
50812 *	4		ТСР	IP Office security settings access.
50813 *	◀	]	ТСР	" TLS Secure.

• CDR/SMDR from the IP Office is sent to the port number and IP address defined during configuration and using either TCP or UDP as selected.

### **Ports**

IP Office Monitor can be used to display IP packet details including the source and destination Port numbers. As well as displaying the port numbers (in decimal), IP Office Monitor also displays the names of more commonly used ports including IP Office specific ports.

For example "src = 23" is interpreted as "src = 23 (Telnet)".

The list below details the ports currently decoded by IP Office Monitor. For a full list of assigned non-IP Office ports see http://www.iana.org/assignments/port-numbers.

- 20 File Transfer [Default Data]
- 21 File Transfer [Control]
- 23 Telnet
- · 25 Simple Mail Transfer
- 37 Time
- 43 Who Is
- 53 Domain Name Server
- 67 Bootstrap Protocol Server
- 68 Bootstrap Protocol Client
- 69 Trivial File Transfer
- 70 Gopher
- 79 Finger
- 80 World Wide Web-HTTP
- 115 Simple File Transfer Protocol
- 123 Network Time Protocol
- 137 NETBIOS Name Service
- 138 NETBIOS Datagram Service
- 139 NETBIOS Session Service

- 156 SQL Service
- 161 SNMP
- 162 SNMPTRAP
- 179 Border Gateway Protocol
- 1719 H.323Ras
- 1720 H.323/H.245
- 50791 IPO Voicemail
- 50792 IPO Network DTE
- 50793 IPO Solo Voicemail (i.e. Wave driver for TAPI)
- 50794 IPO Monitor
- 50795 IPO Voice Networking
- 50796 IPO PCPartner
- 50797 IPO TAPI
- 50798 IPO Who-Is response
- 50799 IPO BLF
- 50800 IPO License Dongle
- 50801 EConf

### **Protocols**

IP Office Monitor, as well as displaying the Protocol number (in decimal) of packets, also displays the names of the more common Protocols. For example "pcol = 1" is decoded as "pcol = 1" (ICMP)".

Protocol numbers currently decoded by IP Office Monitor are:

- 1 Internet Control Message [ICMP]
- 2 Internet Group Management [IGMP]
- 6 Transmission Control [TCP]
- 8 Exterior Gateway Protocol [EGP]
- 9 Interior Gateway Protocol [IGP]
- 17 User Datagram [UDP]
- 41 Ipv6 [IPV6]
- 46 Reservation Protocol [RSVP]
- 47 General Routing Encapsulation [GRE]
- 58 ICMP for IPv6 [IPv6-ICMP]
- 111 IPX in IP[IPX-In-IP]
- 115 Layer Two Tunneling Protocol [L2TP]
- 121 Simple Message Protocol [SMP]

# 10.10.19 Operating System Summary

The following table gives a summary of the operating systems on which the IP Office applications that are part of the IP Office 5.0 release have been tested and therefore are supported. While the applications may function of other operating systems, they will not have been tested by Avaya and so any faults reported will not be fixed.

Refer to the sections on the individual application for full details of operating system requirements and minimum PC requirements.

IP Office Application	Server			Client			
	2000[1]	2003	2008	2000 Pro <sup>[1]</sup>	XP Pro	Vista	
				Pro	PIO	Business/ Enterprise	Ultimate
Compact Contact Center: Server	7	7	X	Х	X	×	×
": Wallboard Server	×	X	X	<b>/</b>	<b>√</b>	×	X
": Wallboard Client	×	×	×	<b>/</b>	<b>-</b>	×	×
": PC Wallboard	×	×	×	<b>/</b>	<b>-</b>	×	X
": Call Center View	×	X	X	<b>/</b>	<b>√</b>	×	×
": CCC Reporter	1	7	X	1	<b>-</b>	×	×
Conferencing Center	7	7	X	7	X	×	×
ContactStore	<b>7</b>	1	×	1	-	<b>-</b>	<b>√</b>
Customer Call Reporter	×	7	7	1	7	<b>✓</b>	<b>√</b>
Delta Server	X	7	7	×	7	X	X
Feature Key Server	×		×	×	7	×	×
<u>Manager</u>	×	7	7	×	7	<b>7</b>	<b>√</b>
Monitor	×	<b>-</b>	7	×	7	-	<b>√</b>
MS-CRM: Server	<b>V</b>		×	×	7	×	×
MS-CRM: Client	X	×	×	7	7	X	×
Phone Manager Lite	×	×	×	×	7	7	<b>√</b>
Phone Manager Pro	×	×	×	×	7	<b>7</b>	
Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone	X	×	×	×	7	<b>7</b>	<b>√</b>
SoftConsole	×	×	×	×	7	7	<b>√</b>
System Status Application	×	7	7	×	7	<b>7</b>	<b>√</b>
TAPI: (1st Party)	×	×	×	X	7	~	<b>y</b>
": (3rd Party/WAV)	×	<b>V</b>	X	X	<b>V</b>		<b>-</b>
Voicemail Lite	×	<b>V</b>	7	X	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>√</b>
Voicemail Pro: Basic	×	<b>✓</b>	7	X	<b>-</b>	-	-
": plus IMS	×	<b>y</b>	×	Х	X	×	×
": plus UMS Web Voicemail and or Campaigns	×	<b>y</b>	7	X	×	×	×

- 1. The use of Windows 2000 operating systems is no longer tested or supported with IP Office 5.0 applications.
- 2. Microsoft Windows 95, 98, ME, and NT4 operating systems have not been supported for IP Office applications for several releases. While the applications may function of these operating systems, they have not been tested with IP Office 5.0 and any faults reported will not be fixed.
- 3. The Vista operating systems Vista Home Basic and Vista Home Premium are not supported.
- 4. Currently only 32-bit versions of operating systems are supported for IP Office applications.

### IP Office Applications Operating System/Service Pack Support Policy

When a new PC Operating System or Service Pack is released by Microsoft, Avaya will aim to support the new OS or Service Pack within 6 months of release. This time is required to re-certify the applications through the Software Verification and Field Trial programs. Support will then be announced in a Technical Tip or Bulletin.

# 10.11 Licence Keys

License	Description	RFA Name		SAP
Advanced Small Community Networking	<ul> <li>This license is used to enable remote hot desking, advertising hunt groups and distributed hunt groups within a Small Community Network.</li> <li>For remote hot desking a license is required on the system to which a user hot desks.</li> <li>For distributed and advertised hunt groups a license is required on each system.</li> </ul>	IPO LIC ADV NTWKG	ANCED	202966
SIP Trunk Channels	These licenses are used to configure the maximum number of simultaneous SIP trunk calls supported.	IPO LIC SIP TRNK RFA	1 5 10 20	202967 202968 202969 202970
DECT Integration (ports)	Enables enhanced DECT integration with the IP Office system. Used with Compact DECT and DECT DCU. Not used with Avaya IP DECT.	IP400 CTI DECT	8 16 24	171989 174457 174458
Conferencing Center	Enables the IP Office Conferencing Center application.	IP400 Confer Center	encing	182302
SoftConsole (users)	Adds one additional SoftConsole user. A maximum of four SoftConsole user can be licensed.	IP400 SoftCo	nsole	171987
Compact Business Center	Enables the CBC application for one user.	IP400 CBC		171993
Small Office Edition WiFi	Enables use of the wireless card with the Small Office Edition control unit.	IP400 Access Point		182197
Microsoft CRM Integration (users)	Allows operation between IP Office and MS-CRM server and clients.	IP400 Microsoft CRM Intgr		180588
IPSec Tunneling	Enables the IP Office to initiate and terminate IPSec and L2TP tunnels.	IP400 IPSec VPN		182301
Mobility Features	<ul> <li>Enables the use of the IP Office 3.2+ mobile twinning features.</li> <li>For IP Office 4.2+, the Mobile Twinning license is now called the Mobility Features license, reflecting the fact that it can be used for Mobile Call Control and one-X Mobile Client support in addition to just mobile twinning. The mode of license operation has also changed.</li> <li>Prior to IP Office 4.2, the license was only consumed by users who had Mobile Twinning enabled. For IP Office 4.2 + it is consumed by a user when they are configured for any of the mobility features, including mobile twinning even if they have turned mobile twinning off.</li> <li>For IP Office 4.2+, the license moves with hot desking</li> </ul>	Mobile Twinning	1 5 10 20	195569 195570 195571 195572 195573
	users including within a Small Community Network.			
VPN IP Extensions	IP Office 4.1+. Used in conjunction with the Extension   VoIP   VPN Phone Allowed setting to license the operation of 46XX Series and 56XX Series phones using VPNremote firmware.	VPN Phone	d	213980 213981 213982 213983 213984 213985 213986
IP End-points	Controls the number of 3rd party H323 devices supported by IP Office. No license is required for Avaya 4600 and 5600 series telephones. IP enabled Phone Manager Pro is licensed separately. For IP Office 5.0+, this license is also used to enable SIP extensions.	IP400 IP Endpoint	1 5 10 20 50 100 Trial 5	174956 174957 174958 174959 174960 174961 227040

System Components: Licence Keys

# 10.11.1 IP500

Updated for the IP500 PRI channels license. Also the change for IP500 Voice Networking license.

License	Description	RFA Name		SAP
IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional	Required to upgrade an IP500 from Standard Edition mode to <u>Professional Edition</u> mode. This license is no longer used for IP500 systems running IP Office 5.0+ software.	IP500 IPO EXP UPG T PRO	ГО	202959
IP500 Voice Networking	<ul> <li>For IP Office 4.1+ this license is supported in all modes.</li> <li>For IP Office 5.0+, the additional ports license can be</li> </ul>	IP500 VOICE NTWKG BASE 4 LIC IP500 VOICE NTWKG ADD LIC	4	202960
IP500 Universal PRI (Additional channels)			2 8 32	215180 215181 215182
	mode selected require <b>IP500 Universal PRI (Additional Channels)</b> licenses added to the configuration. These additional channels consume the licenses based on which additional channels are configured as in-service from port 9	IP500 E1 Channels Add	2 8 22	215182 215183 215184 215185
		IP500 E1R2 Channels Add	2 8 22	215186 215187 215188
IP500 VCM Channels	Used with IP500 VCM modules to enable additional channels. Each IP500 VCM base card supports 4 unlicensed channels with additional channels requiring licenses.	IP500 VCM LIC 4 CH		202961 202962
		IP500 VCM LIC 16 CH	+16	202963
		IP500 VCM LIC 28 CH	+28	202964
		IP500 VCM LIC 60 CH	+60	202965

# 10.11.2 CCC

License	Description	RFA Name		SAP
CCC Server	<ul> <li>Enables the CCC Server application (Archiver and Wallboard Manager) with support for 1 supervisor, reporting on 5 agents, and one PC Wallboard.</li> <li>This license is a pre-requisite for all the following CCC licensing.</li> </ul>	IP400 CCC SVR		
CCC Agents	Enables various numbers of additional	IP400 CCC AGT	5	171995
	agents (5, 10, 20, 50) for CCC reporting.		10	174469
			20	174470
			50	174471
CCC Supervisors		IP400 CCC SUP	1	171996
	supervisors	" 5	5	184730
	'	" 10	10	184731
		" 20	20	184732
CCC PC Wallboards	Enables additional CCC PC Wallboards for 5, 10, 20, 50 agents.	IP400 CCC PCW	5	172786
		" 10	10	174472
		" 20	20	174473
		" 50	50	174474
CCC Spectrum Wallboards	Enables the operation of between 4 Spectrum wallboards (not Ferrograph). Licenses are cumulative up to a maximum of 16 wallboards.	IP400 CCC Wallboard	4	176196
Report Viewer	Allows additional users (5, 10, 20) access to	IP400 CCC Report	5	184726
	historic reports.		10	184727
			20	184728
CCC Agent Rostering	Enables the Agent Rostering Interface for CCC which provides connection to a 3rd party Agent Rostering package (Blue Pumpkin). No longer supported.	IP400 CCC Rostering	) CCC Rostering	
CCC Designer (users)	Enables CCC Report Designer, which permits a supervisor to design and customize their own reports. One license per user. Note: requires the user to have Crystal Report Writer software.	IP400 CCC Designer		171999

# 10.11.3 CTI

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP
CTI Link Pro	Enables CTI Link Pro functionality (TAPI Link Pro and DEVLink Pro).	IP400 CTI	171988
Wave User	Allows streaming of WAV files, using TAPILink Pro, for 3rd party voice applications. This is a per user license. Note that TAPI WAV calls use system data channels taken from the same pools as used for voicemail ports. The maximum number of simultaneous TAPI WAV user calls and voicemail users is determined by the IP Office control unit type; Small Office Edition = 10, IP406 = 20, IP412 = 30, IP500 = 40 (IP Office 5.0+) / 30 (pre-IP Office 5.0).		177466

# 10.11.4 Phone Manager

License	Description	RFA Name		SAP
Phone Manager Pro (per seat)	Enables Phone Manager Pro for 1,	IP400 Phone Manager	1	177468
	5, 10, 20, 50, 100 or unlimited users. The user's Phone Manager	Pro	5	177469
	mode is set through the IP Office configuration (User   Telephony   Phone Manager Type).		10	177470
			20	177471
			50	177472
Phone Manager Pro IP Audio	Enables Phone Manager Pro IP softphone operation for a user. Note: Also requires the user to have a Phone Manager Pro license.	IP400 IPPRO	1	171992
Enabled (per user)			5	174463
			10	174464
	lare a mener manager from conser		20	174465
			50	174466

- In addition to entering Phone Manager licenses, each user is individually configured for the expected Phone Manager type.
- During operation, the number of Phone Manager license keys available and the number unused can be checked. Run Phone Manager and select **Help | About**. Holding down the Ctrl and Shift keys, click on the software version number.

# 10.11.5 CCR Licenses

License	Description	RFA Name		SAP
CCR SUP	The presence of at least one CCR SUP license is required to use CCR. The	IPO CUSTMR CALL REPORTER Y SPV LIC	1	217655
	license is available in 1, 5, 10, 15 and 25 supervisor versions. Multiple licenses can be added to achieve the number of supervisors required up to 30 supervisors. One license instance is consumed for each supervisor configured on the IP Office Customer Call Reporter system, regardless of whether the Supervisor is logged in.	SI V LIC	20	217656 217657
CCR Agents	Enables support for agents. The license is available in 1, 5, 10, 20, 50 and 75 agent		1 5	217650 217651
	versions.  Multiple license can be added to achieve the number of agents required up to the		10	217652
			20	217653
	maximum of 150 agents. One license instance is consumed for each SBCC agent configured on the IP Office system, regardless of whether the Agent is logged in to an extension or to SBCC.		50	217654
CCR CCC UPG	This license allows existing CCC licenses to be used for IP Office Customer Call Reporter. The CCC licenses are used as follows:  • CCC Server Enables 1 supervisor and 5 agents.  • CCC Supervisors Enables the equivalent number of supervisors.  • CCC Agents Enables the equivalent number of agents.	IPO CUSTMR CALL REPORTER UPG LIC		217658

# 10.11.6 VoiceMail

License shows the name as it appears in the IP Office configuration. RFA Name is the name used for the orderable item.

License	Description	RFA Name		SAP
AUDIX Voicemail	Enables IP Office to use a remote Intuity Audix or Modular Messaging for voicemail. Does not require a local Voice Mail Pro server.	IP400 AUDIX		177467
Voicemail Pro (4 ports)	Enables Voicemail Pro plus 4 ports.	IP400 Voicemail Pro		171991
Additional Voicemail Pro (ports)	Adds additional ports (2, 4, 8 or 16) to an existing Voicemail Pro, up to the maximum	P400 Voicemail 2 Pro 4		174459
. ,	number of ports supported by the IP Office control unit type.		8	174460 174461
	Maximum: Small Office Edition = 10, IP406 V2 = 20, IP412 = 30, IP500 = 40.		_	174462
VMPro Networked Messaging	Enables VPNM (Voicemail Pro Networked Messaging) functionality within Voicemail Pro. This allows message exchange with remote Voicemail Pro systems and Avaya Interchange systems.			182297
Integrated Messaging	Enables IMS Pro operation with Voicemail Pro. Enables synchronization to MS Exchange email systems with a form within Outlook to control voicemail playback.	IP400 Integrated Messaging Pro		171990
VMPro TTS (Scansoft)	Enables use of text to speech facilities using Avaya supplied TTS software with Voicemail Pro. One license per simultaneous instance of TTS usage.	IP400 Avaya TTS		182299
VMPro TTS (Generic)	Enables use of text to speech facilities using third party TTS software with Voicemail Pro. One license per simultaneous instance of TTS usage.	IP400 3rd Party TTS		182303
VMPro VB Script	Enables VB Script functionality with Voicemail Pro.	IP400 VB Scripting		182300
VMPro Database Interface	Enables 3rd party database support within Voicemail Pro call flows.	IP400 3rd Party IVI	?	182298
VMPro Recordings Administrators	Enables integration between Voicemail Pro and the Avaya Contact Store for IP Office application. ContactStore can be run unlicensed from the date of the first recorded call.	IP400 ContactStore for IPO		187166
UMS Web Services	Enables use of UMS Web Voicemail and IMAP	IPO LIC VMPRO	1	217880
	for users to access their mailbox. Licensed UMS Web Services users who hot desk to a	UMS	5	217881
	remote system remain licensed against their		10	217882
	home IP Office system.		20	217883
			50	217884

For pre-IP Office 5.0, Voicemail Pro required the IP500 control unit to include an **IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional** license. This no longer applies for IP Office 5.0+.

# 10.11.7 IP DECT

These licenses are for Avaya IP DECT. They differ from normal IP Office licenses in that they are entered into the Avaya IP DECT Mobility Manager (ADMM) base station of the IP DECT system and not into the configuration of the IP Office system. The licenses are based on the PARK number of the ADMM base station.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP
1 Base Station	Allows a single base station (that being the ADMM).	IP DECT IPO MOBMGR 1 RFP LIC:CU	700379027
2 Base Stations	Allows up to 2 base stations.	IP DECT IPO MOBMGR 2 RFP LIC:CU	700379035
3-5 Base Stations	Allows up to 5 base stations.	IP DECT IPO MOBMGR 3-5 RFP LIC:CU	700379043
>5 Base Stations	Allows up to 32 base stations.	IP DECT IPO MOBMGR >5 RFP LIC:CU	700379050
Upgrade to 2	Upgrade to allow up to 2 base stations.	IP DECT IPO UPG TO A 2 BASE STATION LIC:CU	700379068
Upgrade to 3-5	Upgrade to allow up to 5 base stations.	IP DECT IPO UPG TO A 2 BASE STATION LIC:CU	700379076
Upgrade to >5	Upgrade to allow up to 32 base stations.	IP DECT IPO UPG TO A 2 BASE STATION LIC:CU	700379084

# 10.11.8 Trial Licenses

These licenses differ from other IP Office licenses in that they are time based and expire 60 days after issue. Each trial licenses will only be issued once for a particular Feature Key dongle serial number.

License	RFA Name	SAP
Voicemail Pro Networked Messaging	IPO TRIAL NTWKD MSGING LIC:DS	189776
3rd Party Database/IVR	IPO TRIAL 3RD PARTY IVR RFA LIC:DS	189777
Avaya Text-to-Speech for IP Office (1 port)	IPO TRIAL AVAYA TTS RFA 1 LIC:CU	189778
VB Scripting	IPO TRIAL VB SCRIPTING RFA LIC:DS	189779
Conferencing Center	IPO TRIAL CONF CENTER RFA LIC:DS	189780
Third Party Text to Speech (1 port)	IPO TRIAL 3RD PRTY TTS RFA LIC:CU	189781
Voicemail Pro (4 ports)	IPO TRIAL VM PRO RFA LIC:DS	189782
SoftConsole (1 user)	IPO TRIAL SOFTCONSOLE/BLF RFA LIC:CU	189783
Phone Manager PC Softphone (10 user)	IPO TRIAL IPPRO RFA 10 LIC:CU	189784
Phone Manager Pro (10 user)	IPO TRIAL PMGR PRO RFA 10 LIC:CU	189785
Centralized Voicemail with Avaya Messaging	IPO TRIAL ACM CENTRAL VM LIC:DS	189786
Mobility License (Mobile Twinning)	IPO LIC MOBILE TWINNING TRIAL RFA 5	195574
VPN IPSec	IPO TRIAL IPSEC VPN RFA LIC:DS	189806
IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional	IPO LIC IP500 STD UPG TO PRO TRIAL	205822
IP500 Voice Networking (4 channels)	IPO LIC IP500 VCE NTWK START 4 TRIAL	205823
VPN IP Phone	IPO LIC VPN PHONE 10 TRIAL	213987
UMS Web Services (10 users)	IPO TRIAL UMS 10 LIC:CU	217890
3rd Party IP End Points License	IPO TRIAL LIC IP ENDPOINT RFA 5	227040
SIP Trunk Channel (1 channel)	IPO LIC SIP TRUNKING TRIAL RFA 1	205820
Advanced Small Community Networking	IPO LIC ADVANCED NTWKG TRIAL	205821

# 10.12 Physical Ports

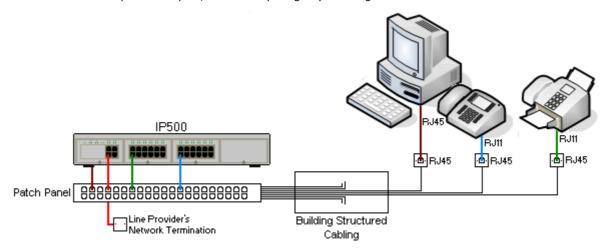
The following port types are found on IP Office systems:

Port	Found on	Description		
ANALOG	ATM4 Trunk card (x4). Analog Trunk expansion module (x16).	Used for the connection of external analog trunks.		
<u>AUDIO</u>	All IP Office control units (x1).	Used for input of an external music on hold source.		
BRI	Quad BRI trunk card (x4). So8 expansion module (x8).	Used for connection of BRI trunks (Quad BRI trunk card) and ISDN terminals devices (So8 module).		
DC I/P	All control units (x1). All expansion modules (x1).	Power input from external power supply unit.		
DS	IP403 control unit (x8). IP406 V2 control unit (x8). Digital Station expansion modules (x16/x30).	Connection of Avaya digital station phones supported by IP Office.		
RS232/DTE	All control units (x1). All expansion modules (x1).	Used for control unit maintenance under Avaya guidance. On expansion modules not used.		
EXPANSION	All control units (x various). All expansion modules except WAN3 (x1).	Used for interconnection of external expansions modules and control units.		
EXT O/P	All control units (x1).	Used to control external relay systems. The port provides two switchable (on, off and pulse) controls.		
$^{+}$	All modules (x1).	Used for connection of functional or protective ground if required.		
<u>LAN</u>	All control units (x various).	10/100Mbps Ethernet LAN ports.		
<u>PF</u>	Analog Trunk expansion module (x2).	Analog power fails ports.		
PHONE (POT)	IP403 control unit (x2). IP406 V2 control unit (x2). Phones expansion modules (x8/x16/x30).	Analog phone extension ports. On older units these ports are labeled as POT ports.		
PRI	Single PRI trunk cards (x1).  Dual PRI trunk cards (x2).	PRI trunk ports.		
USB	IP500 Control Unit (x1).	Not used.		
WAN	All control units (x1). WAN3 expansion module (x3).	WAN interface ports. V.24, V.35 and X.21 through cable selection.		
	Small Office Edition (x1)	RJ45 Ethernet port. Acts as Layer 3 ethernet switch to the modules LAN ports.		

# 10.12.1 Cables

The IP Office systems are designed primarily for use within an RJ45 structured cabling system using CAT3 unshielded twisted-pair (UTP) cabling and RJ45 sockets.

A structured cabling system is one where cables are run from a central RJ45 patch panel in the communications/data room to individual RJ45 sockets at user's desk. All wires in each cable between the patch panel and the desk socket are connected straight through. This arrangement allows devices connected at the patch panel to be swapped to match the type of device that needs to be connected at the user socket. For example, making one user socket a phone port and another user socket a computer LAN port, without requiring any rewiring of the cables in between.



### • Traditional IDC Punchdown Wiring Installations

Where necessary, the far end RJ45 plug can be stripped from IP Office cables and wired into traditional wiring systems using punch-block connectors. This type of installation should be performed by an experienced wiring technician.

### Trunk Connections

The majority of IP Office trunk ports use RJ45 connectors for acceptance of an RJ45-to-RJ45 cable. However, connection at the line providers end may require use of a different plug type in order to match the line providers equipment.

### • RJ11 Phone Connectors

Many phones use RJ11 sockets and are supplied with RJ11-to-RJ11 cables. RJ11 plugs can be inserted into RJ45 sockets and in many case the connection will work. However this is not recommended or supported as the connection lock is not truly positive and may become disconnected. An RJ45-to-RJ11 cable is available for these connections.

# **Standard IP Office Cables**

The following are Avaya standard cables available for use with IP Office systems. The maximum length is applicable if the standard Avaya cable is replaced with an alternate cable.

Cable	Description	SAP Code	Standard Length	Maximum Length
9-Way DTE Cable	Connects to control unit RS232 DTE port. 9-Way D-type plug to 9-way D-type socket.	-	2m/6'6''.	2m/6'6".
Structured Cabling DS Line Cable	Connects from RJ45 sockets to RJ11 socketed DS and analog phones.	700047871	4m/13'2".	See table below.
BRI/PRI Trunk Cable	Connects BRI/PRI trunk ports to the line providers network termination point. RJ45 to RJ45. Red.	700213440	3m/9'10".	-
Expansion Interconnect Cable	Connects the control unit to expansion modules (except WAN3 modules). RJ45 to RJ45. Blue.	700213457	1m/3'3".	1m/3'3".
LAN Cable	Connects from IP Office LAN ports to IP devices. RJ45 to RJ45. Grey.	700213481	3m/9'10".	100m/328'.
LAN Interconnect Cable	Connects WAN3 module to the control unit. Replace with a LAN crossover cable for IP412 control units. Green.	700213465	1m/3'3".	-
LAN Crossover Cable	Used for connection of IP devices to LAN ports on the IP412 control unit. Black	700213473	3m/9'10".	100m/328'.
V.24 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 25-way D-type plug.	700213416	3m/9'10".	5m/16'5''
V.35 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 34-way MRAC plug.	700213424	3m/9'10''.	5m/16'5''
X.21 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 15-way D-type plug.	700213408	3m/9'10".	5m/16'5"

The table below details the maximum total cable distances for DS and analog extensions using different cable types.

	Unshielde	Unshielded Twisted-Pair (UTP) - 50nf/Km				
Telephone	AWG22 (0.65mm)	AWG24 (0.5mm)	AWG26 (0.4mm)	CW1308		
2400/5400 Series	1200m/3937'.	1000m/3280'.	670m/2200'.	400m/1310'.		
4406D Phone	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.		
4412D Phone	1000m/3280'.	700m/2295'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.		
4424D	500m/1640'.	500m/1640'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.		
6400 Series	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.		
T3 Series (Upn)	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	-		
Analog Phones	1000m/3280'.	1000m/ 3280'.	400m/1640'.	800m/2620'.		

# 10.12.2 ANALOG Port

These ports are analog trunk ports. The IP400 ATM4 analog trunk cards and IP500 analog trunk cards only support loop-start trunks. The ATM16 Analog Trunk module supports both loop-start and ground-start trunks, switchable within the IP Office configuration.

ANALOG	Pin	Description
RJ45	1	Not used.
	2	Not used.
1 1	3	Not used.
8 1	4	Ring.
	5	Tip.
	6	Not used.
	7	Not used.
	8	Not used.

• Off-Hook Current: 25mA.

# • 🔔 IMPORTANT

In all IP Office installations, any module being used for analog trunk connections must be connected to a <u>functional</u> earth.

# • 🔔 WARNING

Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module using analog trunk connections must be connected to a <u>protective ground</u> and to <u>surge protection equipment</u>.

# **10.12.3 AUDIO Port**

This port is found on the rear of all IP Office control units. It is used for the input of an external music-on-hold sound source. Note that if the IP Office has loaded an internal music-on-hold sound file, any input from this socket is ignored.

The port is a 3.5mm stereo jack socket suitable for use with the most standard audio leads and connection to the 'headphone' output socket of most audio systems.

The use of a 'headphone' socket allows simple volume adjustment. Connection via a 'Line Out' socket may require additional equipment in order to adjust the volume level.

Pin No.	Description
Common	<b>■</b> Common
Left	←Audio In - Left Channel.
Right	←Audio In - Right - Channel.

• Input impedance: 10k /channel. Maximum a.c. signal – 200mV rms.

# 10.12.4 BRI Port (So)

The BRI ports found on the front of the So8 module are BRI So interface ports for connect to ISDN terminal devices.

For IP Office 4.2+, IP500 BRI trunk daughter cards can be switched from To to So mode. IP400 BRI trunk cards can only be used as To connections.

IP Office			Wire	ISDN Terminal	
BRI	RJ45 BRI		1	PIN	RJ45
RJ45	1	-	White/Orange	1	RJ45
<u> </u>	2	-	Orange/White	2	لبسبا
8 1	3	<b>←</b> Rx-A	White/Green	3	8 1
	4	<b>⇒</b> Тх-В	Blue/White	4	
	5	<b>→</b> Tx-A	White/Blue	5	
	6	<b>←</b> Rx-B	Green/White	6	
	7	-	White/Brown	7	
	8	-	Brown/White	8	

### · Terminating Resistors

100ohm Terminating resistors are required across the transmit and receive wire pairs at each end of the S-bus.

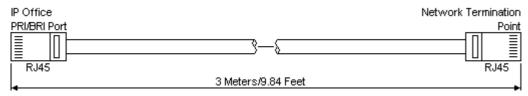
- The IP Office So8 module BRI ports include integral 100ohm terminating resistors.
- For IP Office 4.2+, individual ports of an IP500 BRI daughter card can be switched to So mode. This is done by setting the **Line Sub-Type** to **S-Bus** in the IP Office configuration. In this case terminating resistors must be added at the IP Office end in addition to those at the other end of the S-bus connection.
  - Addition of the necessary termination at the IP Office end can be done using an IP500 BRI So Converter Cable (700458649). This short (25cm/10") cable includes both the necessary terminating resistors and the cable cross-over.
- Many ISDN terminal devices includes terminating resistors. If this is not the case, 100ohm (+/-5%) resistors must be connected across the receive wire pair and the transmit wire pair in the junction box immediately before the last ISDN terminal on the S-bus.

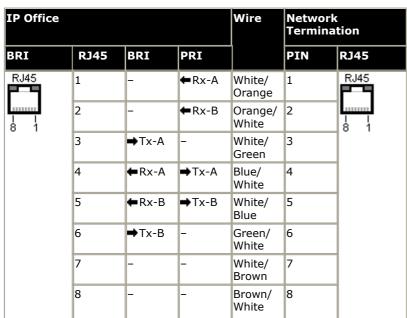
# 10.12.5 BRI Port (To)

These ports are BRI To interface ports for connection to external BRI trunk services. Note that BRI ports found on the IP400 So8 module are BRI-S interface ports for connect to ISDN terminal devices, see BRI Port (So).

### **PRI/BRI Trunk Cable**

This cable is used to connect from IP Office BRI/PRI trunk ports to the line providers network termination equipment. If that equipment does not use RJ45 sockets, the cable may need to be stripped and rewired or an alternate cable used. The appropriate signal pin-outs and wire colours are detailed below.





- Supply: BRI/PRI trunks cards are not supplied with these cables.
- Cable Color: Red.
- SAP Code: 700213440.
- Standard Length: 3m/9'10".
- Maximum Length: 5m/16'5".
- Though not used pins 7 and 8 are through connected for ease of construction.

# 10.12.6 DC I/P Port

Found on all IP Office control units and expansion modules. Used for connection from the external <u>power supply unit</u> supplied with the control unit or module.

- No other type of power supply unit should be used with the module or module unless specifically indicated by Avaya.
- Power cords must not be attached to the building surface or run through walls, ceilings, floors and similar openings.

### 10.12.7 DS Ports

These ports are used for connection from an RJ45 structured cabling system to digital station phones supported by the IP Office.

Though the RJ11 to RJ11 cables supplied with most DS phones can be plugged directly into RJ45 ports including those on IP Office modules, this is not recommend as the connection lock is not positive and may become disconnected.

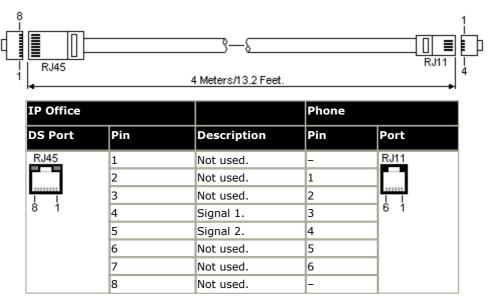
DS ports on Digital Station V1/V2 expansion modules can be connected to <u>out-of-building extensions</u>. If this is the case, connection must be made via suitable protective devices at each end and via each building primary protection. In addition the Digital Station module must be connected to a protective ground.

DS ports on IP Office control units must not be connected to out-of-building extensions.

### **Structured Cabling Line Cord**

This is an RJ45 to RJ11 cable suitable for connection from a structured cabling system RJ45 port to a DS phone. It can also be used for two-wire analog phone extensions.

This cable is not suitable for connection from an Avaya 1151D1/B2 power supply unit to a DS phone with a 4450, EU24 or XM24 add-on module. In those cases the cables supplied with the power supply unit and the add-on module should be used.



• SAP Code: 700047871.

# 10.12.8 RS232 DTE Port

These ports are found on the rear of all IP Office control units and external expansion modules. The DTE ports on external expansion modules are not used.

The RS232 DTE ports on the control units can be used for system maintenance and connection of serial terminal adaptors. On IP400 control units the port can also be used for connection of the IP Office serial port licence key dongle.

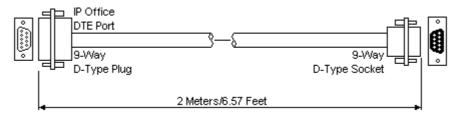
An asynchronous terminal program such as HyperTerminal is also required. Configure this for operation via a PC serial port, as follows:

Bits per second 38	8,400 Paris	None Flow C	Control None
Data bits 8	Stop Bit	ts 1 Settings   Emu	ulation TTY

### **DTE Cables**

These cables are used for system maintenance and diagnostics under Avaya guidance. They can also be used for connection of RS232 serial terminal adaptor equipment to the IP Office control unit.

The cable required depends on the IP Office control unit. This cable is a "Straight through DB9 female to DB9 male serial cable".



IP Office 9-Way RS232 DTE Port	Signal	PC/Terminal Adaptor
3	<b>←</b> Receive data	3
2	<b>→</b> Transmit Data	2
7	←RTS (Request To Send)	7
8	→CTS (Clear To Send)	8
6	→DSR (Data Set Ready)	6
5	■ Ground	5
1	→DCD (Data Carrier Detect)	1
4	←DTR (Data Terminal Ready)	4
9	→RI (Ring Indicator)	9

# 10.12.9 EXPANSION Port

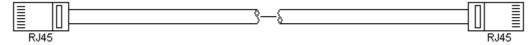
This type of port is found on the rear of IP Office control units and external expansion modules. It is used for connecting the external expansion modules to there parent IP Office control unit.

The connection between these ports should only be done using an Avaya Expansion Interconnect Cable. No other cable type should be used.

- Each external expansion module (except the WAN3 10/100) is supplied with a blue 1 meter (3'3") expansion interconnect cable. This cable must be used when connecting to expansion ports on the rear of a control unit.
- When connecting to expansion ports on an IP500 4-Port Expansion card, a yellow 2 meter (6'6") expansion
  interconnect cable can be used in place of the standard blue cable. 4 Yellow cables are supplied with the IP500
  4-Port Expansion card.
- The WAN3 10/100 module differs in that it connects via a LAN port on its front to one of the control unit's LAN ports. This type of external expansion module is not supported by IP500 control units.
- Pre-IP Office 5.0 IP500 systems require an IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional license to support external expansion modules. This license is not required for IP Office 5.0+.

### **Expansion Interconnect Cable**

The Expansion Interconnect cable is used to link expansion ports between the IP Office control unit and external expansion module (except WAN3 modules).



- Supply: One cable is normally supplied with each external expansion module.
- SAP Code: 1m (3'3") Blue cable 700213457, 2m (6'6") Yellow cable 700472871.

# 10.12.10 EXT O/P Port

These ports are found on the rear of all IP Office control units. They are used for connection to external switching relays. The port uses a standard 3.5mm stereo jack plug for connection.

The IP Office is able to open (high resistance), close (low resistance) or pulse (close for 5 seconds and then open) two switches within the port. Either switch can be operated separately. These switches are intended for activation of external relays in systems such as door opening systems.

• **CAUTION:** In installations where this port is connected to a device external to the building, connection must be via a towerMAX SCL/8 Surge Protector and a protective ground connection must be provided on the IP Office control unit.

EXT O/P	Pin	Description
Switch 2 EXT	1	Switch 1.
2. 3.5mm Stereo	2	Switch 2.
L_J Switch 1	3	0 Volts (Ground/Chassis)

• Switching Capacity: 0.7A.

• Maximum Voltage: 55V d.c.

• On state resistance: 0.7 ohms.

• Short circuit current: 1A.

• Reverse circuit current capacity: 1.4A.

• Ensure that pins 1 and 2 are always at a positive voltage with respect to pin 3.

3.5mm stereo audio jack plugs are frequently sold as pre-wired sealed modules. It may be necessary to use a multi-meter to determine the wiring connections from an available plug. Typically 3 (common to both relays) is the cable screen.

# 10.12.11 LAN Port

These ports are found on IP Office control units and the WAN3 10/100 expansion module. They are used for connection to IP LAN's and IP devices. On the WAN3 10/100 module the port is used for direct connection to a control unit.

All IP Office LAN ports are 10/100Mbps auto-sensing. Operation varies as follows:

#### IP Office 500

This unit has 2 RJ45 Ethernet ports, marked as LAN and WAN. These form a full-duplex managed layer-3 switch. Within the IP Office configuration, the physical LAN port is LAN1, the physical WAN port is LAN2.

### IP460 V2

This unit has 8 RJ45 Ethernet ports marked as LAN 1 to 8. These form a full-duplex unmanaged layer-2 LAN switch. Ports are auto-MDI/MDIX. Within the IP Office configuration the physical LAN ports are LAN1.

### TP412

This unit has 2 RJ45 Ethernet ports marked as LAN 1 to 2. These form a half-duplex managed layer-3 switch. Both ports are fixed MDI crossover ports. Within the IP Office configuration, physical port 1 is LAN1, physical port 2 is LAN2.

### • Small Office Edition

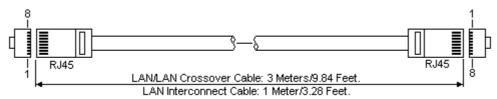
This unit has 4 RJ45 Ethernet ports marked LAN 1 to 4. These form a full-duplex unmanaged layer-2 switch. An addition RJ45 Ethernet socket marked as WAN exists. With the LAN ports this acts as a managed layer-3 switch. Within the IP Office configuration, the physical LAN ports are LAN1, the physical WAN port is LAN2.

The LAN port LED's are used as follows:

- Green: On = connected, Flashing = Activity.
- Yellow: On = 100Mbps, Off = 10Mbps.

### **LAN Cables**

These are CAT5 UTP cables for connection of various IP devices within the IP Office system.



IP Office	IP Office						
LAN	Pin	MDIX	MDI	Wire	Standard/	Crossover	
		(Normal)	(Crossover)		Interconnect		
RJ45	1	<b>←</b> Rx-A.	<b>→</b> Tx-A.	White/Orange	1	3	RJ45
	2	<b>←</b> Rx-B.	<b>⇒</b> Tx-B.	Orange/White	2	6	<b>   </b>
<u> </u>	3	<b>⇒</b> Tx-A.	<b>←</b> Rx-A.	White/Green	3	1	1 1
8 1	4	Not used.	Not used.	Blue/White	4	4	8 1
	5	Not used.	Not used.	White/Blue	5	5	
	6	<b>⇒</b> Tx-B.	<b>←</b> Rx-B.	Green/White	6	2	
	7	Not used.	Not used.	White/Brown	7	7	]
	8	Not used.	Not used.	Brown/White	8	8	]

### SAP Code:

### • LAN Cable - GREY: 700213481.

Standard straight LAN cable.

### • LAN Interconnect Cable - Green: 700213465.

Supplied with WAN3 modules for the direct connection of the WAN3 module to an IP Office control unit LAN port. For an IP412 control unit, this cable should be replaced with a LAN crossover cable.

# • LAN Crossover Cable - Black: 700213473.

LAN crossover cable.

# 10.12.12 PF Port

These ports are analog extension ports that can be used in conjunction with analog loop-start trunks during power failure to the IP Office system. They are found on the rear of the IP400 Analog Trunk expansion module.

There are a number of options to connect analog extension ports to analog trunks during power failure. In all cases these only work with loop-start analog trunks. Any phones connected to these ports should be clearly labeled as power fail extensions in accordance with the appropriate national and local regulatory requirements.

### • IP400 Small Office Edition

On the Small Office Edition control unit, ANALOG port 2 is connected to PHONE (POT) port 1 during power failure.

### • IP400 ATM16 External Expansion Module

During power fail conditions, PF1 is internally connected to ANALOG port 1 on the module, PF2 is internally connected to ANALOG port 2 on the same module.

### IP500 Office

When an IP500 Analog Phone 8 base card is fitted with an IP500 Analog Trunk daughter card, during power failure extension port 8 is connected to analog trunk port 12.

Any phones connected to these ports should be clearly labelled as power fail extensions in accordance with the appropriate national and local regulatory requirements.

PF	Pin	Description
RJ45	1	Not used.
	2	Pin 2 is internally connected to pin 5 via a ringer capacitor.
<u> </u>	3	Not used.
8 1	4	Ring.
	5	Tip.
	6	Pin 6 is internally connected to pin 5 via a ringer capacitor.
	7	Not used.
	8	Not used.

• Minimum Wire Size: AWG 26.

· Maximum Cable Length:

• AWG26: 500m / 1640'.

• AWG24, AWG22: 1000m / 3280'.

### 10.12.13 PHONE (POT) Port

These ports are analog extension ports. On older IP Office units these ports were labeled as POT ports rather than PHONE ports.

PHONE ports on Phone V1/V2 expansion modules can be connected to <u>out-of-building extensions</u>. If this is the case, connection must be made via suitable protective devices (IP Office Barrier Box) at each end and via each building primary protection. In addition the Phone module must be connected to a protective ground.

PHONE ports on IP Office control units must not be connected to out-of-building extensions.

PHONE	Pin	Description
RJ45	1	Not used.
	2	Not used.
<u> </u>	3	Not used.
8 1	4	Ring.
	5	Tip.
	6	Not used.
	7	Not used.
	8	Not used.

• REN: 2

Off-Hook Current: 25mA.Ring Voltage: 40V rms.

• Minimum Wire Size: AWG 26.

• Maximum Cable Length:

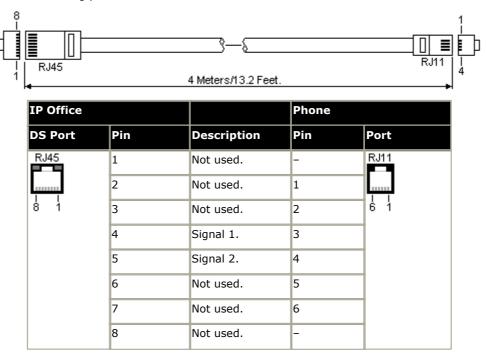
• AWG26: 0.5km / 1640 feet.

• AWG24, AWG22: 1km / 3280 feet.

Except on some older equipment, these ports do not include a ringing capacitor. Therefore for connection to 4-wire analog phones where this is a requirement (typically the United Kingdom and New Zealand), connection should be via a Master socket containing ringing capacitors. On some older Small Office Edition, IP403 and IP400 Phone V1 modules, pins 2 and 6 are internally connected via ringing capacitors.

### **Structured Cabling Line Cord**

This is an RJ45 to RJ11 cable suitable for connection from a structured cabling system RJ45 port to a DS phone. It can also be used for two-wire analog phone extensions.



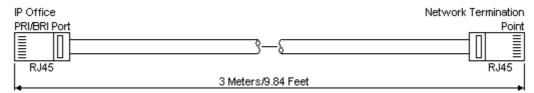
• SAP Code: 700047871.

### 10.12.14 PRI Port

These ports are used for connection to PRI trunk services including E1, T1 and E1-R2.

### PRI/BRI Trunk Cable

This cable is used to connect from IP Office BRI/PRI trunk ports to the line providers network termination equipment. If that equipment does not use RJ45 sockets, the cable may need to be stripped and rewired or an alternate cable used. The appropriate signal pin-outs and wire colours are detailed below.



IP Office		Wire	Network	Termination		
BRI	RJ45	BRI	PRI		PIN	RJ45
RJ45	1	-	<b>←</b> Rx-A	White/Orange	1	RJ45
	2	-	<b>←</b> Rx-B	Orange/White	2	
<u> </u>	3	<b>→</b> Tx-A	-	White/Green	3	<u> </u>
8 1	4	<b>←</b> Rx-A	<b>→</b> Tx-A	Blue/White	4	8 1
	5	<b>←</b> Rx-B	<b>⇒</b> Tx-B	White/Blue	5	
	6	<b>⇒</b> Тх-В	-	Green/White	6	
	7	-	-	White/Brown	7	
	8	-	-	Brown/White	8	

• Supply: BRI/PRI trunks cards are not supplied with these cables.

· Cable Color: Red.

• SAP Code: 700213440. • Standard Length: 3m/9'10".

IP Office Installation Page 362 **IP Office** 

### 10.12.15 WAN Port

This type of port 37-way D-type port is found on the rear of IP406 V2 and IP412 control units, and on the rear of the WAN3 10/100 external expansion modules. For the Small Office Edition control unit an optional WAN trunk interface card can be fitted.

Each WAN port supports a single synchronous data connection, which can be X.21, V.35 or V.24/V.28. Selection of the required interface is determined by the cable plugged into the WAN port when power is applied.

• WAN ports must be clocked externally, the IP Office does not provide a clock signal. The clock signal is usually provided by the service provider but under some circumstances (for example laser, microwave or baseband modems) extra provision must be made by the installer.

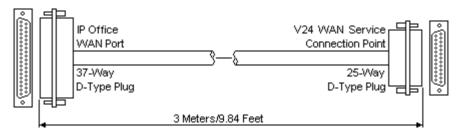
Pin	Protocol	Description	Pin	Protocol	Description
1	X.21	←Rx-B: Receive Data B.	20	X.21	←Rx-A: Receive Data A.
2	X.21	←Ind-A: Indicate A.	21	X.21	←Ind-B: Indicate B.
3	X.21	←Clk-A: Clock A.	22	X.21	←Clk-B: Clock B.
4	X.21	→Tx-A: Transmit Data A.	23	X.21	→Tx-B: Transmit Data B.
5	X.21	→Ctl-B: Control B.	24	X.21	→Ctl-A: Control A.
6	X.21	■ Ground	25	V.35	←WAN ID 0: Connect to Pin 6.
7	X.21	₩AN ID 1: Connect to Pin 6.	26	V.24	→Tx: Transmit Data.
8	V.24/V.35	→DTR: Data Terminal Ready.	27	V.24/V.35	→RTS: Request to Send.
9	V.24	<b>←</b> Rx: Receive Data.	28	V.24	RxClk: Receive Clock.
10	V.24	★TxClk: Transmit Clock.	29	V.24/V.35	RI: Ring Indicator.
11	V.24/V.35	←DCD: Data Carrier Detect.	30	V.24/V.35	←DSR: Data Set Ready.
12	V.24/V.35	←CTS: Clear to Send.	31	_	Not used.
13	-	Not used.	32	V.35	→Tx-A: Transmit Data A.
14	V.35	→Tx-B: Transmit Data B.	33	V.35	⇒SCTE-A: External Clock A.
15	V.35	⇒SCTE-B: External Clock B.	34	V.35	■ V35 Gnd
16	V.35	➡Rx-B: Receive Data B.	35	V.35	➡Rx-A: Receive Data A.
17	V.35	←TxClk-B: Transmit Clock B.	36	V.35	←TxClk-A: Transmit Clock A.
18	V.35	RxClk-B: Receive Clock B.	37	V.35	RxClk-A: Receive Clock A.
19	V.24	■ CHASSIS	-	-	-

<sup>1.</sup> For the USA, only FCC Part 68 registered data circuit terminal equipment should be connected to the WAN Ports.

<sup>2.</sup> In all cases Pin 19 should be connected to the cable screen.

### 10.12.16 V.24 WAN Cable

This cable is used for connection an IP Office 37-way D-type WAN port to the V.24 WAN service providers equipment.

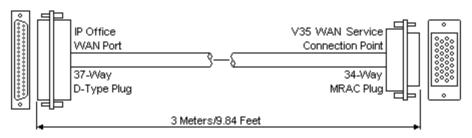


IP Office WAN Port	Signal	V.24 WAN Service
6	■ Ground	7
8	→ DTR: Data Terminal Ready.	20
9	<b>←</b> Rx: Receive Data	3
10	←Tx: Transmit Clock	15
11	← DCD: Data Carrier Detect.	8
12	←CTS: Clear To Send.	5
26	→Tx: Transmit Data.	2
27	→RTS: Request To Send.	4
28	Rx-Clk: Receive Clock.	17
29	←RI: Ring Indicator.	22
30	←DSR: Data Set Ready.	6

- At the IP Office end pin 25 is connected to pin 6.
- At the IP Office end pin 19 is connected to the Screened Cable Drain Wire.
- Supply: This cable is not supplied with the control unit or WAN3 module. It must be ordered separately.
- SAP Code: 700213416
- Cable: 12-core screened cable. Each core is 7/0.203mm (24 AWG) tinned copper stranded wire, nominal capacitance of 95pF/m, resistance of 92 ohms/km, screened with tinned copper braid, maximum working voltage of 440V rms and a maximum current per core of 1A rms. The maximum core to core capacitance must not exceed 800pF.
- Maximum Length: 5m/16'5". This is the maximum length that should be used if the above cable is replaced with an alternate cable.

### 10.12.17 V.35 WAN Cable

This cable is used for connection an IP Office 37-way D-type WAN port to the V.35 WAN service providers equipment.

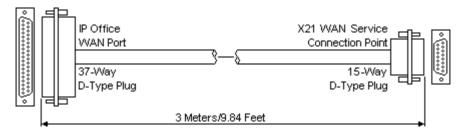


IP Office WAN Port	Signal	Wire	V.35 WAN Service
8	→DTR: Data Terminal Ready.		Н
11	←DCD: Data Carrier Detect.		F
12	←CTS: Clear To Send.		D
27	→RTS: Request To Send.		С
29	←RI: Ring Indicator.		J
30	←DSR: Data Set Ready.		E
32	➡Tx-A: Transmit Data A.	Twisted Pair	Р
14	→Tx-B: Transmit Data B.		S
35	←Rx-A: Receive Data A.	Twisted Pair	R
16	←Rx-B: Receive Data B.		Т
36	→TxClk-A: Transmit Clock A.	Twisted Pair	Υ
17	→TxClk-B: Transmit Clock B.		AA
37	RxClk-A: Receive Clock A.	Twisted Pair	V
18	RxClk-B: Receive Clock B.		X
33	→SCTE-A: External Clock A.	Twisted Pair	U
15	⇒SCTE-B: External Clock B.		W
34	■ Ground	-	В

- At the IP Office end pins 7 and 25 are connected to pin 6.
- At the IP Office end pin 19 is connected to the Screened Cable Drain Wire.
- Supply: This cable is not supplied with the control unit or WAN3 module. It must be ordered separately.
- SAP Code: 700213424.
- Cable: 10 twisted pair screened cable each core is 7/0.203mm (24 AWG) tinned copper stranded wire, nominal capacitance of 98pF/m, impedance of 80 10% at 1MHz, screened with aluminized tape and a tinned copper wire drain. The maximum core to core capacitance must not exceed 800pF.
- Maximum Length: 5m/16'5". This is the maximum length that should be used if the above cable is replaced with an alternate cable.

### 10.12.18 X.21 WAN Cable

This cable is used for connection from an IP Office 37-way D-type WAN port to the X.21 service providers equipment.



IP Office WAN Port	Signal	Wires	X.21 WAN Service		
1	←Rx-B: Receive B.	Twisted Pair	11		
20	Rx-A: Receive A.		4		
4	→Tx-A: Transmit A.	Twisted Pair	2		
23	→Tx-B: transmit B.		9		
24	→Ctl-A: Control A.	Twisted Pair	3		
5	→Ctl-B: Control B.		10		
2	←Ind-A: Indicate A.	Twisted Pair	5		
21	←Ind-B: Indicate B.		12		
3	←Clk-A: Clock A.	Twisted Pair	6		
22	←Clk-B: Clock B.		13		
6	■ Ground		8		
<ul> <li>At the IP Office end pin 7 is connected to pin 6.</li> <li>At the IP Office end pin 19 is connected to the Screened Cable Drain</li> </ul>					

- Supply: This cable is not supplied with the control unit or WAN3 module. It must be ordered separately.
- SAP Code: 700213408.

Wire.

- Cable: 6 twisted pair screened cable each core is 7/0.203mm (24 AWG) tinned copper stranded wire, nominal capacitance of 98pF/m, impedance of 77ohms at 1MHz, screened with aluminized tape and a tinned copper wire drain.
- Maximum Length: 5m/16'5". This is the maximum length that should be used if the above cable is replaced with an alternate cable.

### 10.13 SAP Codes

Update with IP500 PRI-U trunk daughter card details. Also update the IP Office 4.1 CD/DVD codes and Voicemail Pro 4.1 CD code.

### **IP Office Control Units**

Variant	Companding	Country	SAP Code
IP500 Office.	-	All	700417207
IP412 Office.	A-Law	Rest of World	700234479
	U-Law	North America	700350408
IP406 V2 Office DS.	A-Law	Rest of World	700343536
	U-Law	North America	700359946
Small Office Edition 4T+4A+8DS (3 VoIP)	A-Law	Rest of World	700280209
	U-Law	North America	700350424
Small Office Edition 4T+4A+8DS (16 VoIP)	A-Law	Rest of World	700280217
	U-Law	North America	700350432

- IP400 and Small Office Edition control units are supplied with an external power supply unit but not a locale specific power cord. All control units are available in either North America or Rest of World variants. The choice controls various default settings of the unit. For E911 support a North American variant control unit must be used. The companding can be changed once a unit is installed.
- IP500 control units have an integral power supply unit but are not supplied with a locale specific power cord. The appropriate Mu-Law or A-Law Smart Card feature key dongle must be order with the control unit.

### **IP500 Base Cards**

IP500 Base Cards			Country	SAP Code
Digital Extension	IPO 500 Extn Card Dgtl Sta 8	IP Office 500 Extension Card Digital Station 8	All	700417330
Analog Extension	IPO 500 Extn Card Phone 2	IP Office 500 Extension Card Phone 2	All	700431778
	IPO 500 Extn Card Phone 8	IP Office 500 Extension Card Phone 8	All	700417231
VCM	IPO 500 MC VCM 32	IP Office 500 Media Card Voice Coding Module 32	All	700417389
	IPO 500 MC VCM 64	IP Office 500 Media Card Voice Coding Module 64	All	700417397
Carrier Card	IPO 500 Carrier Card	IP Office 500 Carrier Card	All	700417215
4-Port Expansion Card	IPO IP500 Exp Card 4 Port	Includes 4 yellow 2 metre interconnect cables.	All	700472889

## **IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards**

	dagiicoi caras			
Variant			Country	SAP Code
Analog	IPO 500 Trnk Anlg 4 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Analog 4 Universal	All	700417405
PRI	IPO 500 Trnk PRI 1 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Primary Rate 1 Universal	All	700417439
	IPO 500 Trnk PRI 2 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Primary Rate 2 Universal	All	700417462
BRI	IPO 500 Trnk BRI 4 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Basic Rate 4 Universal	All	700417413
	IPO 500 Trnk BRI 8 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Basic Rate 8 Universal	All	700417421

### **IP400 Trunks Cards**

Variants		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
Analog	ATM4 Uni (Loop-Start)	All	700359938	×	7	7	-
	IP400 Analog 4 (Loop-Start)	North and South America	700185192	×	1	<b>'</b>	×
	IP400 Analog 4 EU (Loop-Start)	Europe	700241672	×	7	1	×
	IP400 Analog 4 NZ (Loop-Start)	New Zealand	700241706	×	7	7	×
BRI	IP400 BRI 8 (UNI)	All except China	700262017	<b>y</b>	1	7	<b>y</b>
	IP400 BRI	All	700185168	<b>y</b>	1	7	×
T1/PRI	IP400 PRI 24 T1	North America	700185200	7	1	7	-
	IP400 PRI 48 T1	North America	700185218	×	7	7	7
E1 PRI	IP400 PRI 30 E1 (1.4)	All except China and CALA.	700272461	×	1	<b>'</b>	<b>\</b>
	IP400 PRI 60 E1	All except China and CALA.	700185184	×	1	~	<b>~</b>
E1R2	IP400 PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45	CALA, Korea, China	700241631	×	-	~	-
	IP400 PRI 60 E1R2 RJ45	CALA, Korea, China	700241649	×	7	7	7
	IP400 PRI 30 E1R2 COAX	CALA	700241656	×	7	7	×
	IP400 PRI 60 E1R2 COAX	CALA	700241664	×	7	7	×
WAN	IP400 WAN Expansion	All	700289713	<b>J</b>	×	X	×

### **IP500 External Expansion Modules**

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and a 1m blue interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

Variant		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP40 6 V2	IP41 2	IP500	IP500 4-Port Exp
Analog Trunk	IPO 500 Analog Trunk 16	US	700449473	X	7	7	7	7
BRI So8	IPO 500 BRI So8	All	700449515	X	<b>V</b>	7	-	7
Digital Station	IPO 500 Digital Station 16	All	700449499	X	7	1	7	7
	IPO 500 Digital Station 30	All	700426216	X	<b>V</b>	1	-	
Analog Phone	IPO 500 Phone 16	All	700449507	X	7	1	7	7
	IPO 500 Phone 30	All	700426224	×	7	7	7	7

IP400 External Expansion Modules

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and a 1m blue interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

Variant		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP41 2	IP500	IP500 4-Port Exp
Analog Trunk	IP400 Analog Trunk 16	North America/ CALA	700211360	×	7	7	7	×
		Europe	700241680	×	7	7	7	×
		New Zealand	700241698	×	7	7	7	×
Digital Station	IP400 Digital Station 16 V2	All	700359839	×	7	7	7	7
	IP400 Digital Station 30 V2	All	700359847	×	7	7	7	7
	IP400 Digital Station 16	All	700184807	×	7	7	7	×
	IP400 Digital Station 30	All	700184880	×	7	7	7	×
Phone	IP400 Phone 8 V2	All	700359896	×	7	7	7	7
	IP400 Phone 16 V2	All	700359904	×	7	7	7	7
	IP400 Phone 30 V2	All	700359912	×	7	7	7	7
	IP400 Phone 8	All	700184773	×	7	7	7	×
	IP400 Phone 16	All	700184781	×	7	7	7	×
	IP400 Phone 30	All	700184799	X	7	7	7	×
SO (BRI)	IP400 So8	All	700185077	×	7	7	7	7
WAN	IP400 WAN3	All	700185028	X	7	7	×	×
	IP400 WAN3 10/100	All	700262009	X	7	7	×	×

### **Internal Cards**

Variants		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
Modem Cards	Modem 2 Card	All	700185226	×	7	7	×
	Internal Modem Card	All	700343452	×	7	7	×
Embedded	Small Office Edition	All	700289721	7	X	X	×
Voicemail Memory Cards	IP406 V2	All	700343460	×	1	×	-
Wireless Cards	Small Office Edition	All	700289739	7	×	×	×
IP400 Voice	VCM 5	All	700185119	×	7	-	×
Compression	VCM 10	All	700185127	×	7	7	×
Modules (25ms)	VCM 20	All	700185135	×	7	-	×
	VCM 30	All	700293939	×	7	1	7
IP400 Voice	VCM 4	All	700359854	×	7	-	1
Compression Modules (64ms)	VCM 8	All	700359862	×	7	7	7
	VCM 16	All	700359870	×	1	7	7
	VCM 24	All	700359888	×	7	7	7

### **Power Supply Units**

The following power supply units are used with IP Office control units and expansion modules. Normally the appropriate PSU is supplied with the IP Office control unit or expansion module. Note however that a locale specific power cord is not included with each control unit or expansion module.

Variant		Used with	Country	SAP Code
	40W Unearthed PSU Uses IEC60320 C7 power cords.	<ul><li>IP403.</li><li>IP406 V1.</li><li>Analog.</li><li>Digital Station V1.</li><li>Phone V1.</li></ul>	All	700210792
	45W Earthed PSU Uses IEC60320 C13 power cord.	Small Office Edition	All	700284938
	60W Earthed PSU Uses IEC60320 C13 power cord.	<ul> <li>IP406 V2.</li> <li>IP412.</li> <li>Digital Station V2.</li> <li>Phone V2.</li> <li>So8.</li> <li>WAN3 10/100.</li> </ul>	AII	700357387

The following power supply units have various applications. They are used to provide power to 4600 Series and 5600 Series IP phones. They are also used to provide power to other phone types when those phones are supporting an XM24, EU24 or EU24BL add-on unit. Note: An appropriate locale specific power cord is required for the power supply unit. These units are not support for use with 1600 Series phones.

Variant		SAP Code
1151D1 Power Supply.	With CAT5 cable.	700434897
1151D2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700434905
1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord.	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790591
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

The following items are associated with providing IEEE 802.3af Power-over-Ethernet (PoE) to devices including Avaya IP phones. For full details refer to the IP Office IP Phone Installation Manual.

Variant		SAP Code
1U Mid-Span Power Distribution Unit	6 Ports	700409675
	6 Ports + SNMP	700409691
	12 Ports*	700250525
	12 Ports + SNMP*	700253107
	24 Ports*	700180433
	24 Ports + SNMP	700409717
Cisco Catalyst Power Adapter*.		700259369

<sup>\*</sup>These items are no longer available as new from Avaya.

### **Power Cords**

IP Office control unit and expansion module power supply units are not supplied with a power cord. The appropriate power cord must be ordered or sourced locally.

Power Cord Type	Power Outlet Plug Type	Locales	SAP Codes
Earthed Power Cords (IEC60320 C13)	CEE7/7 (Schuko)	Europe and South Africa.	700289762
Control Units IP500. IP406 V2. IP412.* Small Office Edition. IP400 External Expansion Modules	BS1363	Czech Republic, Ireland, United Kingdom.	700289747
<ul> <li>Digital Station V2.</li> <li>Phone V2.</li> <li>So8.*</li> <li>WAN3 10/100.*</li> </ul>	NEMA5-15P / CS22.2 No.42	North, Central and South America.	700289770
	CPCS-CCC	China.	700261977
Unearthed Power Cord (IEC60320 C7)	CEE7/16 (Europlug)	Europe and South Africa.	700213382
<ul><li>IP400 External Expansion Modules</li><li>Analog.</li><li>Digital Station V1.</li><li>Phone V1.</li></ul>	BS1363	Czech Republic, Ireland, United Kingdom.	700213374
	NEMA1-15	North, Central and South America.	700213390
		Korea.	700254519

The following additional power cords are available for use with the Avaya 1151D1 and 1151D2 power supply units.

1151D1/1151D2 Power Cord	SAP Code
USA	405362641
Europe	407786623
Australia and New Zealand	407786631
India	407790991
United Kingdom	407786599
Argentina	408161453

### **Cables**

Cable	Description	SAP Code	Length
25-Way DTE Cable	Connects to a IP403 or IP406 V1 control unit. 25-Way D-type plug to 9-way D-type socket.	700213432	2m/6'6''.
9-Way DTE Cable	Connects to an SOE, IP406 V2 or IP412 control unit. 9-Way D-type plug to 9-way D-type socket.	-	2m/6'6".
Structured Cabling DS Line Cable	Connects from RJ45 sockets to RJ11 socketed DS and analog phones.	700047871	4m/13'2''.
BRI/PRI Trunk Cable	Connects BRI/PRI trunk ports to the line providers network termination point. RJ45 to RJ45. Red.	700213440	3m/9'10''.
IP500 BRI So Converter Cable	Provides the 100ohm terminating resistors necessary for an IP500 BRI trunk daughter card port set to S-Bus mode. Also provides the cable crossover. RJ45 plug to RJ45 socket.	700458649	25cm/10"
Expansion Interconnect Cable	Connects the control unit to expansion modules (except WAN3 modules). RJ45 to RJ45. Blue.	700213457	1m/3'3".
	Longer yellow cable version for use with IP500 4-Port Expansion card.	700472871	2m/6'6"
LAN Cable	Connects from IP Office LAN ports to IP devices. RJ45 to RJ45. Grey.	700213481	3m/9'10''.
LAN Interconnect Cable	Connects WAN3 module to the control unit. Replace with a LAN crossover cable for IP412 control units. Green.	700213465	1m/3'3".
LAN Crossover Cable	Used for connection of IP devices to LAN ports on the IP412 control unit. Black	700213473	3m/9'10''.
V.24 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 25-way D-type plug.	700213416	3m/9'10''.
V.35 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 34-way MRAC plug.	700213424	3m/9'10''.
X.21 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 15-way D-type plug.	700213408	3m/9'10''.

# Mounting

Rack Mounting Kits	SAP Code	Note
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit	700210800	One per IP400 control unit or IP400 external expansion module.
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit	700429202	One per IP500 control unit or IP500 external expansion module.
<b>IP500 Wall Mounting Kit</b> 700430150		One per IP500 control unit.
IP500 Blanking Plate Kit	700429194	Includes 3 front panels for the IP500 control unit.
Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit	700293905	Up to 8 IP Office Barrier Boxes.

### **Barrier Boxes**

IP Office Barrier Boxes	SAP Code	
IP400 Phone Barrier Box	700293897	Use with Phone V1 module. Includes an RJ45 to RJ11 cable and functional earth lead.
IP400 Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V)	700385495	Use with Phone V2 module. Includes an RJ45 to RJ11 cable and functional earth lead.

# **Feature Keys Dongles**

Feature Key Dongle	SAP Code
Parallel Port Feature Key	700185234
USB Port Feature Key	700261506
Serial Port Feature Key	700293095
Smart Card Feature Key (Mu-Law)	700417470
Smart Card Feature Key (A-Law)	700417488

### **General Licenses**

<u>General Licenses</u>			
License	RFA Name		SAP
DECT Integration (ports)	IP400 CTI DECT	8	171989
		16	174457
		64	174458
Conferencing Center	IP400 Conferencing Center		182302
SoftConsole (users)	IP400 SoftConsole		171987
Compact Business Center	IP400 CBC		171993
Small Office Edition WiFi	IP400 Access Point		182197
Microsoft CRM Integration (users)	IP400 Microsoft CRM Intgr		180588
IPSec Tunneling	IP400 IPSec VPN	_	182301
Mobile Twinning	IPO Lic Mobile Twinning	1	195569
or <b>Mobility Features</b>		5	195570
Problinty i cutures		10	195571
		20	195572
		50	195573
SIP Trunk Channels	IPO LIC SIP TRNK RFA	1	202967
		5	202968
		10	202969
		20	202970
Advanced Small Community Networking	IPO LIC ADVANCED NTWKG		202966
IP End-points	IP400 IP Endpoint	1	174956
		5	174957
		10	174958
		20	174959
		50	174960
		100	174961
VPN IP Extensions	VPN Phone	1	213980
		5	213981
		10	213982
		25	213983
		50	213984
		100	213985
		Unlimited	213986
		Trial (10)	213987

# **CCC Licenses**

License	RFA Name		SAP
CCC Server	IP400 CCC SV		171994
CCC Agents	IP400 CCC AGT	5	171995
		10	174469
		20	174470
		50	174471
CCC Supervisors	IP400 CCC SUP	1	171996
		5	184730
		10	184731
		20	184732
CCC PC Wallboards	IP400 CCC PCW	5	172786
		10	174472
		20	174473
		50	174474
CCC Spectrum Wallboards	IP400 CCC Wallboard	4	176196
Report Viewer	IP400 CCC Report	5	184726
		10	184727
		20	184728
CCC Agent Rostering	IP400 CCC Rostering		171997
CCC Designer (users)	IP400 CCC Designer		171999

### **CCR Licenses**

License	RFA Name		SAP
CCR SUP	IPO CUSTMR CALL REPORTER Y	1	217655
	SPV LIC	10	217656
		20	217657
CCR Agents	ACT LIC	1	217650
AGT LIC		5	217651
		10	217652
		20	217653
		50	217654
CCR CCC UPG	IPO CUSTMR CALL REPORTER UPG LIC		217658

### **CTI Licenses**

License	RFA Name	SAP
CTI Link Pro	IP400 CTI RFA	171988
Wave User	IP400 TAPI WAV RFA 4	177466

# **IP500 Licenses**

License	RFA Name		SAP
IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional	IP500 IPO EXP UPG TO PRO		202959
IP500 Voice Networking	IP500 VOICE NTWKG BASE 4 LIC	4	202960
	IP500 VOICE NTWKG ADD LIC	_	205450
IP500 Universal PRI (Additional	IP500 T1 Channels Add	2	215180
channels)		8	215181
		32	215182
	IP500 E1 Channels Add	2	215183
		8	215184
		32	215185
	IP500 E1R2 Channels Add	2	215186
		8	215187
		22	215188
IP500 VCM Channels	IP500 VCM LIC 4 CH	+4	202961
	IP500 VCM LIC 8 CH	+8	202962
	IP500 VCM LIC 16 CH	+16	202963
	IP500 VCM LIC 28 CH	+28	202964
	IP500 VCM LIC 60 CH	+60	202965

### **Phone Manager Licenses**

Thoric Manager Elections			
License	RFA Name		SAP
Phone Manager Pro (per seat)	IP400 Phone Manager Pro	1	177468
		5	177469
		10	177470
		20	177471
		50	177472
Phone Manager Pro	IP400 IPPRO	1	171992
IP Audio Enabled (per user)		5	174463
		10	174464
		20	174465
		50	174466

### **Voicemail Licenses**

License	RFA Name		SAP
AUDIX Voicemail	IP400 AUDIX		177467
Voicemail Pro (4 ports)	IP400 Voicemail Pro	_	171991
Additional Voicemail Pro (ports)	IP400 Voicemail Pro	2	174459
		4	174460
		8	174461
		16	174462
VMPro Networked Messaging	IP400 Networked Messaging		182297
Integrated Messaging	IP400 Integrated Messaging Pro		171990
VMPro TTS (ScanSoft)	IP400 Avaya TTS		182299
VMPro TTS (Generic)	IP400 3rd Party TTS		182303
VMPro VB Script	IP400 VB Scripting		182300
VMPro Database Interface	IP400 3rd Party IVR		182298
VMPro Recordings Administrators	IP400 ContactStore for IPO		187166
UMS Web Services	IPO LIC VMPRO UMS 1		217880
		5	217881
		10	217882
		20	217883
		50	217884
		Trial	217890

### **IP DECT Licenses**

See <u>IP DECT section</u>. IP DECT licenses are entered into the IP DECT system configuration, not the IP Office configuration.

### **60 Day Trial Licenses**

These licenses start expiring from the day the license is generated, not the date of installation. Each license will only be generated once for a given Feature Key dongle serial number.

License	RFA Name	SAP
Voicemail Pro Networked Messaging	IPO TRIAL NTWKD MSGING LIC:DS	189776
3rd Party Database/IVR	IPO TRIAL 3RD PARTY IVR RFA LIC:DS	189777
Avaya Text-to-Speech for IP Office (1 port)	IPO TRIAL AVAYA TTS RFA 1 LIC:CU	189778
VB Scripting	IPO TRIAL VB SCRIPTING RFA LIC:DS	189779
Conferencing Center	IPO TRIAL CONF CENTER RFA LIC:DS	189780
Third Party Text to Speech (1 port)	IPO TRIAL 3RD PRTY TTS RFA LIC:CU	189781
Voicemail Pro (4 ports)	IPO TRIAL VM PRO RFA LIC:DS	189782
SoftConsole (1 user)	IPO TRIAL SOFTCONSOLE/BLF RFA LIC:CU	189783
Phone Manager PC Softphone (10 users)	IPO TRIAL IPPRO RFA 10 LIC:CU	189784
Phone Manager Pro (10 users)	IPO TRIAL PMGR PRO RFA 10 LIC:CU	189785
Centralized Voicemail with Avaya Messaging	IPO TRIAL ACM CENTRAL VM LIC:DS	189786
Integrated Messaging Pro	IPO TRIAL INTG MSGING PRO RFA LIC:DS	189787
Mobile Twinning (5 users)	IPO LIC MOBILE TWINNING TRIAL RFA 5	195574
VPN IPSec	IPO TRIAL IPSEC VPN RFA LIC:DS	189806
IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional	IPO LIC IP500 STD UPG to PRO TRIAL	205822
IP500 Voice Networking (4 channels)	IPO LIC IP500 VCE NTWK START 4 TRIAL	205823
VPN IP Phone	IPO LIC VPN PHONE 10 TRIAL	213987
UMS Web Services (10 users)	IPO TRIAL UMS 10 LIC:CU	217890
3rd Party IP End Points License	IPO TRIAL LIC IP ENDPOINT RFA 5	227040

SIP Trunk Channel	IPO LIC SIP TRUNKING TRIAL RFA 1	205820
Advanced Small Community Networking	IPO LIC ADVANCED NTWKG TRIAL	205821

IP Office Installation IP Office Page 378 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

### **IP Office Application CDs/DVDs**

Application	Variant	SAP Code
Voicemail Pro CD	4.2	700459357
	4.1	700448954
	4.0	700428592
	3.2	700407588
	3.1	700380405
	3.0	700350457
	2.1	700330970
	2.0	700304546
Voicemail Pro ScanSoft Text-to-Speech (TTS)	-	700293921
Conferencing Center	3.2	700407596
	3.1	192226
	3.0	700372287
	2.1	700293913
IP Office Software Developer's Kit (SDK)	_	700188873
Compact Contact Center (CCC)	5.2	700451545
	5.0	700330962
	4.0	700188881
IP Office User and Administration CD Set	4.2	700459332
	4.1	700449457
	4.0	700428576
	3.2	700407604
	3.1	700380389
	3.0	700345879
	2.1	700329725
	2.0	700304074
IP Office Applications DVD	5.0	700472863
	4.2	700459340
	4.1	700449465
	4.0	700428584
	3.2	700407612
	3.1	700380397

### **1600 Series Phones**

Ethernet cord sold separately. Local power sold separately. PoE adapter	sold separately.
Material Description	Code
<b>Phones</b> (Ethernet cord sold separately. Local power sold separately. Posseparately.)	E adapter sold
1603 IP Phone	700415540
1603SW IP Phone	700458508
1608 IP Phone	700415557
1616 IP Phone	700450190
BM32 Button Module for 1616 (includes cable and bridge)	700415573
Accessories	
CAT5 Ethernet Cable (14 ft)	700383326
CAT5 Ethernet Cable (1 ft)	700436710
1608 Wall Mount Kit (Includes 1 ft Ethernet cable and screws)	700415623
1616 Wall Mount Kit (Includes 1 ft Ethernet cable and screws)	700415631
Power Adapters	
1603 PoE adapter	700415607
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V US	700451230
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V UK	700451248
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V EU	700451255
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V ARGENTINA	700451263
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V KOREA	700451271
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V CHINA	700451289
Power Adapter for 1600 IP Phones 5V AUSTRALIA	700451297
Replacement Parts	
1600 Series BM32 Cable	700415581
1600 Series BM32 Bridge	700415599
1603 Plastic Label Covers (10)	700419831
1608 Plastic Label Covers (10)	700415664
1616/BM32 Plastic Label Covers (20)	700415672
1603 Wedge Stand	700415615
1608 Flip Stand	700415714
1616 Flip Stand	700415722
1600 Series BM32 Flip Stand	700432800
1600 Series Handset (Cord sold separately)	700427495
1600 Series 9 inch Handset Code (Black)	700429707
9600/1600 Series 25 inch Handset Cord (Grey)	700383821
Amplified Handset	700446388
Labels	
1603 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (8.5" x 11")	700415706
1608 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (8.5" x 11")	700415649
1616/BM32 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (8.5" x 11")	700415656
1603 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (A4)	700434210
1608 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (A4)	700434228
1616/BM32 Paper DESI Labels - Pack of 50 Labels (A4)	700434236
Headsets	
HIS Headset Cable for 9600 & 1608/1616 IP Phones	700409881
SupraElite Monaural (One Ear) Voice Tube (HIS cable required)	700343718
SupraElite Monaural (One Ear) Noise Cancelling (HIS cable required)	700343726
SupraElite Monaural (Two Ear) Voice Tube (HIS cable required)	700343734
SupraElite Monaural (Two Ear) Noise Cancelling (HIS cable required)	700343742
AWH-55+ Wireless Headset	700428204
AWH-65+ Wireless Headset - UK	700428212

### **System Components: SAP Codes**

AWH-65+ Wireless Headset - EURO	700428220
AWH75N Executive Wireless Headset NAR	700446313
AWH75N Executive Wireless Headset EU	700446321
AWH75N Executive Wireless Headset UK	700446339
ABT-35+S Headset & Base - NA	700428170
ABT-35+S Headset & Base - EURO	700428196

### **2400 Series Phones**

Variant		SAP Code
2402	Multi-grey	700381973
2410	Multi-grey	700381999
2420D	Multi-grey	700381585
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
201B Recorder Interface for 2420/5420D		700381635

Variant		SAP Code
3616 Wireless Phone.		700413040
3620 Wireless Phone.		700413065
Additional battery pack for 3616		700277387
Desktop charger for 3616.		700412901
Belt Clip for 3616.		700413057
3626 Wireless Phone.		700413024
Additional battery pack for 3626		700277395
Desktop charger for 3626		700412919
Charger Power Supply	Europe	700412810
	United Kingdom	700412828
	Switzerland	
3626 8-Gang changer.		700412927
Belt Clip for 3626.		700413131
3626 Vinyl case with keypad cover.		700412984
3626 Carry case.	Yellow	700289309
3626 Carry case with keypad cover	Black	700289317
	Yellow	700289325
3616/3626 Configuration Cradle		700375934
Avaya Voice Priority Processor 10 (A	VPP 10)	700413164
Avaya Voice Priority Processor 20 (A	VPP 20)	700413172
AVPP Power Supply Europe United Kingdom		700412844
		700412851
Switzerland		700412869
Netlink OAI Gateway		700245756
Rack Mount Kit		700245459

Variant	SAP Code
AWTS 3641 WRLS PHONE.	700430408
AWTS 3645 WRLS PHONE.	700430416
AWTS 3641 Single Charger Bundle- includes phone, standard battery and single charger.	700436736
AWTS 3645 Single Charger Bundle- includes phone, single charger and standard battery.	700436744
AWTS 3641 Dual Charger Bundle- includes phone, dual charger and two extended batteries.	700436751
AWTS 3645 Dual Charger Bundle- includes phone, dual charger and two extended batteries.	700436769

### **3700 Series Phones**

See IP DECT section.

### 3810 Phones

Item	SAP Code
3810 Set - Includes phone, base station, charger, belt clip and power supply units for charger and base station.	700305105

Variant		SAP Code
4406D+	White	108199019
	Black	108199027
4412D+	White	108199043
	Black	108199050
4424D+	White	108199076
	Black	108199084
DSS4450	White	108199407
	Black	108199696
Power Supply for 4450		108596412
Small Stand for 4406 or 4450	Black	108541194
	White	108541202
Large Stand for 4412D+ or 4424D+.	Black	108541269
	White	108541277

# 4600 Series Phones (New Style)

Variant		SAP Code
4601+	Multi-grey	700381890
4602IP	Multi-grey	700221260
4602SW+	Multi-grey	700381916
4610SW	Multi-grey	700381957
4620IP	Multi-grey	700212186
4620SW	Multi-grey	700259674
4621SW	Multi-grey	700345192
4625SW	Multi-grey	700381551
EU24 1XU-A Expansion Module	Multi-grey	700381817
EU24BL 2XU-A Backlighted Expansion Module	Multi-grey	700381825
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

Variant		SAP Code
5402	Multi-grey	700381981
5410	Multi-grey	700382005
5420	Multi-grey	700381627
EU24	Multi-grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-grey	700381825
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
201B Recorder Interface for 2420/5420D		700381635

### **5600 Series Phones**

Variant		SAP Code
5601+	Multi-grey	700381908
5602SW+	Multi-grey	700381932
5610SW	Multi-grey	700381965
5621	Multi-grey	700385982
EU24	Multi-grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-grey	700381825
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

Variant		SAP Code
6408D+	Grey	70020100
	White	70020092
6416D+M	Grey	108807611
	White	108807603
6424D+M	Grey	108807595
	White	108807587
6408 Stand	Grey	108933169
	White	108933177
6416/6424 Stand	Grey	848219127
	White	848219119
XM24	Grey	700406523
	White	700406515
	Grey	108272378
	White	108272386

# T3 Series Phones (Upn)

Variant		SAP Code
T3 Compact	Black	700380264
	White	700380298
T3 Classic	Black	700380272
	White	700380306
	Black	700380280
	White	700380314
T3 DSS Unit	Black	700380322
	White	700380330
T3 DSS Expansion Unit	Black	700380348
	White	700380355
T3 Headset Link Unit-		700380363

# T3 Series Phones (IP)

15 Series Friences (11)		
Variant		SAP Code
T3 Compact	Black	700414717
	White	700414709
T3 Classic	T3 Classic Black	700414733
	White	700414725
T3 Comfort	Black	700414758
	White	700414741
Power Supply Unit for T3 IP Phones		700414766
T3 AEI/Headset Link for IP Phones		700414774
Power Supply Unit for DSS on T3 IP Phone		700414790

### **Spares**

The following spares can be ordered from Avaya.

Item	Color	SAP Code
Handset HIP QD CORD- 4606/16/24/30 S	ET	700414121
Cat 5 Cable specific to 4620	-	700261613
Handset Cords 25ft	Dark Grey	700217417
IP PHONE MOD CORD 1ft CAT5	-	408406932
IP PHONE MOD CORD 7ft CAT5	-	408406957
IP PHONE MOD CORD 14ft CAT5	-	408406940

### **IP DECT Handsets and Handset Accessories**

Handsets are supplied with 3 AAA rechargeable batteries and a charger. Region specific power adaptor for the charger must be ordered separately.

Item	Region	SAP Code
IP DECT 3701 Handset	EMEA	700346802
IP DECT 3711 Handset	EMEA	700346810
	North America	700430267
Belt Clip		700346885
Phone Charger for 3701/3711 Requires power adaptor below.	Global	700346828
Power Adaptor for Charger	European	700346836
	United Kingdom	700346844
	Australia	700378318
	North America	700430309
Rack mount 8-phone charger Requires power adaptor below.	Global	700346851
Power Adaptor for Rack Mount Charger Require region specific IEC60320 C13/C14 power cord ordered separately.	Global	700346869
Power Cord IEC60320 C13	Europe	700289762
	United Kingdom	700289747
	North America	700289770
IP DECT Phone Firmware Upgrade RS232 Serial Cable	EMEA	700379688
IP DECT Phone Firmware Upgrade USB Cable	North America	700436603
Leather Case for 3711	Global	700436629
IP DECT Headset for 3701/3711	Global	700346950

### **IP DECT Base Stations**

Item	Region	SAP Code
RFP32 Indoor Base Station	North America	700430275
Requires power adaptor or PoE. Note: These are not pre-licensed 'plug and play' base stations, see below for those items.	EMEA	700420789
Power Adaptor for RFP32	North America	700430291
	Europe	700346901
	United Kingdom	700346919
	Australia	700378326
RFP34 Outdoor Base Station	North America	700430283
PoE only. Note: These are not pre-licensed 'plug and play' base stations, see below for those items.	ЕМЕА	700420797
Outdoor Base Station Wall Mounting Kit	Global	700378334
Outdoor Base Station Mast Mounting Kit (65mm)	Global	700347156
Outdoor Base Station Mast Mounting Kit (>65mm)	Global	700347172
External Dipole Aerial (pair)	EMEA	700346935
External Beam Aerial (pair)	EMEA	700346943
Mounting Kit for External Aerials	EMEA	700347149
External Aerial Connection Cable (0.5m)	EMEA	700347115

# Plug and Play IP DECT Kits

Item	Region	SAP Code
IP DECT Starter Kit	North America	700436538
Includes 2 RFP32 base stations.	EMEA	700378995
RFP32 Upgrade Kit	North America	700436579
	EMEA	700436561
RFP34 Upgrade Kit	North America	700436595
	EMEA	700436587

### **IP DECT Site Survey Kits**

Item	Region	SAP Code
IP DECT Survey Kit with Tripod Includes custom RFP, 2 handsets, charger, charger power adaptor and tripod.	North America	700436512
IP DECT Survey Kit without Tripod	Europe	700378284
Includes custom RFP, 2 handsets, charger, charger power adaptor.	United Kingdom	700378292
Tripod for IP DECT Survey Kit	Global	700378300

### **IP DECT Licenses**

Item	Region	SAP Code
IP DECT License for 1 RFP	All	700379027
IP DECT License for 2 RFP's	All	700379035
IP DECT License for 3 to 5 RFP's	All	700379043
IP DECT License for 6+ RFP's	All	700379050
IP DECT License for upgrade from 1 to 2 RFP's	All	700379068
IP DECT License for upgrade from 2 to 3-5 RFP's	All	700379076
IP DECT License for Upgrade to 6+ RFP's	All	700379084
IP DECT License Conversion from IP Office to CM	All	700379167

# 10.13.1 Availability

SAP codes and details of specific items within this documentation are for reference only. Items available in any specific locale should be confirmed against the local Avaya IP Office price list for that locale. The local price list may also include additional items relative to the installation requirements of that locale.

### 10.13.2 RoHS

RoHS is an European Union directive for the Removal of Certain Hazardous Substances from Electrical and Electronic Equipment. Similar legislation has been or is being introduced in a number of other countries. Avaya has decided to make its global product range compliant with the requirements of RoHS.

The actions taken vary

- In some cases equipment has been discontinued and is no longer available from Avaya.
- In some cases new manufactured stock has been made RoHS compliant and keeps its existing SAP code.
- In other cases the equipment has been replaced by a new RoHS compliant alternative with new SAP codes.

The SAP codes within this document are for RoHS compliant equipment unless otherwise stated.

# **Chapter 11. Safety Statements**

# 11. Safety Statements

# 11.1 Safety and Homologation Statements

### . се

The CE mark affixed to this equipment means that the module complies with the 1999/5/EC (R&TTE), 89/336/EEC (EMC) and 72/23EEC (LVD) Directives.

Declaration of Conformity
 The Declaration of Conformity (DoC) for the IP400 Office products is available within on the IP Office Documentation
 CD (Engineer's Toolkit CD).



This warning symbol is found on the base of IP406 V2, IP412 and IP500 modules.

• Refer to <u>Trunk Interface Modules</u> for information concerning which Trunk Interface module variants are fitted in which country.

### WARNING

The Avaya IP400 Office and IP500 Office modules are intended to be installed by 'Service Personnel' and it is the responsibility of the Service Personnel to ensure that all subsidiary interconnected equipment is wired correctly and also meet the safety requirements of IEC60950 or UL60950 where applicable.

IP Office Installation Page 392
IP Office 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

### 11.2 Lithium Batteries

A lithium battery is fitted to the real time clock on IP Office control unit mother boards.

### WARNING

The Lithium battery must only be replaced by Avaya personnel or authorized representatives. There is a danger of explosion if the battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.

# 11.3 Lightning Protection/Hazard Symbols

Lightning protectors

The buildings lightning protectors must be verified as follow:

- 1. Check the lightning protectors, at the trunk cable entry point to the building housing the Avaya IP Office, paying special attention to the lightning protection grounding. Report any problems, in writing, to the telephone company.
- 2. Equipment that is designed to be connected using internal wiring is typically not lightning protected. Hence, Avaya IP Office extension cabling must not leave the building. For installations where telephones and/or other standard (tip/ring) devices are installed in another building then lightning protection is required (see <u>Out of Building Telephone Installations</u>).

### Hazard Symbol

- The shock hazard symbol is intended to alert personnel to electrical hazard or equipment damage. The following precautions must also be observed when installing telephone equipment:
- 2. Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm.
- 3. Never install telephone jacks in wet locations unless the jack is specifically designed for wet locations.
- 4. Never touch uninsulated telephone wires or terminals unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the network interface.
- 5. Always use caution when working with telephone lines.

# 11.4 Trunk Interface Modules

To ensure the validation of the approvals, only the following types of trunk interface cards must be fitted in the following IP Office control units.

USA/Canada							
Product	Quad BRI	PRI E1		PRI T1		ATM4	WAN
	BKI	Single	Dual	Single	Dual		
IP500 Office	×	X	X	7	7	7	X
IP406 V2 Office	×	×	×	1	7	7	×
IP412 Office	×	X	×	<b>y</b>	<b>-</b>	7	X
Small Office Edition	×	×	X	7	×	×	1

Rest of World							
Product	Quad BRI	PRI E1/E1R2 PRI		T1	ATM4	WAN	
	DKI	Single	Dual	Single	Dual		
IP500 Office	7	-	7	×	×	~	×
IP406 V2 Office	1	1	1	×	×	7	×
IP412 Office	7	7	7	×	×	7	×
Small Office Edition	1	×	×	×	×	×	1

### Notes

- Single WAN trunk card is only supported in the Small Office Edition control unit.
- Small Office Edition control units include 4 integral analog trunk ports.
- E1R2 trunks are only supported in CALA and Korea.

# 11.5 Further Information and Product Updates

Further information, including Product and Reference Manual updates, can be obtained from Avaya's Dealers and Distributors, or from Avaya's web site: <a href="http://www.avaya.com">http://www.avaya.com</a>.

This guide is also available from the Avaya's support web site: <a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a>.

### Support Telephone Numbers

For initial help and support, contact your distributor/supplier. The following contact points are for Avaya authorized partners.

· In the USA only

Avaya provides a toll-tree Customer Helpline 24 hours a day:

Name: Avaya Technical Support Organization (TSO)

• Customer Helpline: 1 800 628-2888

• Address: 8744 Lucent Blvd., Highlands Ranch, Colorado, 80129 USA

• URL: <a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a>

If you need assistance when installing, programming, or using your system, call the Helpline or your Avaya representative. Consultation charges may apply.

Outside the USA

If you need assistance when installing, programming, or using your system, contact your Avaya representative.

• URL: <a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a>

# 11.6 Compliance with FCC Rules

Transmit and Receive Gain Settings for PRI/T1 and Analog Ports

The Gain settings are password controlled for use by qualified installation personnel only and must not be made available to the end user. The default gain settings of 0dB ensures compliance with FCC part 68 section 68.308(b)(5) and TIA/EIA-IS-968 Section 4.5.2.5. "Through transmission amplification from ports for the connection of separately registered equipment or from other network connection ports". Gain setting adjustment by unqualified personnel may result in violation of the FCC rules. Qualified personnel may adjust gain settings above these levels only where:

- 1. Measurement is made to ensure that the power levels sent to line at each network interface connected does not exceed the maximum levels specified in FCC part 68 section 68.308(b) and TIA/EIA-IS-968 Section 4.5 for that specific interface type.
- 2. Where gain adjustment away from the default values are made, precautions should be taken to ensure that the connection of terminal equipment is controlled by qualified installation personnel.

# 11.7 Port Safety Classification

The Avaya IP Office systems have the following ports which are classified as follows:

Port Name	Port Description	Port Classification
PRI port	PRI ISDN connection (NET)	TNV (Operating within the limits of SELV)
BRI ports	BRI ISDN connection (NET)	TNV (Operating within the limits of SELV)
Analog ports	Two wire analog trunk	TNV3
Power fail ports	Two wire analog trunk	TNV3
DTE port	Async Data connection.	SELV
Analog Telephone Ports	Telephone Extension ports	TNV2
Digital Telephone Ports	Telephone Extension ports	SELV
WAN port	WAN connection (NET).	SELV
LAN ports	10/100 BaseT attachment to LAN.	SELV
Expansion ports	Expansion Module connector.	SELV
Audio port	Connector for Music on Hold.	SELV
External Control port	Connector for Controlling Ancillary circuits.	SELV
DC Input port	Connector for DC input power.	SELV

Interconnection circuits shall be selected to provide continued conformance with the requirements of EN 609050:1992/A3:1995 clause 2.3 for SELV circuits and with the requirements of clause 6 for TNV circuits, after connections between equipment.

# 11.8 EMC Directive

889/336/ EEC (EMC Directive) CISPR 22:1993 including A1 + A2, AS/NZ 3548:1995 (ROW)

This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

# Federal Communications Commission (FCC)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his or her own expense.

# **Canadian Department of Communications (DOC)**

"NOTICE: This equipment meets the applicable Industry Canada Terminal Equipment Technical Specifications. This is confirmed by the registration number. The abbreviation, IC, before the registration number signifies that registration was performed based on a Declaration of Conformity indicating that Industry Canada technical specifications were met. It does not imply that Industry Canada approved the equipment."

#### **EMC Caution for China**

**注意**:此为A级产品,在生活环境中,该产品可能会造 成无线电干扰。在这种情况下,可能需要用户对其干 扰采取切实可行的措施。仅适用于商业或工业环境。

**IP Office Installation IP Office** 

# 11.9 Regulatory Instructions for Use

### 11.9.1 Australia

#### Connection

Connection of IP400 Office products must be via a Line Isolation Module with a telecommunications compliance label.

#### **BRI** Interface

During the configuration, ensure "000" emergency number is not barred, by performing the following:

Short Code: 000Telephone No: 000;Function: DialEmergency

Connections to TS013, the following Bearer Capabilities shall not be used:

• 7kHz Audio, Video, Restricted Digital Information.

If unknown type of number is used in calling party number, the network will use the default CLI.

The system must be configured for Point to Multi point connection to comply with Austel requirements for connecting to TS013 circuits.

As the IP Office does not support emergency dialing after loss of power, the following warning notice should be recognized:

#### • WARNING

This equipment will be inoperable when mains power fails.

#### PRI Interface

During the configuration, ensure "000" emergency number is not barred, by performing the following:

Short Code: 000Telephone No: 000;Function: DialEmergency

#### WARNING

This equipment will be inoperable during mains power failure.

# 11.9.2 Canada

This equipment meets the applicable Industry Canada Terminal Equipment Technical Specifications. This is confirmed by the registration number. The abbreviation, IC, before the registration number signifies that registration was performed based on a Declaration of Conformity indicating that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

It does not imply that Industry Canada approved the equipment.

"NOTICE: The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) for this terminal equipment is 1. The REN assigned to each terminal equipment provides an indication of the maximum number of terminals allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination on an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the Ringer Equivalence Numbers of all the devices does not exceed five."



700433220 February 2007 Copyright© 2007, Avaya Inc. All Rights Reserved

## 所有在中华人民共和国境内进口或销售的电子信息产品必须附上本文件

Include this document with all Electronic Information Products imported or sold in the People's Republic of China

45.01 4.50	有毒有害物质或元素 (Hazardous Substance)					
部件名称 (Part Name)	铅	汞	镉	六价铬	多溴联苯	多溴二苯醚
	(Pb)	(Hg)	(Cd)	(Cr6+)	(PBB)	(PBDE)
金属部件 (Metal Parts)	×	0	0	0	0	0
电路模块 (Circuit Modules)	*	0	0	0	0	0
电缆及电缆组件 (Cables & Cable Assemblies)	×	0	0	0	0	0
塑料和聚合物部件 (Plastic and Polymeric parts)	0	0	0	0	0	0
电路开关/断路器 (Circuit Switch/Breakers)	0	0	0	0	0	0
电源组件 (Power Assemblies)	×	0	0	0	0	0
显示器 (LCD, Monitor)	0	0	0	0	0	0
玻璃 (Glass)	0	0	0	0	0	0

- 表示该有毒有害物质在该部件所有均质材料中的含量均在 SJ/T 11363 2006 标准规定的限量要求以下。
   Indicates that the concentration of the hazardous substance in all homogeneous materials in the parts is below the relevant threshold of the SJ/T 11363 2006 standard.
- x: 表示该有毒有害物质至少在该部件的某一均质材料中的含量超出 SJ/T 11363 2006 标准规定的限量要求。 Indicates that the concentration of the hazardous substance of at least one of all homogeneous materials in the parts is above the relevant threshold of the SJ/T 11363 2006 standard.

本表显示,所附的亚美亚电子信息产品中,从生产日期起,可能包含这些物质。注意:所附产品可能包含或不 含以上所列的某些组件。

This table shows where these substances may be found in Avaya's electronic information products, as of the date of manufacture of the enclosed product. Note that some of the component types listed above may or may not be a part of the enclosed product.

除非有另外特别的标注,此标志将作为所附产品及零部件的环保使用期标志.某些产品会有 一个不同的环保使用期(例如,电话机)并贴在其产品上.此环保使用期限只适用于产品在产 品手册中所规定的条件下使用



The Environmentally Friendly Use Period (EFUP) for all enclosed products and their parts are per the symbol shown here, unless otherwise marked. Certain products have a different EFUP (for example, telephones) and so are marked to reflect such. The Environmentally Friendly Use Period is valid only when the product is operated under the conditions defined in the product manual

# 11.9.4 European Union

- 1.999 and 112 calls must not be barred. Doing so will invalidate the approval.
- 2. All connections at the MDF shall be identifiable by suitable labeling.
- 3. The CE mark displayed on IP Office equipment indicates the systems compliance with the EMC, LVD, and R&TTE Directives and common technical regulations for Primary Rate and Basic Rate ISDN.
- 4. All ports for the connection of other non-telecommunications apparatus have a Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV) safety status.

#### 11.9.5 New Zealand

The grant of a Telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of Telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services.

## 11.9.6 FCC Notification

This equipment is registered with the ACTA (Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments) in accordance with FCC Part 68 of its rules. In compliance with those rules, you are advised of the following:

- Means of Connection
   Connection of this equipment to the telephone network shall be through a standard network interface jack.
   Connection to 1.544-MBps digital facilities must be through a USOC RJ48C. Connection to the Analog Trunk facilities must be through a USOC RJ45S.
- Notification to the Telephone Companies
  Before connecting this equipment, you or your equipment supplier must notify your local telephone company's
  business office of the telephone number or numbers you will be using with this equipment.
- The facility interface codes (FIC) for 1.544-MBps digital connection (i.e. IP400 Office PRI-T1) are 04DU9.BN, 04DU9.DN, 04DU9.IKN, 04DU9.ISN.
- The facility interface code (FIC) for analog trunk connection (i.e IP400 Office Quad Analog Trunk-LS) are OL13A, OL13B, OL13C, 02AC2, 02LA2, 02LB2, 02LC2, 02LR2, 02LS2.
- The facility interface code (FIC) for analog trunk connection (i.e. IP400 Office ATM16-LS/GS) are OL13A, OL13B, OL13C, 02AC2, 02GS2, 02LA2, 02LB2, 02LC2, 02LR2, 02LF2.
- The Service Order Code (SOC) for 1.544-MBps digital connection (i.e. IP400 Office PRI-T1) is 6.0Y.
- The Service Order Code (SOC) for analog trunk connection (i.e. IP400 Office Quad Analog Trunk-LS) is 9.0Y.
- Disconnection You must also notify your local telephone company if and when this equipment is permanently disconnected from the line or lines.
- Hearing Aid Compatibility
   The custom telephone sets for this system are compatible with inductively coupled hearing aids as prescribed by the FCC.

Ringer Equivalence Number (REN). The REN is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to the telephone line. Excessive RENs on the line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most, but not all, areas, the sum of the RENs should not exceed five. To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to the line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the local telephone company to determine the maximum REN for the calling area.

IP Office Installation
IP Office
15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)

Index	Voicemail 51
	VoiceMail Lite 330
2	VoiceMail Pro 331
2400 Series Phone	Assessments
Checking Firmware 143	Network 55
Desk Mounting 143	VoIP 55
Installing 143	Audio
SAP Code 367	
Software Upgrade 143	Codec Conversion 56
· ·	Port 350
Wall Mounting 143	Audio Port 353
3	Availability of Equipment 10, 389
3600 Serices Phone	В
SAP Code 367	Barrier Boxes
3700	Analog Phone 172
Series Phone SAP Code 367	Rack Mounting 174
3810	SAP Code 367
Phone SAP Code 367	Base Card
5	Analog Phone 20, 214
	Digital Station 20, 214
5400 Series Phone	
Checking Firmware 143	Legacy Card Carrier 20, 214
Desk Mounting 143	VCM 20, 214
Installing 143	Batteries
SAP Code 367	Lithium 393
Software Upgrade 143	BRI
Wall Mounting 143	(So) Port 354
5600	(Trunk) Port 355
Series Phone SAP Code 367	Port 350
6	Button Programming 150
-	C
6400	Cable
Series Phone SAP Code 367	
A	Access Requirements 64
Add-Ons	Clearance Requirements 64
201B Recorder 306	Cables
4450 Features 301	Maximum Cable Distances 36, 351
EU24 Features 303	SAP Code 367
EU24BL Features 304	Standard IP Office 36, 351
Programmable Buttons 301, 303, 304, 305, 307	Cabling
T3 DSS Features 305	Lightening Protection 39, 170
XM24 Features 307	Call Logging Application 52
	Call Status
Analog	Application 49
Phone Barrier Boxes 172	PC Requirements 309
Phone Region Availability 44, 259	Cards
Port 350, 353	Analog Trunk 236, 237
Trunk Card 23, 234	ATM4 237
Application	ATM4U 236
Call Center 52	BRI Trunk 237
Call Logging 52	E1 PRI 238
Call Status 309	E1R2 PRI 239
CD/DVD 54	Embedded Voicemail Memory 31, 241
Compact Business Center 310	IP400 Voice Compression Modules 31
Compact Contact Center 311	
Conference Center 315	IP500 Analog Phone Base 216
ContactStore 316	IP500 Digital Station Base 217
CTI 53	IP500 Legacy Card Carrier 218
Delta Server 319	IP500 VCM 219
Feature Key Server 320	Modem 31, 240
Maintenance 49	Small Office Edition Wireless 31
Manager 321	T1 PRI 238
Monitor 322	VCM 242
	Voice Compression 242
	WAN Trunk 239
Phone Manager 324	Wireless 240
SoftConsole 326	Castle Rock 184
System Status Application 327	CCC
TAPI 328	SAP Code 367
User 50	

Channels	Delta Server
Compression 56	Components 319
Clock 158	License Requirements 319
Compact Business Center	PC Requirements 319
Application 52	DevLink Application 53
PC Requirements 310	DS
Compact Contact Center	IROB 171
Application 52	Phone 44, 171, 259
Components 311	Port 350, 356
License Requirements 311	Region Availablility 44, 259
PC Requirements 311	DTE Port 190
Compression Channels 56	Cable requirement 190, 357
Conference Center	RS232 190, 357
Application 50	Settings 190, 357
ConferenceCenter	Dual PRI
Components 315	Trunk Card 23, 234
License Requirements 315	•
PC Requirements 315	E
Configuration	Embedded Voicemail
Create New 71	Application 51
Erase 191	Memory Card 31
New 70	EMC Cautions
Off Line 70	Canadian Department of Communications 397
	EMC Caution for China 397
Connections	Federal Communications Commission 397
Grounding 38	Envirmental Requirements 66
Out of Building 39, 142, 170	Equipment Availability 10, 389
ContactStore	Expansion
Application 51	Port 350
Components 316	Expansion Modules
License Requirements 316	IP400 Analog Trunk 25
PC Requirements 316	IP400 Analog Trunk 16 245
Control Unit	IP400 Digital Station 25, 249
IP406 v2 17, 198, 204	IP400 Digital Station V2 247
IP412 17, 198, 202	IP400 Phone 25, 253
IP500 60, 200	IP400 Phone V2 251
IP500 System Unit 17, 198	IP400 So8 25, 255
Professional Edition 60	IP400 WAN3 25
Rack Mounting 40	IP400 WAN3 10/100 257
Small Office Edition 211	IP500 Analog Trunk 16 226
SOE 17, 198	IP500 BRI So8 228
Standard Edition 60	IP500 Digital Station 25, 230
Summary 19	IP500 Phone 25, 232
Wall Mounting 40	IPO 500 Analog Trunk 25
Control Units	IPO 500 BRI So8 25
SAP Code 367	Expansion Port 358
Core Software 45	Exporting Settings 72
Country	EXT O/P
Languages 47	Port 350
Supported Locales 47	EXT O/P Port 175, 358
Create Configuration 71	
CTI	Extension Numbers
SAP Code 367	Changing 152
D	Renumbering 152
	Swapping 154
Daughter Cards	External Expansion Modules 25
Analog Trunk 22, 221, 222	F
BRI Trunk 22, 221, 223	Faulty Units 10
PRI Trunk 224	FCC Rules 395
PRI-U Trunk 22, 221	Feature Key Dongles
Trunk 22, 221	SAP Code 367
DC I/P	Feature Key Server
Port 350	Application 49
DCI I/P Port 356	Components 320
DECT	License Requirements 320
Handset 274, 275	PC Requirements 320
Phone 44, 259	Feature Keys
Region Availability 44, 259	<b>,</b> -

Feature Keys	EU24 Add-on 148
Parallel 42, 177	Internal Cards
Serial 42, 177	SAP Code 367
Smart Card 42, 177	IP 400 Installation
USB 42, 177	Admin Applications 111
Features	Connect Manager PC 115
2402D Phone 266	Expansion Modules 127
2410D Phone 267	Grounding 131
2420 Phone 268	Modem Cards 120
3616 Phone 269	Power up Control Unit 113
3620 Phone 270	Rack Mounting 125
3626 Phone 271	Receive Configuration (Pre 3.2) 116
3641 Phone 272, 274	System Status Application 106, 138
3645 Phone 273 3711 Phone 275	Trunk Cards 122 Unpacking 110
3810 Phone 276	Upgrade 133
4406D+ Phone 277	VCM Cards 118
4412D+ Phone 278	WAN 3 129
4424D+ Phone 279	IP Dect
4601 Phone 280	Base Stations SAP Code 367
4602IP Phone 281	Handset SAP Code 367
4602SW Phone 281	Licenses SAP Code 367
4610SW Phone 282	SAP Code 367
4620IP Phone 283	Survey Kits SAP Code 367
4620SW Phone 283	IP Office Application CDs
4621SW Phone 284	SAP Code 367
4625SW Phone 285	IP Office Operation in
5202D Phone 286	Australia 398
5220D Phone 288	Canada 398
5410 Phone 287	China 399
5601 Phone 289	European Union 400
5602IP Phone 290	New Zealand 400
5602SW Phone 290	USA 400
5610SW Phone 291	IP400
5620 Phone 292	External Exapansion Modules SAP Code 367
5621 Phone 293	Trunk cards 23, 234
6408D Phone 294	Trunk cards SAP Code 367
6416D Phone 295	Voice Compression Modules card 31
6424D Phone 296	IP400 Installation
T3 Classic 297	Recieve Configuration (3.2+) 137
T3 Compact 200	Security Settings 136
T3 Compact 299	Using Monitor 117
Firewall Exceptiong 335	IP406 v2 15 Control Unit 204
G	IP412 15
General	Control Unit 202
Licenses SAP Code 367	IP500
General Information	Analog Phone Base Card 20, 214
Training Courses 58	Analog Trunk Daughter Card 22, 221
Web Sites 59	Base Cards SAP Code 367
Grounding Control Units 38	BRI Trunk Daughter Card 22, 221
Н	Control Unit 200
H323	Daughter Cards SAP Code 367
Phones 44, 259	Digital Station Base Card 20, 214
Region Availability 44, 259	External Expansion Modules SAP Code 367
Handset Accessories	Legacy Card Carrier Base Card 20, 214
SAP Code 367	PRI-U Trunk Daughter Card 22, 221
Hazard Symbols 393	Reset Button 169
Hazardous Substances 10, 389	SAP Code 367
Homologation Statement 392	system 13
HP OpenView 184	Trunk Daughter Card 22, 221
1	VCM Base Card 20, 214
Importing Settings 72	IP500 Installation
Installing	Recieve Configuration (3.2+) 137
2400 Series Phones 143	IP500 Installation
5400 Series Phones 143	Admin Applications 86, 111

IP500 Installation	Trial 367
Card 79	VoiceMail 367
Check Card LED 92	Lightening Portection 393
Check CPU LED 91	Lightening Protection 39, 170
Connect Manager 88	Lithium Batteries 393
Documentation 77	M
Expansion Modules 95	Maintenance
Feature Key 83	Applications 49
Grounding 104	Manager
Licences 94	Application 49
Power 84	Button Programming 150
Rack Mounting 98	Clock Quality 158
Receive Config 93	Components 321
Security Settings 97, 136	Extension Numbers 152
Start Manager 89	License Requirements 321
System Status Application 106, 138 Tools 76	PC Requirements 321
	Prefix Dialing 162
Unpacking 78, 110 Upgrade Software 90	Trunks 160
Using Monitor 117	Upgrade Software 166
Wall Mounting 101	Modem Card 31
	Module
L	Polycom Video 182
LAN	Modules 204
Port 350 LAN Port 359	Trunk Interface 394
Level of Software 45	Monitor Application 49
Licences	Application 49 Components 322
CCC 343	License Requirements 322
Compact Contact Center 311	PC Requirements 322
Conference Center 315	Protocols 335
ContactStore 316	Mounting
CTI 344	SAP Code 367
Delta Server 319	MS-CRM
Feature Key Server 320	Application 50
General 340	Components 323
Installation Requirements 178	License Requirements 323
IP DECT 348	PC Requirements 323
IP500 342	N
IP500 PRI Trunk Channels 60	Network Assessments 55
IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional 60	New Configuration 70, 71
IP500 Voice Networking 60	0
Manager 321	Off Line Configuration 70
Monitor 322 MS-CRM 323	Operating Systems 339
MS-CRM 323 Parallel Port Feature Key 180	Out of Building
Phone Manager 324, 345	Connections 39, 142, 170
Serial Port Feature Key 179	P
SoftConsole 326	Package Damage
System Status Application 327	Check 110
TAPI 328	Parallel Feature Key 42, 177
Trial Licenses 349	PC
USB Feature Key 180	Minimum Specifications 339
VoiceMail 347	PC-Base Licensing 42, 177
VoiceMail Lite 330	PC-Less Licensing 42, 177
VoiceMail Pro 331	PF
License Keys	Port 350
Enter 43, 176	PF Port 360
Licenses	Phone (POT)
CCC 367	Port 350
CTI 367	Phone (POT) Port 361
General 367	Phone 2000 Series
IP Dect 367	2402D 266
IP500 367	2410D 267
PC-Base 42, 177	2420 268 Phone 3000 Series
PC-Less 42, 177	3616 269
Phone Manager 367	3010 208

Phone 3000 Series	RS232/DTE 350
3620 270	RS323 DTE 190, 357
3626 271	Safety Classification 396
3641 272	USB 350
3645 273	Used 335
3701 274	WAN 350, 363
3711 275	WAN V.24 364
3810 276	WAN V.35 365
DECT Handset 274, 275	WAN X.21 366
WiFi 269, 270, 271, 272, 273	Power Cords
Wireless 276	SAP Code 367
Phone 4000 Series	Power Supplies
4406D+ 277	1151C1 33
4412D+ 278	1151C2 33
4424D+ 279	Cords 34
4601 280	Type 40w PSU 33
4602IP 281	Type 45W Earthed PSU 33
4602SW 281	Type 60W Earthed PSU 33
4610SW 282	Uninterrupted Power Supply 35
4620 283	Power Supply Units
4620SW 283	SAP Code 367
4621SW 284	PRI
4625SW 285	Port 350
Phone 5000 Series	PRI Port 362
5402D 286	Programmable Buttons 301, 303, 304, 305, 307
5410 287	Programming
5420D 288	Button 150
5601 289	Protocols 335
5602IP 290	Q
5602SW 290	Quad BRI
5610SW 291	Trunk Card 23, 234
5620 292	R
5621 293	Rack Mounting Control Units 40
Phone 6000 Series	Recorder Interface 306
6408D 294	Region Availability
6416D 295	Analog Phone 44, 259
6424D 296	DECT Phone 44, 259
Phone Manager	DS Phone 44, 259
Application 50 Components 324	H323 Phone 44, 259
	Renumber Extensions 152
	Requirements
License Requirements 324 PC Requirements 324	Cable Access 64
Phone T3 Series	Cable Clearance 64
Classic 297	Enviromental 66
Comfort 298	Parts 67
Compact 299	Space 64
Polycom Video Module 182	Tools 67
Port	Wall Mounting 66
Analog 350, 353	RoHS 10, 389
Assigned 335	RS232/DTE
Audio 350, 353	Port 350
BRI 350	S
BRI (So) 354	Safety Statement 392
BRI (Trunk) 355	SAP Codes
DC I/P 350	201B Recorder 306
DCI I/P 356	2400 Series Phone 367
Door 175	2402D Phone 266
DS 350, 356	2410D Phone 267
Expansion 350, 358	2420D Phone 268
EXT O/P 175, 350, 358	3600 Serices Phone 367
IP Office 335	3616 Phone 269
LAN 350, 359	3620 Phone 270
PF 350, 360	3626 Phone 271
Phone (POT) 350, 361	3641 Phone 274
PRI 350, 362	3700 Series Phone 367

SAP Codes	Security Settings
3711 Phone 275	Default 193
3810 Phone 276, 367	Serial Feature Key 42, 177
4406D+ Phone 277	Server
4412D+ Phone 278	Minimum Specifications 339
4424D+ Phone 279	Settings
4450 Programmable Buttons 301	CSV File Formats 72
4601 Phone 280	Exporting 72
4602IP Phone 281	Importing 72
4602SW Phone 281	Single E1 PRI
4610SW Phone 282	Trunk Card 23, 234
4620IP Phone 283	Single E1R2
4620SW Phone 283	Trunk Card 23, 234
4621SW Phone 284	Single PRI T1
4625SW Phone 285	Trunk Card 23, 234
5400 Series Phone 367	Small Office Edition
5402D Phone 286	Control Unit 211
5410 Phone 287	Wireless Card 31
5420D Phone 288	Smart card Feature Key 42, 177
5600 Series Phone 367	SNMP 184
5601 Phone 289	Enabling 187
5602IP Phone 290	Installation 185
5602SW Phone 290	Port 187
5610SW Phone 291	respond 187
5620 Phone 292	Trap Generation 188
5621 Phone 293	Trap Generation 188
6400 Series Phone 367	SNMP MIBs
6408D Phone 294	
6416D Phone 295	Application 49 So8
6424D Phone 296	
	- <b>I</b>
Barrier Boxes 367	Example Video Conference 182
Cables 367	SOE Installation
CCC Licenses 367	Admin Applications 111
CTI Licenses 367	Connect Manager PC 115
EU24 Programmable Buttons 303	Receive Configuration (Pre 3.2) 116
EU24BL Programmable Buttons 304	Recieve Configuration (3.2+) 137
Feature Key Dongles 367	Security Settings 136
General Licenses 367	System Status Application 106, 138
Handset Accessorie 367	Unpacking 110
Internal Cards 367	Using Monitor 117
IP DECT Base Station 367	SoftConsole
IP Dect Handset 367	Application 50
IP Dect Licenses 367	Components 326
IP Dect Survey Kit 367	License Requirements 326
IP Office Application CDs 367	PC Requirements 326
IP Office Control Units 367	Software
IP400 External Exapansion Modules 367	Erase Core Software 194
IP400 Trunk cards 367	Software level 45
IP500 Base Cards 367	Space Requirements 64
IP500 Daughter Cards 367	Spares
IP500 External Expansion Modules 367	SAP Code 367
IP500 Licenses 367	Statement
Mounting 367	Homologation 392
Phone Manager Licences 367	Safety 392
Power Cords 367	Supported
Power Supply Units 367	Language 47
Series Phone 367	Locales 47
Spares 367	System Status
T3 Classic 297	Application 49
T3 Comfort 298	System Status Application
T3 Compact 299	Components 327
T3 DSS Programmable Buttons 305	License Requirements 327
T3 Series Phone 367	PC Requirements 327
Trial Licenses 367	T
VoiceMail Licenses 367	T3
XM24 Programmable Buttons 307	Series Phone SAP Code 367
	20.100 . 110110 0/11 0000 00/

IP Office Installation IP Office

**TAPI** Components 328 License Requirements 328 PC Requirements 328 WAV Driver Application 53 **TAPILink Lite** Application TAPIlink Pro Application 53 Training Courses 58 **Trial Licenses** SAP Code 367 Trunk Interface Modules 394 Unpacking 110 Upgrade Software 45 USB Feature Key 42, 177 Port 350 Voice Compression Channels 56 VoiceMail SAP Code 367 VoiceMail Lite Application 51 Components 330 License Requirements 330 PC Requirements VoiceMail Pro Application 51 Components 331 License Requirements 331 PC Requirements VoIP Assessments 55 W Wall Mounting Control Units 40 Wall Mounting Requirements 66 WAN Link 168 23, 234, 350, 363 Port V.24 Port 364 V.35 Port 365 X.21 Port 366 Waterproof Phone 270 Web Sites 59 WiFi Phone 269, 270, 271, 272, 273

Wireless Phone 276

Performance figures and data quoted in this document are typical, and must be specifically confirmed in writing by Avaya before they become applicable to any particular order or contract. The company reserves the right to make alterations or amendments to the detailed specifications at its discretion. The publication of information in this document does not imply freedom from patent or other protective rights of Avaya or others.

Intellectual property related to this product (including trademarks) and registered to Lucent Technologies have been transferred or licensed to Avaya.

All trademarks identified by the ® or ™ are registered trademarks or trademarks, respectively, of Avaya Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

This document contains proprietary information of Avaya and is not to be disclosed or used except in accordance with applicable agreements.

Any comments or suggestions regarding this document should be sent to "wgctechpubs@avaya.com".

© 2009 Avaya Inc. All rights reserved.
Avaya
Unit 1, Sterling Court
15 - 21 Mundells
Welwyn Garden City
Hertfordshire
AL7 1LZ
England.

Tel: +44 (0) 1707 392200 Fax: +44 (0) 1707 376933

Web: http://www.avaya.com/ipoffice/knowledgebase

IP Office Installation Page 410
IP Office 15-601042 Issue 20b (16 July 2009)